

**teach[®]
yourself**

tagalog

corazon salvacion castle

and

laurence mcgonnell

For over 60 years, more than
50 million people have learnt over
750 subjects the **teach yourself**
way, with impressive results.

be where you want to be
with **teach yourself**

About the authors

Corazon Salvacion Castle (MA in TESL/Applied Linguistics) is an author, writer, translator and teacher of English and Tagalog at SOAS. **Laurence McGonnell** MA, MPS is a member of St. Joseph's Missionary Society and lives and works in the Philippines.

For UK order enquiries: please contact Bookpoint Ltd, 130 Milton Park, Abingdon, Oxon, OX14 4SB. Telephone: +44 (0) 1235 827720. Fax: +44 (0) 1235 400454. Lines are open 09.00–17.00, Monday to Saturday, with a 24-hour message answering service. Details about our titles and how to order are available at www.teachyourself.co.uk

For USA order enquiries: please contact McGraw-Hill Customer Services, PO Box 545, Blacklick, OH 43004-0545, USA. Telephone: 1-800-722-4726. Fax: 1-614-755-5645.

For Canada order enquiries: please contact McGraw-Hill Ryerson Ltd, 300 Water St, Whitby, Ontario, L1N 9B6, Canada. Telephone: 905 430 5000. Fax: 905 430 5020.

Long renowned as the authoritative source for self-guided learning – with more than 50 million copies sold worldwide – the **teach yourself** series includes over 500 titles in the fields of languages, crafts, hobbies, business, computing and education.

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data: a catalogue record for this title is available from the British Library.

Library of Congress Catalog Card Number: on file.

First published in UK 2000 by Hodder Education, 338 Euston Road, London, NW1 3BH.

First published in US 2000 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc.

This edition published 2003.

The **teach yourself** name is a registered trade mark of Hodder Headline.

Copyright © 2000, 2003 Corazon Salvacion Castle and Laurence McGonnell

In UK: All rights reserved. Apart from any permitted use under UK copyright law, no part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopy, recording, or any information, storage and retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publisher or under licence from the Copyright Licensing Agency Limited. Further details of such licences (for reprographic reproduction) may be obtained from the Copyright Licensing Agency Limited, of Saffron House, 6–10 Kirby Street, London, EC1N 8TS.

In US: All rights reserved. Except as permitted under the United States Copyright Act of 1976, no part of this publication may be reproduced or distributed in any form or by any means, or stored in a database or retrieval system, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

Typeset by Transet Limited, Coventry, England.

Printed in Great Britain for Hodder Education, a division of Hodder Headline, an Hachette Livre UK Company, 338 Euston Road, London, NW1 3BH, by Cox & Wyman Ltd, Reading, Berkshire.

The publisher has used its best endeavours to ensure that the URLs for external websites referred to in this book are correct and active at the time of going to press. However, the publisher and the author have no responsibility for the websites and can make no guarantee that a site will remain live or that the content will remain relevant, decent or appropriate.

Hodder Headline's policy is to use papers that are natural, renewable and recyclable products and made from wood grown in sustainable forests. The logging and manufacturing processes are expected to conform to the environmental regulations of the country of origin.

Impression number 15 14 13 12 11 10
Year 2010 2009 2008 2007

CONTENTS

	Introduction _____	1
	Pronunciation guide _____	2
1	Sa paliparan At the airport _____	5
	Introducing yourself and addressing others; Greeting people at different times of the day; Saying hello and goodbye; Language skills: Si, sina . Simple sentence construction. Formal or informal? Ka, kayo You	
2	Anong oras ang almusal	
	<i>What time is breakfast?</i> _____	17
	Checking in to your hotel; Language skills: Verb 'to be'; Enquiring about meals; Language skills: May, mayroon Has/have, there is/are; wala None (no). Question words: Sino? ano? Who? what?	
3	Para sa inyo ang regalang ito	
	<i>This gift is for you</i> _____	32
	Meeting your friend's family; Language skills: The indefinite article, <i>a</i> and <i>an</i> ; Ang The definite article, <i>the</i> ; Saying 'thank you'; Language skills: Hindi No/not; Wala None	
4	Nasaan ang post office?	
	<i>Where's the post office?</i> _____	46
	Asking 'where?'; Language skills: Nasaan? Where? ; Buying stamps and sending a parcel; Language skills: Adjectives	
5	Pera Money _____	59
	Asking the price of goods; Language skills: Isa, dalawa, tatlo , etc. One, two, three, etc. Counting money. Anong oras na? Telling the time; Magkano, magkakano How much, how much each? ; Hagglng; Changing currency and travellers' cheques at the bank	

- 6 Saan ka nakatira?** *Where do you live?* _____ **76**
Using the question word **saan**; Language skills: **Saan?** *Where?*; Finding an address on a map; Language skills: **Masyado** *So, very, quite, too, etc.* Find the right Jeepney/bus
- 7 Ang pamilya ko** *My family* _____ **89**
Introducing the members of your family; Language skills: **Ko, mo, niya, namin, natin, ninyo, nila**; Possessive pronouns: **Ng** *Off of the*; **ni/nina** + *name of person/s*; Using 'ay' in a sentence; Language skills: **Ay**
- 8 Sa restawran** *At the restaurant* _____ **104**
Ordering your drinks; Language skills: **Mga** *Making words plural*; Choosing some typical Filipino food; Language skills: Other uses of **mga**; Asking for the bill; Language skills: **Ito, iyan, iyon** *This, that, that (over there)*; **Mga + ito, iyan, iyon**
- 9 Sa botika** *At the pharmacy* _____ **119**
Asking for medication; Language skills: **Para sa** *For*; **Para kanino** *For whom*; **para saan** *for what*; Consulting a doctor; Naming the parts of the body
- 10 Tulong?** *(Need) Help?* _____ **132**
Asking for help; Language skills: **Sa akin, sa iyo, sa kaniya** *Mine, yours, his/hers*; **Mga kulay** *Colours*; Shopping for a gift; Language skills: **Kanino** *Whose*; **Sa** *To/to the, in/in the, on/on the, at/at the*
- 11 Gusto kong magpagupit** *I want a haircut* _____ **148**
Making an appointment; Language skills: Pseudo-verbs; Describing what you want done; Language skills: More about pseudo-verbs; Language skills: More on the **sa** preposition
- 12 Bagay ba sa akin?** *Does this suit me?* _____ **163**
Trying something on in a store; Language skills: Verbs: Active voice/passive voice; Transitive/intransitive; The **um** verb; Asking about alterations; Language skills: Verbalisation of adjectives; Describing the weather; Language skills: Verbalisation of acts of nature

- 13 Sa istasyon ng bus** *At the bus station* _____ **181**
Asking about tickets, destinations and departures; Days, months and years; Language skills: **Mag** verbs; Enquiring about arrivals; Language skills: **Ma** verbs; Finding out what your journey will be like; Language skills: **Maka + um** verb stem *To be able to, to happen to, to come to, to manage to*; **makapag + mag** verbs *To be able to, to happen to, to come to, to manage to*
- 14 Sa tabing-dagat** *At the beach* _____ **201**
Hiring a boat; Language skills: **Mang** verbs; Particles; Going swimming; Language skills: **Makapang** *To be able to*
- 15 Sa simbahan** *At church* _____ **218**
Becoming a godparent; Language skills: **In** Passive verbs; Attending a baptism; Language skills: Changing the tense of **in** verbs; More on particles
- 16 Maari bang gawin mo ito?**
Could I ask a favour of you? _____ **235**
Making requests and suggestions; Language skills: Passive 'i' verbs; **May + verb**; **walang + verb**; Requests, commands and suggestions
- 17 Isang kasalan** *A wedding* _____ **250**
Understanding Filipino customs and traditions: a wedding; Language skills: Passive **an** verbs; Expressing the circumstantial in passive verbs; Talking about customs; Language skills: **Sarili ko/aking sarili** etc; *Reflexive; mismo intensive*
- 18 Sa isang pistang bayan** *At a town fiesta* _____ **268**
Celebrating a Filipino fiesta; Language skills: **Pag + verb** root; Nominalised verbs – the gerund; **Ka + verb** root + **an, ang + verb**; Other nominalisations; Language skills: **Maki, makipag, makipang**; Participational verb forms in active verbs; Handling a water buffalo!; Language skills: **Ganito** *Like this*; **Ganiyan** *Like that*; **Ganoon** *Like that (over there)*

19	Ang buhay sa baryo <i>Life in the barrio</i> _____	287
	Living in the barrio; Language skills: Magpa + active verb <i>To cause, to let, to have, to permit, to ask, to make</i> ; Helping on the farm; Language skills: Pa-in (ma/um verb roots), papag-in (mag verb roots), papang-in (mang verb roots); Language skills: Ipa (in and i verbs), pa-an (an verbs) <i>To cause, to let, to make, to allow, to have, to permit</i>	
20	Paalam <i>Goodbye</i> _____	304
	Expressing embarrassment; Language skills: Kasing/sing <i>As... as</i> ; Doing last-minute shopping; Language skills: Making nouns with pang ; Saying your last goodbyes; Language skills: Mas, lalong, kaysa sa	
	Key to the exercises _____	323
	Verb list _____	334
	Tagalog-English glossary _____	345
	English-Tagalog glossary _____	356

Acknowledgements

Cora expresses her gratitude to the people who made this book a reality. To Sue Hart of Hodder and Stoughton for commissioning her to write this book. To Dr Nigel Philips of the University of London for persuading her to continue with this project. And most especially to Larry, for agreeing to co-author this book, contributing valuable cultural tips, and for patiently going through the original manuscripts. Also to Rebecca Green for her infinite patience, to friends Eric, Shirley and Arnan, and to Dr Doming Landicho for his helpful advice. Her heartfelt love and gratitude also go to Roy, her husband, for his endless assistance, and her special thanks to Louie, Baby, Elian and Divin for their support.

Larry would like to express a word of thanks to Fr. Jose Leslie Andre who kindly offered advice in the preparation of some of the cultural tips in this book. Thanks also go to Nenet Penetrante for her behind the scenes assistance and to my family and colleagues at St. Joseph's College, Mill Hill, for their support. Thanks to Bert and Leting Tronosco for providing some of the photographs reproduced in this book. Finally, a word of thanks to Sue Hart and Rebecca Green at Hodder & Stoughton for their patient assistance throughout this project.

The Publishers would like to thank Roy Castle for the illustrations.

INTRODUCTION

This *Teach Yourself Tagalog* course is intended to supply the beginner with a simple and well-selected stock of words in easy-to-understand lessons.

This book is a fascinating introduction to not only the Tagalog language, but also the Filipino way of life. Here, we will follow the day-to-day 'adventures' of the Cook family: Bill, Louise and Roy. Follow them from the minute they touch down at Ninoy Aquino International Airport, as they check in to their hotel, visit places of interest and attend local festivities while travelling around the country by bus, jeepney and boat. By following them, we will learn much about the ways and customs of the Filipino people, and of course plenty of Tagalog!

The chapters are graded in complexity and each includes a dialogue, a vocabulary box, a comprehensive grammar explanation, drills, practice tests and plenty of cultural tips. Prepare to be informed and entertained: Learn how to haggle at a Sunday market, discover your ability to mix with the locals while enjoying the pleasures of Tagalog learning. *Teach Yourself Tagalog* is a veritable treasure trove of information, activities – and learning.

The phonetic pronunciations in this book are specifically designed for native English speakers and follow standard English pronunciation. They offer the nearest possible approximation of Tagalog sounds, available to the native English speaker. For a highly polished Tagalog pronunciation, listen carefully to native Tagalog speakers.

A list of common words can be found as an appendix for your convenience and interest.

The authors want you to be able to learn Tagalog as painlessly as possible and to develop self-confidence in speaking and writing your new language. So relax and *Teach Yourself Tagalog*!

PRONUNCIATION GUIDE

The Tagalog language is relatively easy to pronounce for the English speaker. It is in fact read or pronounced as written or printed, making it almost phonetic. We can safely say that the pronunciation of Tagalog more or less rests on the five vowels:

a ah e eh i ee o aw u oo

The consonants are as follows:

**b bah k kah d dah g gah h hah l lah m mah n nah
ng ngah p pah r rah s sah t tah w wah y yah**

The letters C, F, J, Q, V, X and Z are not strictly part of the Tagalog alphabet though they do appear in the names of people, i.e. Corazon, Josefa, Victoria; places, i.e. Quezon, Luzon, Virac, Zamboanga; and names of things, i.e., Xerox, Kleenex etc.

The letters **b**, **p** and **t** are not aspirated in Tagalog. An easy way to test whether your **b**'s, **p**'s and **t**'s are aspirated is to hold a piece of paper in front of your mouth while pronouncing each letter. The paper should not move whenever these letters are pronounced. Why not try it out? If the paper didn't move then congratulations, you have pronounced them the Tagalog way.

Every syllable in Tagalog is pronounced. Even if a word has two successive vowels, then each vowel is treated as a separate syllable and pronounced. For example, the Tagalog word **Oo** (meaning: yes) is not pronounced as 'ooh' but rather as *aw-aw*. This rule does not however apply to foreign words that have been assimilated into the Tagalog language, for example, Quezon (a personal noun of Spanish origin).

PRONUNCIATION GUIDE

Examples:

Aa	(ah-ah)	dirt; filth (used only when speaking to small children about anything dirty. Also used by children themselves).
Saan	(sah-ahn)	where
Leeg	(leh-ehg)	neck
Iniiwan	(ee-nee-ee-wahn)	being left (passive voice)
Uuwi	(oo-oo-wee)	will go home (active voice)
Biik	(bee-eek)	piglet
Tsaa	(tsah-ah)	tea
Maasim	(mah-ah-seem)	sour

The more you study and listen to Tagalog, the more foreign words (mainly Spanish and English) you will begin to notice in the vocabulary.

Examples:

Garahe	(gah-rah-heh)	garage	(origin: Spanish)
Recibo	(reh-see-baw)	receipt	(origin: Spanish)
Kalye	(kahl-ye)	street	(origin: Spanish)
Tseke	(tseh-keh)	cheque	(origin: English)
Notbuk	(nawt-book)	notebook	(origin: English)

In Tagalog, **ch** is pronounced like the 'ch' in 'cheque' or 'cha cha'. There is no **sh** combination in Tagalog, hence the English word 'shoes' is likely to be pronounced 'syoos' and the word 'shame' becomes 'syaym'. The soft **th** as in 'thing' does not exist and so is pronounced as 'teeng'. The hard **th** as in 'that' is also absent from Tagalog and so the word is pronounced as 'dahi'.

The final **s** is never pronounced as a **z** in Tagalog. Any word ending in **s** is therefore pronounced as an **s**.

The letters **F**, **PH** and **V** are replaced in Tagalog by **P** and **B** respectively.

Examples:

Father	pronounced 'pah-dehr'	=	pader
Philip	pronounced 'Pee-leep'	=	Pilip
Vanilla	pronounced 'bah-neel-yah'	=	banilya
Victory	pronounced 'beek-taw-ree'	=	biktori

B, D and G tend to be voiceless and heard as **P, T and K**.

When a group of consonants (non-vowels) appear at the beginning of a word, they tend to invite the softening touch of a vowel. These vowels are known as *intrusive vowels*. For example:

School	<i>becomes</i>	eskul	(<i>es-kool</i>)
Start	<i>becomes</i>	istart	(<i>is-tart</i>)
Scheme	<i>becomes</i>	iskim	(<i>is-keem</i>)

The endings of words can sometimes be dropped or changed, and this is most apparent in the pronunciation of words ending in **D** or **T**.

Examples:

Stand	<i>becomes</i>	stan	(<i>stahn</i>)
Trends	<i>becomes</i>	trens	(<i>trehns</i>)
Wants	<i>becomes</i>	wans	(<i>wahns</i>)
Canned	<i>becomes</i>	can	(<i>kahn</i>)

There are no **WH** sound in Tagalog pronunciation. The straight-forward **W** sound replaces it.

Examples:

What	<i>becomes</i>	wat	(<i>waht</i>)
When	<i>becomes</i>	wen	(<i>wehn</i>)
Which	<i>becomes</i>	wits	(<i>weets</i>)
Why	<i>becomes</i>	wahy	(<i>wigh</i>)

Tagalog makes no regular distinction between the **I** in 'hit' and the **I** in 'heat', between the **U** in 'tool' and the **U** in 'pull'.

Examples:

Kit	<i>becomes</i>	keet	(<i>keeht</i>)
Keats	<i>becomes</i>	keets	(<i>keehts</i>)
Sit	<i>becomes</i>	seet	(<i>seeht</i>)
Seat	<i>becomes</i>	seet	(<i>seeht</i>)
Rule	<i>becomes</i>	rool	(<i>roohl</i>)

Accents have been provided on all words in the Tagalog-English glossary at the back of the book to assist with a more accurate pronunciation.

1 SA PALIPARAN

At the airport

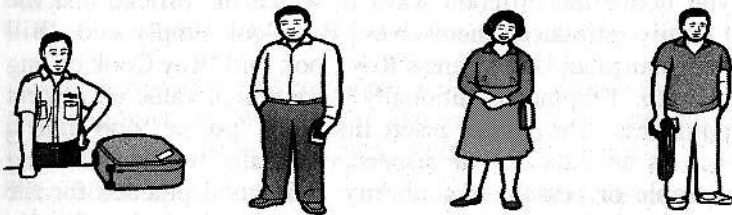
In this unit you will learn how to

- introduce yourself and address others
- greet people at different times of the day
- form simple sentences

Introducing yourself and addressing others

Dialogue 1

The Cook family has arrived at Ninoy Aquino International Airport (NAIA) in Manila. It is 7.30 in the evening. A friendly customs official approaches them.



Opisyal Magandang gabi *po* sa inyo. Kumusta kayo? Si Ginoong Santos ako. Anong pangalan ninyo?

Bill Mabuti naman, salamat. Bill Cook ang pangalan ko.

Louise Mabuti rin naman. Maraming salamat. Louise Cook ang pangalan ko.

Roy Mabuti *po* naman. Salamat *po*. Roy Cook *po* ang pangalan ko.

Opisyal Ikinagagalak ko kayong makilala.

To help build your confidence, we have included two simple pronunciation aids in the Unit Dialogues throughout this book. The **bold** typeface syllables in each word indicate where to add stress, while the *italicised* words indicate a glottal stop.

Talasalitaan*Vocabulary*

magandang gabi po sa inyo	<i>good evening (polite) to you (plural)</i>
kumusta kayo	<i>how are you (polite)</i>
anong pangalan ninyo?	<i>what's your name? (formal)</i>
ang pangalan ko	<i>my name is _____</i>
mabuti naman	<i>fine also (lit.)</i>
maraming salamat	<i>Thank you very much</i>
ikinagagalak ko kayong makilala	<i>I'm pleased to meet you</i>
mabuti rin naman	<i>I'm fine too</i>
mabuti po naman	<i>I'm fine too (formal)</i>

Translation

Officer	Good evening to you. How are you? I'm Mr. Santos.
Bill	(I'm) fine. Thank you. My name is Bill Cook.
Louise	I'm fine too. Thank you very much. My name is Louise Cook.
Roy	I'm fine too. My name is Roy Cook. Thank you.
Officer	I'm pleased to meet you.

Did you notice the different ways in which the official and the Cook family introduced themselves? Bill Cook simply said: 'Bill Cook ang pangalan ko', whereas Roy Cook said 'Roy Cook po ang pangalan ko.' Filipinos traditionally place a high value on respect and politeness. They often insert the word '**po**' or '**opo**' into a sentence as an indicator of respect, especially when addressing older people or persons in authority. It is good practice for the visitor to the Philippines to show sensitivity to this cultural value from the outset. By using the more formal '**po**' or '**opo**', you are assured of making a good first impression. Now try using the two different ways of introducing yourself (formal and informal). Write the sentences down, this time using your own name. Why not try recording the new sentences and listening to your own voice and pronunciation. Listen once again to Dialogue 1 and compare your Tagalog pronunciation with that of Bill Cook.

Anong pangalan mo? *What is your name?*

Did you notice how the official asked Bill Cook for his name? There are different ways in which people may ask your name. Look at the following examples and listen carefully to their pronunciation on the accompanying tape. Tagalog word sounds are quite different from English word sounds. Try to repeat what you hear as closely as you can.

Magandang umaga po.	<i>Good morning.</i>
Anong pangalan mo?	<i>What's your name?</i>
Joe Bulman.	<i>(I'm) Joe Bulman</i>
Sino ka?	<i>Who are you?</i>
Si Phil ako.	<i>I am Phil.</i>
Sino po kayo?	<i>Who are you? (polite)</i>
Si Ginoong John Smith ako.	<i>I am Mr John Smith</i>
Sino po kayo?	<i>Who are you?</i>
Si Margaret Hough ako.	<i>I am Margaret Hough.</i>

Addressing others *I, you, he/she etc.*

Talasalitaan	<i>Vocabulary</i>
anong pangalan mo	<i>what's your name?</i>
pangalan mo	<i>your name</i>
sino	<i>who</i>

In our day-to-day conversations, we do not always use people's names. Sometimes we drop the names in favour of words such as **I, he, she**, etc. These are known as personal pronouns.

The following table shows both singular (only one person) and plural (more than one) personal pronouns.

Tagalog sometimes uses the plural form (normally reserved for addressing more than one person) to address a single individual. For the Tagalog speaker, this has the same effect as using '**po**' or '**opo**', in that it conveys politeness and respect to the listener. For example, we would normally understand 'kumusta kayo?' to mean, 'how are you (all)?' However, when addressed to a single individual, it can be understood as a very polite way of asking how someone is.

Airport tip

	Singular	Plural
1st person (speaker)	ako <i>I</i>	kami <i>we</i> (excluding listener) tayo <i>we</i> (including listener)
2nd person (spoken to)	ka/ikaw <i>you</i> (informal) kayo <i>you</i> (formal)	kayo <i>you</i> (plural)
3rd person (spoken about)	siya <i>he/she</i>	sila <i>they</i>

① Notice that 'you' (singular) has two forms: **ka** and **ikaw**. The

On arriving in Manila, you may be reluctant to carry any heavy luggage by hand through the airport. You may wish to make use of an airport trolley, but be aware that there is a charge of around 40 pesos. You will need to buy a trolley ticket from the booth clearly marked near the luggage retrieval carousel.

SABER
DEVT. FOUNDATION INC.
 NINYO AQUINO INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
 PASAY CITY METRO MANILA

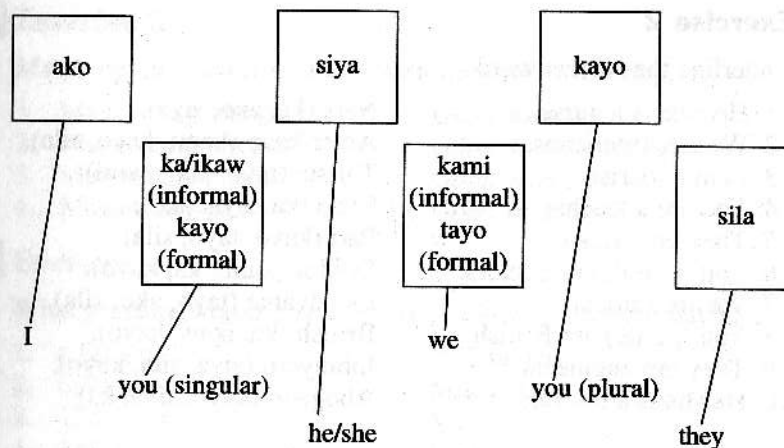
U. S. \$ 1
 or
P 40.00
PER CART

BAGGAGE CART RENTAL
Mabuhay!

This serves as your Official Receipt
 TIN 201-662-321-000-NONVAT

WITH **FREE**
 PORTER ASSISTANCE **B 225878**

8400 Bkts. 50x680001-B420000 Weacopy Enterprises
 BIR Permit No. 9AU000012650 4-29-99
 387 St. Anne St., Perpetual Val., Las Pinas City



simple difference is that **ka** is *always* used as part of a sentence, 'kumusta **ka**?' (how are you?), whereas **ikaw** can stand alone (without being used in a sentence).

Exercise 1

▶ Listen to the following Tagalog sentences on the tape. Practise reading each sentence aloud. Follow the pronunciation closely until you can repeat each word and sound with confidence.

Tagalog	Literal translation	Translation
Si Mary Smith ako	Mary Smith I	<i>I am Mary Smith</i>
Si Letty Zapanta ako	Letty Zapanta I	<i>I am Letty Zapanta</i>
Si Doktor Rivera kayo	Doctor Rivera you	<i>You are Dr Rivera (formal)</i>
Si Ramon Tenoso siya	Ramon Tenoso he/she	<i>He is Ramon Tenoso</i>
Pilipino kami	Filipinos we	<i>We are Filipinos</i>
Estudyante tayo	Students we	<i>We are students</i>
Amerikano sila	Americans they	<i>They are Americans</i>

Exercise 2

Underline the correct word.

- | | |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. He/ she is a nurse. | Nars (ka, ako, siya). |
| 2. We are Americans. | Amerikano (kami, kayo, sila). |
| 3. I am a tourist. | Turista (tayo, ako, kami). |
| 4. You are a teacher. | Guro (ka, siya, ako). |
| 5. They are priests. | Pari (kayo, tayo, sila). |
| 6. You (plural) are doctors. | Doktor (kami, ka, kayo). |
| 7. We are students. | Estudyante (tayo, ako, sila). |
| 8. You (polite) are British. | British (ka, ikaw, kayo). |
| 9. They are engineers. | Inhinyero (siya, sila, kayo). |
| 10. He/she is a lawyer. | Abogado (kayo, siya, ka). |

Greeting people at different times of the day



Exercise 3

Match up the correct sentence with the correct drawing.

- | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Magandang umaga | <i>Good morning</i> |
| 2. Magandang tanghali | <i>Good noon (midday)</i> |
| 3. Magandang hapon | <i>Good afternoon</i> |
| 4. Magandang gabi | <i>Good evening</i> |

Exercise 4

What greeting would you use at the following times of day?

- | | |
|---------------|-----------------|
| 1. 6:00 a.m. | Magandang _____ |
| 2. 6:30 p.m. | Magandang _____ |
| 3. 12:00 a.m. | Magandang _____ |
| 4. 3:00 p.m. | Magandang _____ |

Saying hello and goodbye

How you say 'hello' in Tagalog depends very much on who you are talking to. Four possible ways of saying hello follow, ranging from the informal 'kumusta', commonly used with friends and family, to the very formal and polite 'Kumusta po kayo'. Why not try practicing each of the examples given and think of someone you would use each example with. Saying goodbye in Tagalog is much less complicated than saying 'hello'. Any of the three examples given are acceptable in most circumstances.

Look at the different ways of saying hello and goodbye. All are commonly used. Listen carefully to the pronunciation on the accompanying tape. Try to copy what you hear by repeating each sentence.

Hello, goodbye

- Kumusta? *Hello/how are you?*
Mabuti naman *Fine, thank you*
Paalam na! *Goodbye for now*
- Kumusta ka? *Hello, how are you?*
Mabuti naman *Fine, thank you*
Hanggang sa muli *Till next time*

3. Kumusta kayo? *Hello, how are you?*
Mabuti po naman *Fine, thank you* (formal)
O, sige ha? *Until next time*
4. Kumusta po kayo? *Hello, how are you?* (formal)
Mabuti po naman *Fine, thank you*

Dialogue 2

Using what you have learned so far, translate the following dialogue into English. Use the vocabulary box to help you with words you have not yet met. See how much you have learned in only a few pages!

Jobert meets the Cook family at the airport.

Bill Jobert, kumusta kayo?

Jobert Mabuti po naman, at kayo?

Bill Mabuti naman.

Jobert Kumusta kayo, Ginang Cook?

Louise Mabuti naman.

Jobert Kumusta ka, Roy?

Roy Mabuti rin naman.

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
at kayo	<i>and you</i>
Ginang	<i>Mrs</i>
rin	<i>too, also, as well</i>

Exercise 5:

How would you say hello to the following people? Align the correct answer with the right person.

- | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------|
| a. your mother | 1. Kumusta ka |
| b. close friend | 2. Kumusta kayo |
| c. doctor | 3. Kumusta po kayo |
| d. young shop assistant | 4. Kumusta kayo |
| e. the local mayor | 5. Kumusta po kayo |
| f. taxi driver | 6. Kumusta |

Language Skills

1 Si, Sina

In Tagalog, when using a person's name (including your own) always place the word 'si' before the name, i.e. **si** Cora, **si** Larry (Cora, Larry). When Cora or Larry are with their friends (i.e., more than one person) then 'sina' is used which is the plural of **si**, i.e., **sina** Cora, **sina** Larry (Cora and her friends, Larry and his friends). In jargon, **si** and **sina** are known as markers.

2 Simple sentence construction

Broadly speaking, a simple English sentence consists of two main elements:

a *subject* (that is, 'who' or 'what' is being talked about) and a *comment* or a word which tells us something about the subject. For example, Bernie (*subject*) eats (*comment*), Tina (*subject*) sings (*comment*). Of course, there are different types of words and exceptions involved, but we will address each of these as we come to them. Look at the following table and compare the English sentence construction with that of Tagalog.

English	Tagalog
Manny is an <i>subject</i>	engineer <i>comment</i> Inhinyero si Manny <i>comment subject</i>
You are <i>subject</i>	beautiful <i>comment</i> Maganda ka <i>comment subject</i>
This is a <i>subject</i>	table <i>comment</i> Mesa ito <i>comment subject</i>
Bernie is <i>subject</i>	eating <i>comment</i> Kumakain si Bernie <i>comment subject</i>

You will notice that the Tagalog is much simpler than its English equivalent.

i Cultural tip

You may have noticed that the Filipino approach to time is quite different from a Western approach. Filipinos commonly have a more relaxed approach to time. This sometimes irritates Westerners. Just relax and be patient! This is normal. A Filipino may not consider himself 'late' for an appointment until he is at least an hour beyond the arranged time. This is known as 'Filipino time'.

3 Formal or informal? Ka, kayo You

The emphasis on politeness in Filipino culture comes through clearly in the language of the people. In the Philippines, the English word 'you' is represented in two forms: One form is informal: **ka**, the second is the formal, polite form: **kayo**. At work, Filipinos address their superiors with **kayo** (you, polite singular) and use **ka** (you, familiar singular) with their colleagues and friends. Here is a table showing the differences in use:

Situation	Polite formal	Informal familiar	Plural
Child to parent	kayo		kayo
Parent to child		ka/ikaw	kayo
Friend to friend		ka/ikaw	kayo
Worker to superior	kayo		kayo
Superior to worker		ka/ikaw	kayo
Person to stranger	kayo		kayo
To older people	kayo		kayo
To people in authority	kayo		kayo
Colleague to colleague		ka/ikaw	kayo

Exercise 6

Look at the pictures. Can you decide which is the correct word to use? Is it ka or kayo?

- a. A little boy kissing his grandmother's hand



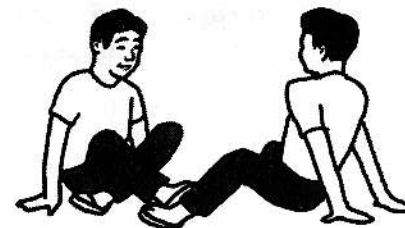
- b. A father to a son



- c. A husband to wife



- d. A child to another child



One-minute phrases

Segunda mano (*seh-goon-daw mah-naw*) Of Spanish origin, meaning *second hand*

Bilugin ang ulo (*bee-loo-geen ahng oo-law*) Literally, *to make the head round*. A common colloquial phrase meaning *to fool someone*

Aywan ko sa iyo (*eh-one-ko-sah-ee-yo*)

Literally, *I don't know with you*. A common Tagalog phrase, used to mean *it's up to you*

Huwag naman (*hoo-wag-nah-man*) This phrase is used as a polite way of saying: *please don't*

Hindi na bale (*hin-dee-nah-bah-lee*) Can be used to mean *not to worry or it's not worth worrying about*

Cultural tip

Whenever you meet someone for the first time, always use a formal address. Filipinos tend to begin new relationships on this more 'formal' level, progressing to the informal when they feel more comfortable with you. If you appear relaxed and friendly in their company, they will soon feel relaxed and friendly with you, too.

2 ANONG ORAS ANG ALMUSAL? *What time is breakfast?*

In this unit you will learn how to

- check in to your hotel
- ask simple questions
- use the verb 'to be'

Checking in to your hotel

Dialogue 1

Bill Cook and family arrive at their hotel. They will be staying here for five days, before moving on to the Abiva home in White Plains. Try to notice the different sounds of the Tagalog words.

Bill May kuwarta ba kayo?

Manedyer Mayroon *po*. Ibig po ba ninyo ng pang-isahan o pandalawahan?

Bill Ibig namin ng pandalawahan at pang-isahan para sa anak kong si Roy. Magkakano ba ang mga kuwarta?

Manedyer Ang pandalawahan *po* ay ₱900 isang gabi at ang pang-isahan ay ₱750 isang gabi. Puwede na *po* ba para sa inyo?

Bill Oo, mabuti, salamat. Saan ako pipirma?

Manedyer Dito lang *po* sa *ibaba*, sir.

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
may kuwarto ba kayo	have/has
mayroon	there is / there are
ibig po ba ninyo ng	do you want/like a
pandalawahan	double
at	and
pang-isahan	single
ibig namin	we want/like
para sa anak kong	for my son
magkakano	how much each
ang mga kuwarto	the rooms
isang gabi	per night
puede na po ba	is it alright sir / ma'am?
para sa inyo	for you
oo, mabuti	yes, good
salamat	thank you
saan ako pipirma	where do I sign?
dito lang po sa ibaba	just here below

Translation

- Bill** Do you have a room?
Manager Yes sir, we have. Do you want a single or a double room?
Bill I need a double room and also a single room for my son, Roy. How much are the rooms?
Manager The double is ₱900 per night and the single is ₱750. Is that all right, sir?
Bill Yes, that's fine. Thank you. Where do I sign?
Manager Just here below, sir.

Asking for a room... or anything else

Did you notice how Bill enquired about the rooms? He asked: 'May kuwarto ba kayo?' It's very easy to make an enquiry in Tagalog. Whether you want to ask about rooms, tee-shirts, sun tan lotion or banana splits, just remember to use the word 'may' (sounds like *MEH*) before the subject (thing) you want to ask about. Notice the word 'ba'. This is a simple word which follows the subject and lets the other person know that you are asking a question. Let's look at a few examples:

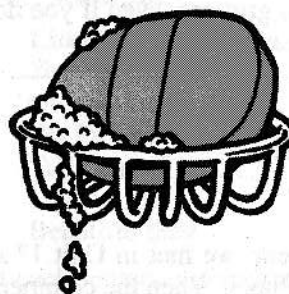
Tagalog	Literal translation	English
May tsinelas ba kayo?	Have sandals you?	Do you have any sandals?
May kuwarto ba kayo?	Have room you?	Do you have a room?
May mangga ba kayo?	Have mango you?	Do you have a mango?
May panahon ba kayo?	Have time you?	Do you have time?

Exercise 1

Here are pictures of some everyday items you might need to ask for in your hotel. Practice asking for them using the formula: 'May (name of item) ba kayo?'



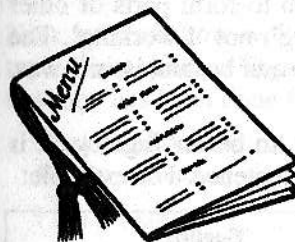
Tuwalya
Towel



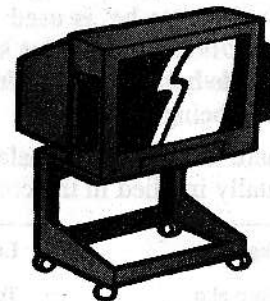
Sabon
Soap



Telepono
Telephone



Menu
Menu



Telebisyon
Television

i Cultural tip

Hospitality is very important in Filipino culture. Filipinos will warmly welcome a visitor into their home. However, if you wish to avoid drawing a Filipino into an embarrassing situation, try to avoid calling in unexpectedly at mealtimes. Out of politeness, you will be offered food or a place at table. You are not really expected to accept the invitation. Such a situation is potentially very embarrassing for your hosts as they may not have prepared enough food. Refuse politely. If you are offered a second or third time by the same person, then you should eat something, even if it is just a small amount. Filipinos are very sensitive to body language, so try not to grimace, even if you don't really like the taste of what you're eating!

o Language skills

1 Verb 'to be'

Remember the 'comment' we met in Unit 1? A comment tells us something about the subject. When the comment is a verb, then we know that an action is involved. Verbs are 'doing' words which describe an action. For example, Bob (subject) is reading (verb / action word). The dog (subject) is barking (verb / action word). The verb 'to be' is used as a helping verb to form parts of other verbs. For example, we say 'I am working', not 'I working'. The verb 'to be' has eight different forms. They are: be, am, is, are, was, were, being, been.

There is no direct translation of the verb 'to be' in Tagalog. It is usually implied in the construction of the sentence. For example:

Tagalog	Literal translation	English
Guro ako	Teacher I	<i>I am a teacher</i>
Doktor kayo	Doctor you	<i>You are a Doctor</i>
Nars siya dati	Nurse she formerly	<i>Formerly she was a nurse</i>
Nanggaling si Anna sa palengke	Came from Anna the market	<i>Anna has been to the market</i>

Look at the Tagalog equivalent of the verb 'to be':

Singular	Tagalog	Plural	Tagalog
<i>I am/was</i>	Ako	<i>We are/were</i>	Kami, tayo
<i>You are/were</i>	Ka, ikaw	<i>You are/were</i>	Kayo
<i>He/she is/was</i>	Siya	<i>They are/were</i>	Sila

(There are more ways in which the verb 'to be' may be used in a sentence. We will look at these in later units.)

Exercise 2

Listen to the following sentences.

Tagalog	Literal translation	English
Turista ako	Tourist I	<i>I am a tourist</i>
Amerikano siya	He/she American	<i>He/she is American</i>
Pilipino kami	We Filipinos	<i>We are Filipinos</i>
Matangkad ka	Tall you	<i>You are tall</i>
Doktor tayo	Doctors we	<i>We are doctors</i>
Maganda sila	Beautiful they	<i>They are beautiful</i>

You will notice that each sentence is spoken slowly. Try to repeat what you hear during the pause after each sentence. Carry on until you become familiar with the words in each sentence.

Exercise 3

Now let's see how well you've mastered what you heard on the tape. Write down a Tagalog sentence to translate the English. The first one has been done for you.

They are doctors.

Doctor sila.

I am a tourist.

They are tall.

She is beautiful.

You are an American.

i Cultural Tip

Avoid giving offence in all things. Western culture tends to be more 'direct' in approaching any problem or difficulty that may arise. Be discreet and you will find that many potential problems will simply evaporate.

Enquiring about meals

Dialogue 2

We join Bill Cook at the reception desk of the hotel. He is asking the receptionist about mealtimes.

Bill Magandang umaga ma'am. Ano ang mga oras ng pagkain dito sa hotel?

Receptionist Aba opo. Ang almusal ay buhat sa alas sais y medya hanggang alas nuwebe y medya. Ang tanghalian ay buhat sa alas dose hanggang alas dos nang hapon. Ang hapunan ay buhat sa alas sais hanggang alas nuwebe nang gabi. May room service po sa lahat ng oras.

Bill May makakainan bang malapit dito?

Receptionist Aba, opo. Ang 'Lola's Litson' ay may pagkain hanggang hatinggabi.

Bill Mabuti kung ganoon. Hindi ba mahal?

Receptionist Hindi po. Masarap ang pagkain at mura ang halaga.

Bill Maraming salamat.

Talasalitaan

magandang umaga
ano ang mga oras ng
pagkain dito
aba opo
almusal
buhat sa
alas sais y medya
hanggang
alas nuwebe y medya
tanghalian
alas dose
alas dos nang hapon
hapunan
alas sais
alas nuwebe nang gabi
sa lahat nang oras
may makakainan bang
malapit dito
may pagkain
hatinggabi
mabuti kung ganoon
hindi ba mahal?
hindi po
masarap ang pagkain
mura ang halaga

Vocabulary

good morning
what are the times of...
food here
certainly sir
breakfast
from
6.30
until
9.30
lunch
12.00 midday
2.00 p.m.
supper
6 o'clock
9.00 p.m.
at anytime
is there any place to eat
near here
there is food
midnight
that's good
not expensive (I hope)?
no sir
the food is delicious/great
the price is cheap/ right

Translation

Bill Good morning, Madame. What time are the meals in the hotel?

Receptionist Of course, sir. Breakfast is from 6.30 until 9.30. Lunch is from 12.00 until 2.00pm. Supper is from 6.00 until 9.00pm. Room service is available at anytime sir.

Bill Are there any nice places to eat nearby?

Receptionist Certainly sir. 'Lola's Litson' serves delicious food until midnight.

Bill That's good. Is it very expensive?

Receptionist No sir. The food is good and the price is cheap.

Bill Thank you.

Language skills

2 May, mayroon *Has/have, there/there are* Wala *None (no)*

Remember the word 'may' we met on page 18? **May** always expresses possession of some specific but previously unidentified object or objects. **May** is always followed by the word or phrase expressing the object possessed. Confused? Don't panic! Take a look at these examples:

May problema sila.
May sukli ba kayo?
May taksi na po.
May tao pa sa banyo.

They have a problem
Do you have change? (formal)
There is a taxi now (formal)
There is still someone in
the bathroom (lit.)
or Someone is still in
the bathroom
Do you have a pencil?

May lapis ka ba?

Mayroon (also meaning has / have, there is / there are) is very similar to the word **may**, differing only in that it is used as a form of reply which stands alone. Whereas **may** must always be used in conjunction with a sentence, **mayroon** can be used as a one word reply. Don't be surprised if you often hear people say **meron** instead of **mayroon**. Both words have exactly the same meaning!

Q: May aklat ba si John? *Has John got a book?*
A: Oo. Mayroon *Yes he has (a book)*
Q: May problema ba kayo? *Do you have a problem?*
A: Mayroon *We have*

Exercise 4 Listening and understanding

Listen to the following example sentences:

- Q: May guro ka ba? *Do you have a teacher?*
A: Oo. Mayroon *Yes. I have (a teacher)*
- Q: May barya ka ba? *Do you have change?*
A: Oo. Mayroon *Yes. I have (change)*
- Q: May lapis ba kayo? *Do you have a pencil? (formal)*
A: Oo. Mayroon *Yes. I have (a pencil)*

- Q: May asawa ba kayo? *Do you have a husband/wife?*
(formal)
A: Oo. Mayroon. *Yes. I have (a husband/wife).*
- Q: May anak ba kayo? *Do you have any children?*
(formal)
A: Oo. Mayroon. *Yes. I have (children)*

Repeat each sentence as you hear it, following the sound of the words as closely as possible. Why not try repeating the same exercise, this time without the help of the tape?

Exercise 5

Try constructing five sentences of your own, using the vocabulary provided. Answer all sentences by using **Oo, Mayroon** ('Yes. There is/there are').

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
sasakyan	vehicle
payong	umbrella
kutsilyo	knife
pinggan	plate
baso	drinking glass
ka	you (singular)
kayo	you (formal)

- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____

This time practise answering in the negative. The opposite to **may**, **mayroon** (there is, there are, has, have) is **wala** (no, none). This time, answer using **wala** or **wala akong** (I do not have).

Examples:

- Q: May asawa ba kayo? *Do you have a wife/husband?*
A: Wala (Wala akong asawa) *No (I don't have a wife/husband)*

2. Q: May problema po ba kayo? *Do you have a problem?*

(formal)

A: Wala (Wala akong problema) *No (I don't have a problem)*

3. Q: May anak ba kayo? *Do you have children?*

A: Wala (Wala akong anak) *No (I don't have any children)*

Exercise 6

Use the pictures to help you fill in the space with the correct answer (using **may** and **wala**). The first one has already been done for you. The vocabulary box will help you, too.

Talasalitaan

barko

dagat

mesa

kuwarto

walang kuwarta

pitaka

basura

daan

sombrero

lalaki

walang pasahero

taksi

sanggol

babae

Vocabulary

ship

sea/ocean

table

room

no money

wallet

rubbish

road

hat

man

no passenger

taxi

baby

woman

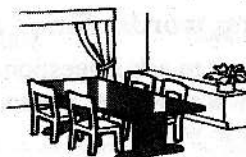
1. May libro si Anna.



2. _____ sa dagat.



3. _____ sa kuwarto.



4. _____ ang pitaka.



5. _____ sa daan.



6. _____ ang lalaki.



7. _____ ang taksi.



8. _____ ang babae.



i Cultural tip

Filipino culture is very family oriented. If you want to make a good impression with your new Filipino friends, show genuine interest in their family. Learning names and nicknames of family members as quickly as possible is a good indication of your desire to be friendly. Typical Filipino nicknames include Toto, Nene, Boboy, Boy, Pinky and Baby.

3 Question words: Sino? ano?, Who? what?

When we want to ask a question we start with words such as who, what, why, when, whose, where, how etc. Let's take a closer look at two of these words.

Sino

The Tagalog question word **sino** (meaning 'who' or 'whom') is used in three different ways:

1. with personal pronouns: ako, ka, siya, kami, tayo, kayo and sila (I, you, he/she, we, you (pl.), they)
2. with **si** plus a person's name (see Language skills, Unit 1)
3. with **ang** plus a word that tells us something about the subject.

The word which tells us something about the subject is called a noun; it tells us the name of a person, place or thing. As the question word we are using is **sino** or 'who?', the noun tells us something about a person, rather than a place or a thing. Don't worry if this sounds daunting. Listen to the following examples on the tape and then repeat them.

Question	Translation	Reply	Translation
Sino po kayo?	Who are you? (formal)	Si Larry ako	I am Larry
Sino siya?	Who is he?	Si Louie siya	He is Louie
Sino ang guro?	Who is the teacher?	Ako ang guro	I am the teacher
Sino ang guro mo?	Who is your teacher?	Si Cora ang guro ko	Cora is my teacher

Sino ang bisita?	Who is the visitor?	Ang babae ang bisita	The woman is the visitor
Sino ang estudyante?	Who is the student?	Ikaw ang estudyante	You are the student

Did you notice how **sino** has been substituted with **si**, followed by the name of a person? Remember that every time you ask a question using **sino** (who?), the reply you receive will either be a person's name, **ang** + a noun, or a personal pronoun. Look at these examples:

Sentence	Translation	Reply	Translation
Sino ang British dito?	Who is the British (one) here?	Siya ang British dito	He is the British (one) here?
Sino ang guro?	Who is the teacher?	Ako ang guro	I am the teacher
Sino ang estudyante?	Who is the student?	Ikaw ang estudyante.	You are the student
Sino ang mga turista?	Who are the tourists?	Kami ang mga turista	We are the tourists

Ano

This is the most versatile of all Tagalog question words and is used to mean 'what?'. It may be used in connection with any of the following:

- a noun (a name of a person, place or thing)
- an adjective (a word that describes a noun, e.g. big, dirty, small)
- a verb (a 'doing' word, e.g. drink, eat, sleep, sing).

Examples:

Sentence	Translation	Reply	Translation
Ano po kayo?	What are you?*	Guro ako.	I am a teacher
	(very formal) (* = what do you do?)		
Ano siya?	What is she?	Nars siya.	She is a nurse
Ano ang pangalan mo?	What is your name?	John Joseph	(My name is) John Joseph
Ano ito?	What is this?	Lapis iyan	That is a pencil

Exercise 7

Let's try using the words **sino** and **ano**. Look at the pictures. Can you ask a simple question using either **sino** or **ano**? Use the examples and the vocabulary box provided to help you.

Talasalitaan

pagod
oras
reyna
bandera
kulay
ng
na

Vocabulary

tired
time
queen
flag
colour
of the
now/already



English: Who is tired?

Tagalog: _____



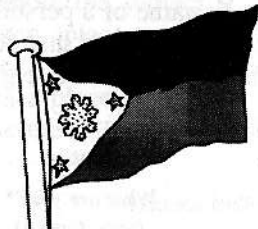
English: Who is the Queen?

Tagalog: _____



English: What time is it now?

Tagalog: _____



English: What is the colour of the flag?

Tagalog: _____

One-minute phrases

Laman ng kalye (*lah-man-nang-kal-yeh*) Literally, *contents of the street*. This phrase is commonly used to refer to a person who seems to spend more time on the streets than at home.

Lutong Makaw (*loo-tong-mah-ka-o*) Literally, *cooked in the Portuguese colony of Macau*. This phrase is used to refer to something that has been manipulated or 'fixed' behind the scenes in order to ensure a particular outcome (i.e. the results of an election or a beauty contest, etc.)

Pantulak (*pahn-too-lahk*) Literally, *something to push with*. This popular and common Tagalog expression applies to any kind of drink consumed following food. The implication is that it will help the food slide down more easily to the stomach. For example: 'Ako ang bibili ng pansit at tinapay, ikaw ang bahala sa pantulak.' *I'll buy the noodles and bread and you take care of something to wash it down with [drink]*

Kape at gatas (*kah-peh-at-gah-tas*) Literally, *coffee and milk*. This phrase is similar in meaning to the English expression 'chalk and cheese'. It can be used to express notable differences between two people.

Kanang kamay (*kah-nang-kah-my*) Literally, *right hand*. This phrase is almost identical to the English expression 'my right hand'. It denotes a clear level of dependability.

i Cultural tip

A smile will get you everywhere! Many Filipinos are very shy by nature. They may feel nervous when interacting with foreigners, mainly because they are not sure how to behave. A smile frequently offers the reassurance they need and communicates friendliness. If in doubt, try it out!

3 PARA SA INYO ANG REGALONG ITO

This gift is for you

In this unit you will learn how to

- meet your friend's family
- say 'thank you'
- use the definite and indefinite article
- make a statement negative

Meeting your friend's family

Dialogue 1

Roy Cook goes to the Abiva house to say hello to Jobert's family. He feels a little nervous, but Jobert is at hand to introduce him to everyone.

- Jobert** Halikayo, ito ang kaibigan ko na taga England.
Roy Magandang hapon sa inyong lahat. Si Roy ako, Roy Cook.
Jobert Ang nanay ko ito, si Teresita.
Teresita Kumusta ka, Roy?
Jobert Ang tatay ko ito, si Juan.
Juan Kumusta ang England?
Jobert At si Pinky at Lovely, ang kapatid ko.
Pinky Maligayang pagdating, Roy.
Jobert At ang Lolo at Lola.
Roy Ikinagagalak ko kayong makilala!

Talasalitaan

halikayo
 ito
 kaibigan
 ko
 taga
 magandang hapon
 sa inyong lahat
 nanay
 tatay
 kapatid
 lolo
 lola

Vocabulary

come on everyone
this
friend
my
from
good afternoon
to you all
mother
father
sister/brother
grandfather
grandmother

Translation

- Jobert** Come on everyone, this is my friend from England.
Roy Good afternoon to you all. I'm Roy, Roy Cook.
Jobert This is my mother, Teresita.
Teresita How are you, Roy?
Jobert This is my father, Juan.
Juan How is England?
Jobert And Pinky, my sister.
Pinky Pleased to meet you, Roy.
Jobert And finally, grandfather and grandmother.
Roy I'm pleased to meet you all!

Did you notice how Jobert introduced his family? Study the Tagalog dialogue for a few minutes, reading it aloud. Can you see how easy it was for Jobert to introduce everyone? You can use the same formula for introducing other relatives or friends, too. Take a look at some more examples:

Kapatid ko ito, si Anne.
 Pamangkin ko ito, si Lina.
 Pinsan ko siya.
 Bayaw ko si Bob.
 Hipag ko ito, si Elizabeth.

This is my sister, Anne.
This is my niece, Lina.
He/she is my cousin.
Bob is my brother-in-law.
This is my sister-in-law, Elizabeth.

Pamangkin ko ito, si Paul.
Pamangkin ko ito, si Beth.

This is my nephew, Paul.
This is my niece, Beth.

Exercise 1

Using Jobert's words as a guide, try to introduce your own family to your Filipino friends. Use the examples just given and the vocabulary box to help you.

English

- Good Afternoon to you all.
- This is my grandmother.
- This is my father, _____.
- And _____, my brother.
- This is my grandfather.
- This is _____, my sister.
- And finally, my mother.

Tagalog

Exercise 2

The plane journey to the Philippines is very long and tiring. Roy still has a bit of jet-lag and needs your help. Look at the picture gallery of different members of the Cook family. The names and pictures appear to have been mixed up. Can you help Roy place them in the correct order?



a) Nanay



b) Kuya at Ate



c) Pamangkin



d) Lola at Lolo



e) Hipag



f) Tatay



g) Bayaw

Cultural tip

Never be afraid to try out the Tagalog you know, even if you don't feel too confident yet. What you say may not be 'perfect', but it will be highly appreciated by your Filipino friends. You will be surprised just how far a little goes!

Language skills

1 The indefinite article, *a* and *an*

The English words 'a' and 'an' are known as indefinite articles. We use these words when referring to a person or thing about which we do not want to be specific. For example, a house, a car, a doctor, a tree. When the word begins with a vowel (a, e, i, o or u), then the indefinite article becomes 'an', for example, an apple, an aeroplane, an elephant. In Tagalog, there are two basic ways of representing the indefinite article. First, the indefinite article is implied (i.e. estudyante = a student, lapis = a pencil, aeroplano = an aeroplane). Second, both 'a' and 'an' are represented by the word **ng** pronounced (*nang*) when there is an action word (verb) in

the sentence followed by an object. For example, 'Domingo has bought a book.' Bumili **ng aklat** si Domingo. 'Mario ate an apple.' Kumain **ng mansanas** si Mario.

Look at these sample sentences:

Tagalog	Literal translation	English
Kumakain si Manny ng mansanas	Eating Manny an apple	<i>Manny is eating an apple</i>
Arkitekto si Roy	Architect Roy	<i>Roy is an architect</i>
Doktor si Jonathan	Doctor Jonathan	<i>Jonathan is a doctor</i>
Nagbabasa si Joe ng aklat	Reading Joe a book	<i>Joe is reading a book</i>
Bumili kami ng mapa	Bought we a map	<i>We bought a map</i>

Exercise 3

When you arrive in Manila, you may need to buy a few things before travelling around the country. Complete the sentences below using the sample sentences and the vocabulary box to guide you:

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
kailangan ko	<i>I need/want</i>
gusto kong bumili	<i>I'd like to buy</i>
payong	<i>umbrella</i>
posporo	<i>a box of matches</i>
nagtitinda ba kayo	<i>do you sell</i>
shampoo	<i>shampoo</i>
tee-shirt	<i>tee-shirt</i>
street guide	<i>street guide</i>
tinapay	<i>bread</i>
mapa	<i>map</i>

Tagalog

- Kailangan ko ng _____ .
- Gusto kong bumili ng _____ .
- May _____ ba kayo?
- Nagtitinda ba kayo ng _____?

English

- I need a map.
- I want to buy an umbrella.
- Do you have a box of matches?
- Do you sell shampoo?

Exercise 4

Translate into Tagalog.

English

Tagalog

- I need a tee-shirt. (use **ng**) _____
- I want to buy a ticket (use **ng**) _____
- Do you have a street guide? _____
- Do you sell bread? (use **ng**) _____

Cultural tip

If you don't know the Tagalog word, use the English one. Mixing Tagalog and English is known as *Taglish* and is quite acceptable. It is much more acceptable than just speaking English. If you have a keen ear, you may also have noticed many Spanish words in the Tagalog vocabulary. This is hardly surprising, given that the Spanish occupied the Philippines for more than 300 years. Spanish, however, has not been used as an official language in the Philippines for over 100 years.

2 Ang the definite article, the

In English, when we want to be specific about a person or a thing, we use the word 'the'. This word is known as the definite article. In Tagalog, the word 'the' is translated as '**ang**'. For example: masarap **ang** pagkain = the food is delicious; matangkad **ang** estudyante = the student is tall; maganda **ang** dalaga = the girl is beautiful.

Exercise 5

Bill Cook had a little too much to drink last night and is now having trouble with his Tagalog. His sentences are a bit jumbled. Can you help him sort them out? Use the vocabulary box to help you. Don't forget, the correct Tagalog sentence structure should be comment – definite article – subject. The correct English sentence is on the left:

English

1. The weather is hot. panahon mainit ang _____
 2. The street is dirty. ang kalye marumi _____
 3. The car is clean. kotse ang malinis _____
 4. The house is beautiful. bahay maganda ang _____
 5. The man is a doctor. ang lalaki doktor _____

Jumbled words**Tagalog**

Bill has now sobered up a little, and some of his sentences are correct. However, he is still making a few mistakes. Can you tell which sentences are correct and which ones are not?

English

1. The room is small.
 2. The Jeepney is colourful.
 3. The flower smells fragrant.
 4. The family is happy.
 5. The fish is fresh.

Tagalog

- Maliit ang kuwarto.
 Jeepney ang makulay.
 Mabango ang bulaklak.
 Masaya ang pamilya.
 Isda ang sariwa.

Talasalitaan

panahon
 mainit
 kalsada
 marumi
 kotse
 malinis
 bahay
 maganda
 isda
 sariwa
 pamilya
 masaya
 bulaklak
 mabango
 mukulay
 maliit

Vocabulary

weather
 hot
 street
 dirty
 car
 clean
 house
 beautiful
 fish
 fresh
 family
 happy
 flower
 fragrant
 colourful
 small

Saying 'thank you'**Dialogue 2**

Roy gives a pasalubong (gift) to Jobert's parents.

Roy Para sa inyo ang regalong ito. Magustuhan sana ninyo.
Mrs Abiva Isang kahon ng tsokolate! Mukhang masarap! Maraming salamat, Roy.

Roy Wala pong anuman. Para sa inyo naman ito.

Mr Abiva Ang paborito kong tabako buhat sa Inglatera! Maraming-maraming salamat na muli.

Roy Wala pong anuman.

Talasalitaan

para sa inyo
 regalong ito
 magustuhan sana ninyo
 rin
 isang kahon
 mukhang
 ang paborito kong
 buhat sa
 muli

Vocabulary

for you
 this gift
 I hope you'd like it
 also
 one box
 looks/appears
 my favourite
 from
 again/once more

Translation

Roy This gift is for you. I hope you'll like it.

Mrs Abiva A box of chocolates! They look delicious! Thank you very much, Roy.

Roy You're welcome (polite). And this is for you.

Mr Abiva My favourite cigars from England. Thank you very much again, Roy.

Roy You're welcome (polite).

Expressing gratitude

Filipinos have many different ways of expressing their gratitude. This is part of the cultural stress on politeness. It is a good idea to learn as many different ways of saying 'thank you' as possible.

Here are some commonly used examples:

Salamat	<i>Thanks/Thank you</i>
Salamat sa iyo	<i>Thank you (used with friends, informal, and family members)</i>
Salamat sa inyo	<i>Thank you (formal)</i>
Salamat sa inyong lahat	<i>Thank you all (informal)</i>
Salamat po sa inyo	<i>Thank you (very formal)</i>
Maraming salamat po sa inyo	<i>Thank you very much (very formal)</i>
Maraming salamat	<i>Thank you very much</i>
Maraming salamat sa iyo	<i>Thank you very much (informal)</i>
Maraming-maraming-salamat	<i>Thank you so very much</i>
Maraming-maraming salamat sa iyo	<i>Thank you so very much (informal)</i>
Maraming-maraming salamat sa inyo	<i>Thank you so very much (very formal)</i>
Naku, nag-abala ka pa, salamat	<i>Oh, you should not have bothered! Thank you</i>
Naku. Nag-abala pa kayo, salamat	<i>Oh, you should not have bothered! Thank you (very formal)</i>
Salamat na lang	<i>I can only say thank you</i>

Exercise 6

Which of the forms of 'thank you' would you use with the following people? Can you see more than one answer for some of them?

- Guest to waiter _____
- Waiter to guest _____
- Guest to guest (of same age) _____
- Young guest to an older guest _____
- Older guest to a young guest _____

When someone says 'thank you' to you in any of these ways, a simple and polite response is **walang anuman**. Cover up the list of common expressions. How many different ways of saying 'thank you' can you remember? Try to recall five of them and use them on your Filipino friends. They will be impressed not only by your knowledge of Tagalog, but also by your good manners!

Language skills

3 Hindi No/not

Hindi is the most common and versatile way of saying *no* in Tagalog. **Hindi** transforms a positive statement into a negative statement. The word **hindi** comes before the comment (what is said about the subject) and the subject. For example, *hindi masarap ang pagkain* = the food is not tasty; *hindi mainit ang kape* = the coffee is not hot; *hindi malayo ang palengke* = the market is not far.

	Tagalog	Literal translation	English
Hindi + noun	Hindi doktor si Fred.	Not doctor Fred	<i>Fred is not a doctor.</i>
Hindi + adjective	Hindi malinis ang kotse.	Not clean the car	<i>The car is not clean.</i>
Hindi + ba	Hindi ba nars si Letty?	Not nurse Letty?	<i>Isn't Letty a nurse?</i>
Hindi + pa	Hindi pa hinog ang mangga.	Not yet ripe the mango	<i>The mango is not ripe.</i>
Hindi + verb	Hindi umiinom ang bisita.	Not drink(ing) the visitor	<i>The visitor isn't drinking.</i>
Hindi + personal pronoun	Hindi siya Pranses.	Not he/she French	<i>He/she is not French.</i>
Hindi + pronoun	Hindi ito sariwa.	Not this fresh	<i>This is not fresh.</i>

Exercise 7

Look at the pictures. Each picture is followed by a statement. Using the word **hindi**, turn each of these sentences into a negative statement.

1. Barko ito. Neg. _____
(This is a ship.) (This is not a ship.)



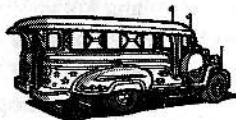
2. Malinis ang mesa. Neg. _____
(The table is clean.) (The table is not clean.)



3. Estudyante si Amy. Neg. _____
(Amy is a student.) (Amy is not a student.)



4. Tumatakbo ang Jeepney Neg. _____
(The Jeepney is moving.) (The Jeepney is not moving.)



4. Wala None

The word **wala** expresses absence of something. **Wala** is a reply to a **may** or **mayroon** question. Unlike **hindi**, **wala** is followed by a ligatured pronoun. Example: *Wala akong lapis, I don't have a pencil.* *Wala kaming guro, We don't have a teacher.* *Wala itong takip, This has no cover.* However, when followed by a noun, **wala** takes a ligature. Example: *Walang kotse si Shirley, Shirley doesn't have a car.* *Walang pera si Maria, Maria doesn't have money.* *Walang panahon si Julie, Julie doesn't have time.* Look at the sample sentences:

Question

May pera ba si Ginoong Cruz?

Has Mr Cruz got money?

May asawa ba kayo? (formal)
Do you have a husband/wife?

May problema ka ba? (informal)
Do you have a problem?

May bus na ba?
Is there a bus now?

May pagkain ba dito?
Is there food here?

May Coke o Pepsi ba kayo?
Do you have Coke or Pepsi?

Reply:

Wala. Walang pera si Ginoong Cruz.

No. Mr Cruz hasn't got money.

Wala. Wala akong asawa.
No. I don't have a husband/wife.

Wala. Wala akong problema.
No. I don't have a problem.

Wala. Wala pa.
No. There's no (bus) yet.

Wala. Walang pagkain dito.
No. There's no food here.

Wala. 7-Up lang.
No. Just 7-Up.

Exercise 8

Using the formula already given in the sample sentences, give the reply to the following questions:

1. May sasakyan ba sa bus stop? Neg. _____
Is there a vehicle at the bus stop? No. There is no vehicle at the bus stop.

2. May yelo ba kayo? Neg. _____
Do you have any ice? No. We have no ice.

3. May katulong ba si Ginoong Reyes? Neg. _____
Has Mr Reyes got a helper? No. Mr Reyes has no helper.

More on Hindi? No/not? Wala? No/none?

It is common for English speakers to experience some confusion between the use of **hindi** and **wala**. When we use the word 'none' in English, the Tagalog translation of this is '**wala**'. The problem arises when we realise that in English, the word 'no' can also be used to mean 'none'. For example, the response to the question,

'do you have a ticket?' can be 'no'. In this situation, the word 'no' expresses an absence of something. That's why non-Tagalog speakers sometimes make the mistake of saying **hindi** instead of **wala** when they mean 'none'; for **hindi** also means 'no'! Confused? Don't panic! Study the sample sentences:

Sentence	Negative	Question	Reply
Amerikano si Jim.	Hindi British si Jim.	British ba si Jim?	Hindi.
<i>Jim is American.</i>	<i>Jim is not British.</i>	<i>Is Jim British?</i>	<i>No. Jim is American.</i>
Tagalog si Elvie.	Hindi Bisaya si Elvie.	Bisaya ba si Elvie?	Hindi.
<i>Elvie is Tagalog.</i>	<i>Elvie is not Visayan.</i>	<i>Is Elvie Visayan?</i>	<i>No. Elvie is Tagalog.</i>
Malaki ang Australia.	Hindi maliit ang Australia?	Maliit ba ang Australia?	Hindi.
<i>Australia is big.</i>	<i>Australia is not small.</i>	<i>Is Australia small? No. It is big.</i>	

Remember: If you want to express the absence of something or someone, then the correct word to use is **wala**.

One-minute phrases

Walang wala (*wah-lang-wah-lah*) Literally, *no nothing*. This commonly used Tagalog phrase means: *I have no money or I'm broke.*

May sama ng loob (*my-sa-mah-nang-law-awb*) Literally, *having a bad feeling inside*. If Filipinos feel hurt or offended, they will typically not express their feelings in a direct manner. This phrase suggests a common Filipino way of expressing feelings in more general terms. 'May sama ako ng loob sa kaniya.' *I have a bad feeling towards her/him.*

Magmahabang dulang (*mag-ma-hah-bang-doo-lang*) Literally, *a long dining table*. This expression indicates a forthcoming marriage. 'Magmamahabang dulang ang anak ni Ginoong Cruz.' *The son of Mr Cruz is getting married.* The long dining table is typical of buffet-style meals used during Filipino festivals.

May sinasabi (*my-see-nah-sa-bee*) Literally, *to have something to say*. This Tagalog expression denotes wealth. 'May sinasabi ang pamilya Santos.' *The Santos family are well-heeled/wealthy.*

Maraming kuskos-balungos (*mah-rah-ming-kus-kus-bah-loo-ngoos*) Literally, *a lot of scrubbing and fussing*. This expression is used in connection with a person who has difficulty in making his or her point. 'Maraming kuskos-balungos si Pedro.' *Pedro beats around the bush a lot.*

① Cultural Tip

You may have noticed some Filipinos kissing the hand of a senior member of the family or people of social standing. This custom, known as **mano**, is seen as a mark of respect. Do not be surprised if Filipino children do this to you! It is also a way of showing respect to the visitor.

4 | NASAAN ANG POST OFFICE?

Where's the post office?

In this unit you will learn how to

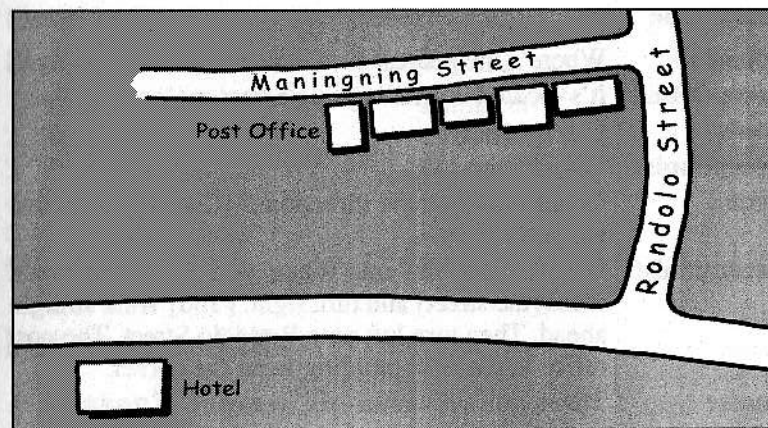
- ask 'where?'
- buy stamps and send a parcel
- use adjectives

🗣️ Asking 'where?'

🗣️ Dialogue 1

Louise Cook wants to go to the post office. Let's join her as she asks the hotel receptionist how to get there. Listen carefully to the sound of the words. You will notice that when a question is asked, the tone of the final word goes up. All question words in Tagalog have this feature.

- Louise** Nasaan ang pinakamalapit na post office **dito**?
- Receptionist** Nasa Kalye Maningning po.
- Louise** Puwede bang lakarin?
- Receptionist** **Aba**, opo.
- Louise** Maaari bang bigyan mo ako ng direksiyon?
- Receptionist** Ganito *po*. Paglabas ninyo sa hotel, tumawid kayo at kumanan. Dumiretso kayo. Pagkatapos kumaliwa kayo sa Kalye Rondolo. Ikalimang gusali buhat sa kanto ang post office.
- Louise** Maraming salamat.
- Receptionist** Wala pong anuman.



Talasalitaan

nasaan
 pinakamalapit
 nasa
 puwede bang
 lakarin
 aba
 opo
 maaari bang
 bigyan mo ako
 direksiyon
 ganito po
 paglabas ninyo
 tumawid kayo
 dumiretso kayo
 kumanan
 pagkatapos
 kumaliwa
 ikalimang gusali
 kanto
 wala pong anuman

Vocabulary

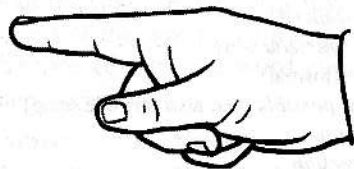
where
 nearest
 at/on/in/at the/on the/ in the
 is it possible
 to walk (it)
 of course/hey/my
 yes (formal)
 is it possible (see also puwede bang)
 give me
 direction
 like this
 once you've come out
 you cross (the street)
 walk straight ahead
 turn right
 then
 turn left
 fifth building
 corner
 you're welcome (formal)

Translation

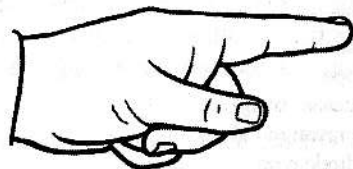
- Louise** Where's the nearest post office here?
Receptionist It's located at Maningning Street ma'am.
Louise Can I walk it?
Receptionist Yes, ma'am.
Louise Could you give me directions? [Could you tell me where it is?]
Receptionist It's like this ma'am. When you leave the hotel, cross [the street] and turn right. [You] Walk straight ahead. Then turn left onto Rondolo Street. The post office is the fifth building from the corner.
Louise Thank you very much.
Receptionist You're welcome.

Exercise 1

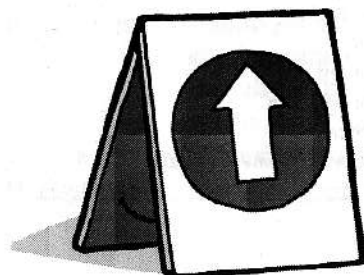
- Listen carefully to the 'direction' words on your tape. The pictures should help you.



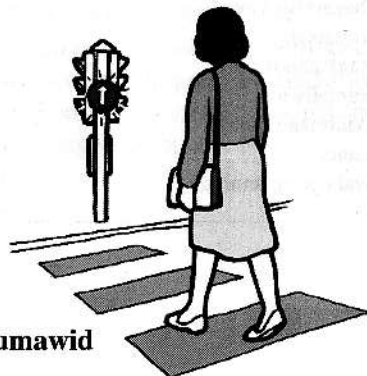
Kaliwa
(Left)



Kanan
(Right)



Diretso



Tumawid

Match the Tagalog with the correct English:

English	Tagalog
1. Turn left	kumanan
2. Turn right	diretso
3. Straight ahead	tumawid kayo
4. Right	kaliwa
5. Cross (the street)	kumaliwa
6. Left	kanan

Language skills**1 Nasaan? Where? (location)**

In Dialogue 1, Louise Cook introduced you to a new question word: 'nasaan' or 'where'? She asked: 'Nasaan ang Post Office?' (*Where is the post office?*). **Nasaan** is a commonly used question word which asks where a thing or a place is located. e.g. **nasaan** ang aklat ko? (*where is my book?*), **nasaan** ang immigration office? (*where is the immigration office?*). Notice that the hotel receptionist began her reply with **nasa**. This has nothing to do with American astronauts but is the way to answer a **nasaan** question in Tagalog. The reply to **nasaan** should always begin with the word **nasa** followed by the location of the subject of the sentence. For example, '**nasaan** ang bahay mo?' (*where is your house?*), '**nasa** Kalye Cruz ang bahay ko' (*my house is in Cruz Street*).

Exercise 2

- Listen to the following **nasaan** questions and answers on your tape. Repeat what you hear until you feel confident. Why not try to make up a few **nasaan** questions for yourself? Ask your Filipino friends to help you. First try asking the **nasaan** question, then change places and try giving the **nasa** answers.

Question

Nasaan ang Maynila?
Where is Manila?

Nasaan ang Mayon Volcano?
Where is the Mayon Volcano?

Reply:

Nasa Pilipinas ang Maynila.
Manila is in the Philippines.

Nasa Albay ang Mayon Volcano.
Mayon Volcano is in Albay.

Nasaan ang barko?
Where is the ship?

Nasaan ang mga bata?
Where are the children?

Nasaan ang sombrero?
Where is the hat?

Nasa dagat ang barko.
The ship is on the ocean.

Nasa bahay ang mga bata.
The children are at home.

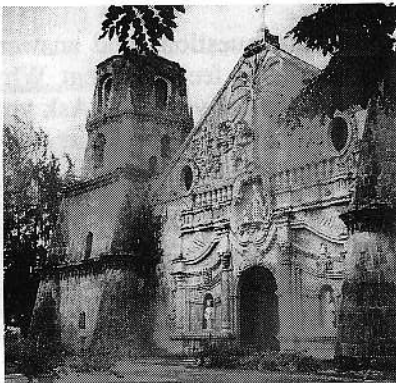
Nasa silya ang sombrero.
The hat is on the chair.

Note: In English, two vowels may occur commonly together (a, e, i, o, u) and be pronounced as one sound. For example, hoop, keep, people, tea, beach. These double vowel sounds are known as diphthongs. In Tagalog, each vowel is pronounced separately and so there are no diphthongs. For example, the word **nasaan** is not pronounced *nasan* but rather *nah-sah-an*. Both a's are pronounced separately. **Remember:** This applies to all Tagalog words where two vowels occur together.

Exercise 3

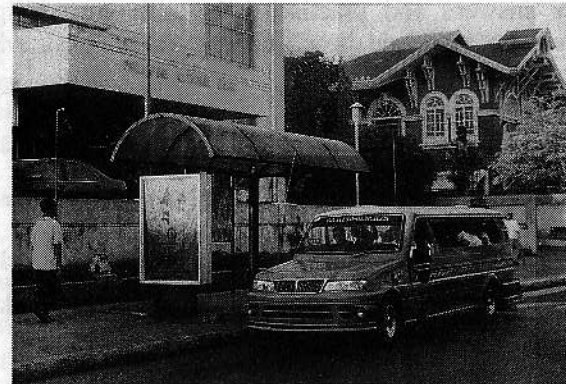
Look at the pictures. Roy Cook is confused and doesn't know where each of these places are. He needs to ask a passer-by for help. What question would Roy ask and what reply would the passer-by give? For example: 'Nasaan ang Robinson's Shopping Mall?' 'Nasa Edsa ang Robinson's Shopping Mall.' Use the clue words accompanying each picture to help you formulate your answers.

1.



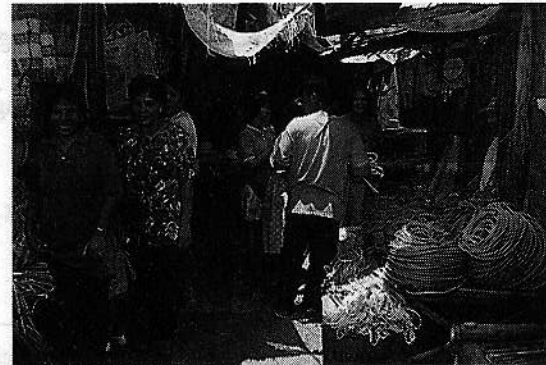
Clues:
Simbahan
Sto.
Domingo

2.



Clues:
Jeepney stop
Guzman
Street

3.



Clues:
Palengke
Cubao

4.



Clues:
Bangko
Makati

Read out your answers and practise them with your Filipino friends. You will be surprised how quickly you can ask where something or somewhere is!

Buying stamps and sending a parcel

Dialogue 2

Louise Cook has arrived at the post office and is talking to a clerk.

- Louise** Gusto kong bumili ng selyo para sa mga postcards ko.
Clerk Saan *po* ang punta ng mga postcards?
Louise Sa Inglatera at sa Amerika.
Clerk 3.80 *po* ang isang selyo. Ilang selyo *po* ang kailangan ninyo?
Louise Labinlima. May pakete rin ako papunta sa Inglatera, airmail.
Clerk 57.00 pesos *po* ang selyo. Pakilagay *po* sa timbangan ang pakete. Ano *po* ang laman ng pakete?
Louise Isang aklat. Magkano naman ito?
Clerk 240.00 pesos ang pakete. Paki-abot *po* sa akin ang pakete.
Louise Salamat. Eto ang bayad ko.
Clerk Wala pong anuman.

Talasalitaan

gusto ko
 bumili ng selyo
 para sa mga
 saan
 ang punta
 isang selyo
 ng mga
 ilang selyo
 ang kailangan ninyo
 labinlima
 papunta sa
 pakilagay
 sa timbangan

Vocabulary

I like/ I want
buy some stamps
for (plural)
where (direction)
the destination / going to
one stamp
of the (plural)
how many stamps
what you need
fifteen
going to
please put/place
on the scales

ang pakete	<i>the parcel</i>
ang laman	<i>the contents</i>
isang aklat	<i>one book/ a book</i>
paki-abot sa akin	<i>please pass to me/ hand to me</i>
magkano naman	<i>how much is it?</i>
eto	<i>here is</i>
bayad ko	<i>my payment</i>

Translation

- Louise** I want to buy some stamps for my postcards.
Clerk Where are they going to?
Louise To England and to America.
Clerk One stamp costs 3.80. How many stamps do you want?
Louise Fifteen (stamps). I also have a parcel going to England by airmail.
Clerk The stamps cost 57 pesos. Please put the parcel on the weighing machine. What is the content of the parcel?
Louise A book. How much is it?
Clerk The parcel will be 240 pesos. Could you please hand me the parcel?
Louise Thank you. Here's my payment (money).
Clerk You're most welcome.



Exercise 4

Read through Dialogue 2 again. Imagine that you too are making a trip to the post office. Using the dialogue and the vocabulary box provided to help you, how would you say the following in Tagalog?

1. I want to buy stamps for my parcel.
2. I want to buy stamps for a letter to America.
3. How much are the air letters each?
4. Where are the scales?
5. Kindly weigh the parcel for me.

Listen to the tape. The clerk at the post office asks you: 'Ano pong maipaglilingkod ko sa inyo?' or 'How may I help you?' You may respond by using the answers you have already provided in this exercise.

Talasalitaan

papunta sa
sulat
magkakano
para sa akin

Vocabulary

going to
letter
how much (each)
for me

Exercise 5

Listen to the following words on the tape and then try repeating them. Cover the list up and try to see how many you can recall without looking at the book. Why not ask your Filipino friends to help you?

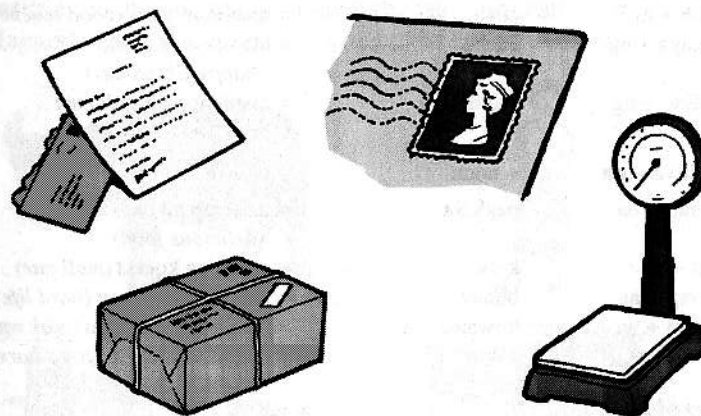
Listen and repeat

stamp
envelope
parcel
scales
to post
letter
pen
string
box
wrapping paper

selyo
sobre
pakete
timbangan
ihulog
sulat
bolpen
tali
kahon
pambalot

Exercise 6

Look at the drawings. Listen to the list of items read out on the tape and tick or circle the ones you can see:



Language skills

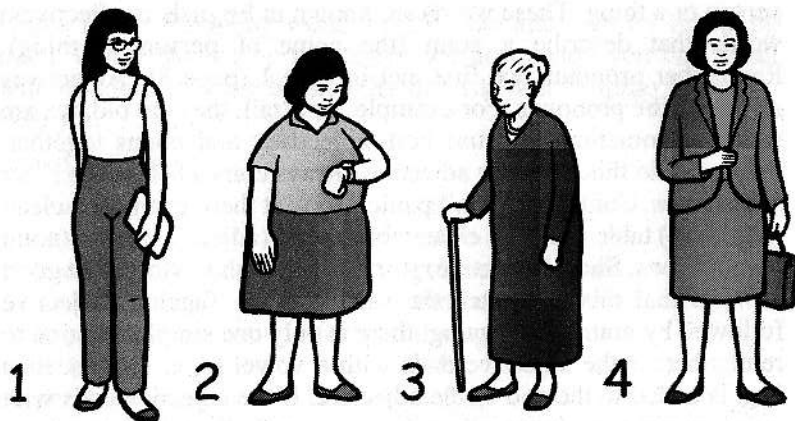
2 Adjectives, words that 'describe'

Pretty, tall, good, large, far, terrific, amusing, runny, fat, tired etc. All of these words are describing words. They create a picture of a person or a thing. These words are known in English as adjectives; words that describe a noun (the name of person or thing). Remember pronouns we first met in Unit 1 (page 8)? Adjectives also describe pronouns. For example, he is tall, they are old, we are wealthy. Sometimes we use both adjectives and nouns together. When we do this, then the adjective always comes before the noun it describes. Confused? Don't panic! Look at these examples: clean (adjective) table (noun) = clean table. Good (adjective) news (noun) = good news. Short (adjective) story (noun) = short story. The good news is that this is written the same way in Tagalog (adjective followed by noun). In Tagalog, there is only one simple addition to remember: if the adjective ends with a vowel (a, e, i, o, u), then 'ng' is added to the end of the adjective. If the adjective ends with a consonant (any letter other than a vowel), then 'na' comes in between the adjective and the noun. Let's take a look at some examples.

Adjective + ng	+ noun	= phrase
maganda + ng	bahay	= magandang bahay (beautiful house)
mahaba + ng	pila	= mahabang pila (long queue)
mabuti + ng	guro	= mabuting guro (good teacher)
maligaya + ng	Pasko	= maligayang pasko (happy Christmas)
matalino + ng	estudyante	= matalinong estudyante (intelligent student)
Adjective + na	+ noun	= phrase
masarap + na	pagkain	= masarap na pagkain (delicious food)
maliit + na	kotse	= maliit na kotse (small car)
mahirap + na	buhay	= mahirap na buhay (hard life)
madilim + na	kuwarto	= madilim na kuwarto (dark room)
pagod + na	kabayo	= pagod na kabayo (tired horse)

Exercise 7

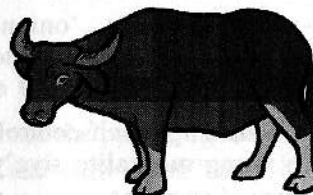
Look at the four cartoon drawings. Each one is numbered. Now listen carefully to a description of three of the women. Can you identify which ones are being described? Use the examples and vocabulary just given to help you. Can you write down a description of the woman who is not mentioned on the tape?



Exercise 8

Look carefully at the following pictures. Using the vocabulary box below, describe what you see in as many different ways as possible, using as many adjectives as you can. For example, 'Magandang, maliit na bahay' (beautiful, small house)

1.



2.



3.



4.



Well done! Whether you are in the house, taking a break at the office or sitting outside, look around you for a moment. Try to describe some of the things you see using the vocabulary you have learned so far in this book. Why not try it out with your Filipino friends, too?

Talasalitaan

mabango
maganda
malaki
masaya
mabilis
makulay
mabaho
mabait
mahaba
siksikan
mabagal
maikli

Vocabulary

fragrant
beautiful/pretty
big
happy
fast
colourful
bad smelling
kind
long
crowded
slow
short

malinis	clean
marumi	dirty
kaakit-akit	attractive

One-minute phrases

Balat-sibuyas (*bah-laht see-boo-yahs*) Literally, 'onion-skinned' or 'thin-skinned'. This phrase is used when referring to a *very sensitive person*.

Pabigla-bigla (*pah-beeg-lah beeg-lah*) – lacking in self-control, hasty, abrupt, impulsive. For example **Kung magsalita siya'y pabigla-bigla**. *He/she has an abrupt way of speaking.*

Suerte sa buhay (*soo-wer-teh sah boo-high*) Literally, *lucky in life*. A common Tagalog phrase meaning someone has been bringing *good luck* to the family. The opposite is:

Malas sa buhay (*mah-lahs sah boo-high*) Literally, *bad luck in life*. A common Tagalog phrase meaning someone has been bringing *bad luck* to the family.

Malinis sa katawan (*mah-le-nees sah kah-tah-wahn*) Literally, *clean in the body*. This expressions refers to a person who likes being physically clean and tidy.

Cultural tip

Filipinos will rarely use their hands or fingers to point when giving directions. Instead, they may purse their lips or even nod their heads to indicate the general direction you need to go in. This is normal, so don't be surprised if it happens.

5 PERA Money

In this unit you will learn how to

- ask the price of goods and haggle
- ask 'how much?' and 'how much each?'
- change currency/travellers' cheques at the bank
- tell the time

Asking the price of goods

Dialogue 1

All over the Philippines you will find small stores selling basic items such as food and school supplies. These small businesses sell various and 'assorted' items. The Tagalog word for assorted is **sarisari**. These small shops are known in the Philippines as 'sarisari stores'. In this dialogue, we join Bill Cook at a local sarisari store.

- Bill** Tao po!
- Owner** Magandang hapon po.
- Bill** Magandang hapon po naman. May sobre ba kayo?
- Owner** Mayroon po, maliit po ba o malaki?
- Bill** Iyong maliit lang. Magkano naman?
- Owner** Limang piso po isang dosena.
- Bill** O sige, isang dosena nga. At ang bolpen?
- Owner** Tig-tatlong piso po. Anong kulay po?
- Bill** Itim. Bigyan mo nga ako ng isa.
- Owner** Heto po. Disi-otso pesos po lahat-lahat. Ano pa po sir?
- Bill** Iyan lang. Heto ang bayad ko.
- Owner** Salamat po.

Talasalitaan

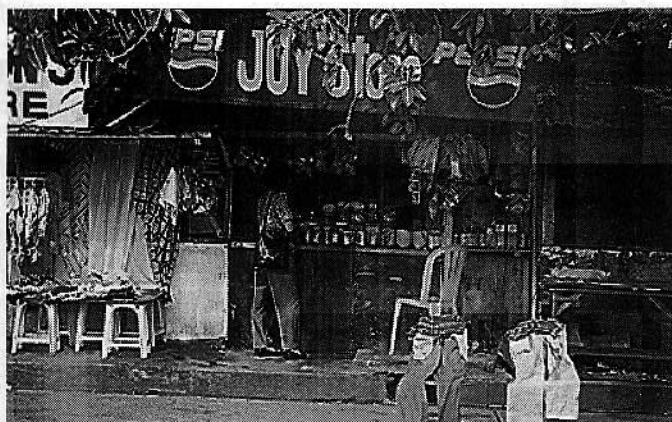
may
 mayroon
 bigyan
 itim
 limang piso
 isang dosena
 sige
 nga
 iyan lang
 tig-tatlong piso
 anong kulay
 tao po?
 naman
 heto
 disí-otso pesos
 lahat-lahat
 ano pa?
 bayad ko

Vocabulary

has/ have
 has/ have (used in replies)
 give
 black
 five pesos
 one dozen
 all right/ okay
 please/indeed/really
 that's all (just those)
 three pesos each
 what colour
 anyone at home?
 to you toolon the other hand
 here you are
 eighteen pesos
 all in all/altogether
 anything else/what else?
 my payment

Translation:

- Bill** Anyone at home?
Owner Good afternoon.
Bill Good afternoon to you, too... do you have any envelopes?
Owner Yes we have sir, small or large (ones)?
Bill Just the small ones. And how much are they?
Owner Five pesos a dozen sir.
Bill All right, a dozen please. And the ballpens?
Owner Three pesos each sir. What colour?
Bill Black. I would like to buy one.
Owner Here you are sir. Eighteen pesos altogether. Do you want anything else?
Bill That's all. Here you are. (*lit., here's my payment*)
Owner Thank you sir.

**Language skills:****1 Isa, dalawa, tatlo, etc. One, two, three, etc.**


Filipinos tend to use both Tagalog, Spanish *and* English when counting. This is hardly surprising when we look at the history of the country. The Philippines was under Spanish rule for over 300 years and American rule for 50 years. Both countries have left their mark on the Philippines in both its culture and language. Note, however, that the Spanish spelling and pronunciation used in the Philippines is not the same as the standard Spanish spelling and pronunciation. Look at this table:

- Listen to the correct pronunciation on your tape and repeat the words.**

English	Tagalog	Filipino Spanish spelling
one	isa	uno
two	dalawa	dos
three	tatlo	tres
four	apat	kuwatro
five	lima	singko
six	anim	sais
seven	pito	siyete
eight	walo	otso
nine	siyam	nuwebe
ten	sampu	diyes


Memorising tip

Cover up both the Tagalog and Filipino Spanish columns. Try repeating first the Spanish numbers, then the Tagalog numbers. How many can you remember? Do not move on to the next set of numbers until you feel confident with numbers one-ten. If you want to memorise the numbers effectively, then try not to swallow too much at once. You will be surprised to see how much more quickly and effectively you are learning! Follow this pattern for all subsequent groups of numbers.

 Listen to the correct pronunciation on your tape and repeat the words.

English	Tagalog	Filipino Spanish spelling
<i>eleven</i>	labing-isa	onse
<i>twelve</i>	labindalawa	dose
<i>thirteen</i>	labintatlo	trese
<i>fourteen</i>	labing-apat	katorse
<i>fifteen</i>	labinlima	kinse
<i>sixteen</i>	labing-anim	disisais
<i>seventeen</i>	labimpito	disisiyete
<i>eighteen</i>	labingwalo	disiotso
<i>nineteen</i>	labinsiyam	disinuwebe

Follow the memorising tip!

 Listen to the correct pronunciation on your tape and repeat the words.

English	Tagalog	Filipino Spanish spelling
<i>twenty</i>	dalawampu	beinte
<i>twenty one</i>	dalawampu't isa	beinte uno
<i>twenty two</i>	dalawampu't dalawa	beinte dos
<i>twenty three</i>	dalawampu't tatlo	beinte tres
<i>twenty four</i>	dalawampu't apat	beinte kuwatro
<i>twenty five</i>	dalawampu't lima	beinte singko
<i>twenty six</i>	dalawampu't anim	beinte sais
<i>twenty seven</i>	dalawampu't pito	beinte siyete
<i>twenty eight</i>	dalawampu't walo	beinte otso
<i>twenty nine</i>	dalawampu't siyam	beinte nuwebe

Follow the memorising tip!

For the following numbers, repeat the process as in 21-29 in both Tagalog and Spanish.

English	Tagalog	Filipino Spanish spelling
<i>thirty</i>	tatlumpu	treinta
<i>forty</i>	apatnapu	kuwarenta
<i>fifty</i>	limampu	singkwenta
<i>sixty</i>	animnapu	sisenta
<i>seventy</i>	pitumpu	sitenta
<i>eighty</i>	walumpu	otsenta
<i>ninety</i>	siyamnapu	nubenta

Listen to the correct pronunciation on your tape and repeat the word.


English	Tagalog	Filipino Spanish spelling
<i>one hundred</i>	isandaan	siyento
<i>two hundred</i>	dalawandaan	dos siyentos
<i>three hundred</i>	tatlongdaan	tres siyentos
<i>four hundred</i>	apatnaraan	kuwatro siyentos
<i>five hundred</i>	limandaan	singko siyentos
<i>six hundred</i>	animnaraan	sais siyentos
<i>seven hundred</i>	pitongdaan	siyete siyentos
<i>eight hundred</i>	walongdaan	otso siyentos
<i>nine hundred</i>	siyamnaraan	nuwebe siyentos
<i>one thousand</i>	isanlibo	mil

Exercise 1

Why not try out your new knowledge of Spanish and Tagalog numbers?

1. What is the Spanish number for **19**?
2. What is the Tagalog number for **64**?
3. What is the Spanish number for **99**?
4. What is the Tagalog number for **27**?
5. What is the Spanish number for **115**?
6. What is the Tagalog number for **480**?

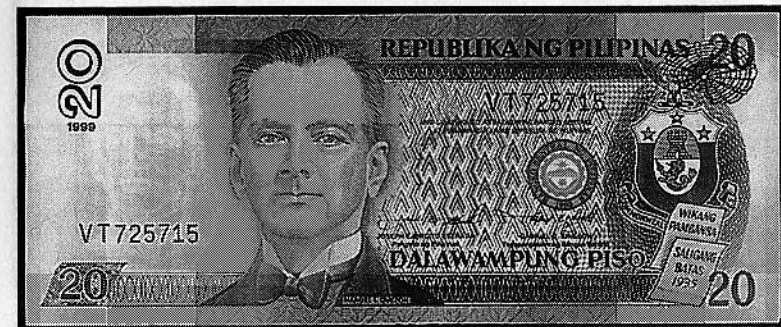
Exercise 2

-  Louise Cook was delighted to discover that there is also a weekly lottery draw in the Philippines. She chose the numbers 4, 11, 16, 34, 39 and 45. Can you help Louise to check her lottery ticket? Listen to this week's numbers as they are broadcast on the radio.



2 Counting money

The Philippine peso comes in the following denominations:



**Tagalog**

piso
dalawang piso
tatlong piso
apat na piso
limang piso
anim na piso
pitong piso
walong piso
siyam na piso
sampung piso

Spanish

peso
dos pesos
tres pesos
kuwatro pesos
singko pesos
sais pesos
siyete pesos
otso pesos
nuwebe pesos
diyes pesos

English

one peso
two pesos
three pesos
four pesos
five pesos
six pesos
seven pesos
eight pesos
nine pesos
ten pesos

Exercise 3

Louise Cook found some peso notes in her purse. Using what you have learned so far in this unit, can you help her count the money? Put the subtotal in the column on the right. How much money does she have in her purse altogether?

Sub-total:

1. Limang piso + sampung piso =
2. Limang piso + limang piso =
3. Dalawampung piso + limampung piso =
4. Limampung piso + limampung piso =
5. Limandaang piso + limandaang piso =

Total

Now try repeating this exercise, this time using Spanish numbers.

3 Anong oras na? Telling the time

Now that you feel confident with numbers, you will be pleased to hear that telling the time in the Philippines is done almost exclusively in Filipino Spanish. The hours in Filipino Spanish are as follows:

Filipino Spanish

Ala-una
 Alas dos
 Alas tres
 Alas kuwatro
 Alas singko
 Alas seis
 Alas siyete
 Alas-otso
 Alas nuwebe
 Alas diyos
 Alas-onse
 Alas dose

English

One o'clock
 Two o'clock
 Three o'clock
 Four o'clock
 Five o'clock
 Six o'clock
 Seven o'clock
 Eight o'clock
 Nine o'clock
 Ten o'clock
 Eleven o'clock
 Twelve o'clock

To say **'half past'** the hour, simply mention the hour followed by **'y medya'** (pronounced: 'eeh mehd-yah'). For example, 3.30 would be **'alas tres y medya'**.

To say XX minutes **past** the hour, simply mention the hour followed by the minutes in Filipino Spanish (see table). For example, twenty five minutes past six would be **'alas seis beinte singko'**. Quarter past ten would be: **'Alas diyos kinse'**.

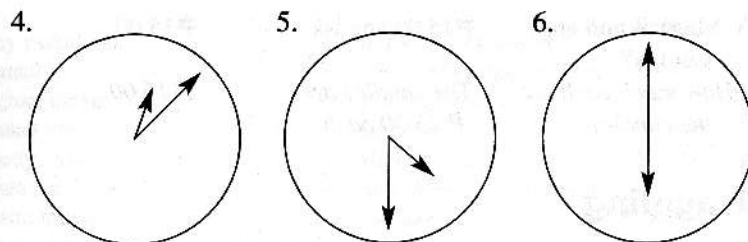
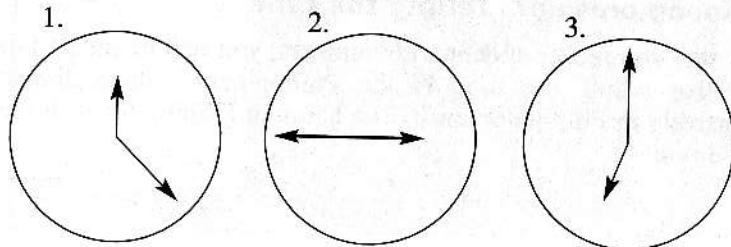
To say XX minutes **before** the hour, simply say: **'menos XX _____ [number of minutes] para alas _____ [the hour]'**.

For example, twenty minutes to three: **'menos beinte para alas tres'**. Ten minutes to eleven would read: **'menos diyos para alas onse'**, and so on.

To ask the time, simply say: **'Anong oras na?'**

Exercise 4

'Anong oras na?' Can you tell the time?

**2 Magkano, magkakano How much, how much each?**

In Dialogue 1 of this unit, Bill Cook purchased some envelopes from the local sarisari store. The question word he used was **magkano** (how much). He said: 'Magkano naman?' (How much is it?). **Magkano** simply means how much. For example: 'Magkano ang Tee-shirt?' *How much is the tee-shirt?* **Magkano** may also refer to the total sum of your purchase/s. Be careful, however, not to confuse **magkano** (how much) and **magkakano** which means how much each. For example, if there are many mangoes in a basket, unless you want to buy the whole basket of mangoes, you need to ask: 'magkakano ang mangga? How much are the mangoes each?'

Responding to 'magkano' and 'magkakano'

Now that you are confident in asking 'how much' or 'how much each', how do you respond to these questions? There are two basic ways of responding: 1) Replace **magkano** or **magkakano** with the price of the item and then repeat the whole sentence; 2) simply give the price.

Question	Reply	Quick reply
1. Magkano ang isang yarda ng lace? <i>How much is a yard of lace?</i>	₱35.00 ang isang yarda ng lace. <i>A yard of lace costs ₱35.00.</i>	₱35.00.
2. Magkano ang sombrero? <i>How much is the hat?</i>	₱95.00 po ang sombrero <i>The hat costs ₱95.00 (formal)</i>	₱95.00 po. <i>₱95.00 sir/madam. (formal)</i>

3. **Magkakano ang kandila?** ₱15.00 ang isa. ₱15.00.
How much each are the candles? *The candles are ₱15.00 each*

Haggling

Dialogue 2

While sightseeing Louise Cook finds herself at an open market. She begins speaking with a woman standing behind one of the market stalls.

- Tindera** Bili na, bili na. **Murang-mura.**
Louise Magkakano ang sombrero?
Tindera Ma'am mura lang *po*. Tig-siyento singkwenta pesos *po*.
Louise Mura? Kay mahal *nga* eh!
Tindera Aba, maganda *po* iyan. Buntal *po*, tingnan ninyo – isukat *po* ninyo.
Louise (Isinukat) Medyo maliit. *Wala* bang tawad?
Tindera Mura na *po*. Magkano ba ang gusto ninyo?
Louise Sitenta y singko pesos.
Tindera Kayo naman! *Hindi po*. Malulugi *po* ako. Sige, siyento beinte pesos *po*.
Louise Eto lang ang pera ko, otsenta pesos.
Tindera Isandaan *po*, mura na *po* iyan.
Louise Otsenta lang talaga.
Tindera Nobenta *po*, mayaman naman kayo.
Louise O, sige, otsenta y singko, kung *hindi, hindi* na bale.
Tindera Sige na *po*, otsenta y singko.
Louise Salamat, eto ang bayad ko.

Talasalitaan

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
tindera	vendor
bili na	come and buy
murang-mura	very cheap
tig-siyento singkuwenta pesos	₱150.00 each

kay mahal nga	<i>in fact it's expensive</i>
buntal	<i>a kind of Philippine fibre</i>
tingnan ninyo	<i>you have a look</i>
isukat ninyo	<i>you try</i>
medyo maliit	<i>slightly small</i>
wala bang tawad?	<i>any chance of a discount?</i>
gusto ninyo	<i>you like</i>
kayo naman	<i>Oh, you</i>
malulugi	<i>I'll lose</i>
eto lang	<i>just this</i>
talaga	<i>really</i>
mayaman naman kayo	<i>anyway you are rich</i>
o, sige	<i>all right/ okay</i>
kung hindi	<i>if not</i>
hindi na bale	<i>never mind</i>

Translation

- Vendor** Come and buy, come and buy. Very cheap.
Louise How much each are the hats?
Vendor Ma'am so cheap. (They're) ₱150.00 each.
Louise Cheap? Actually they're expensive!
Vendor They're pretty. Made of buntal. Just look at them – why don't you try one?
Louise (*Trying one on*) A little bit small. No discount?
Vendor That's ever so cheap. How much do you want to pay (for it)?
Louise ₱75.00.
Vendor Please! I can't. I'll lose out. (It won't even pay for my overheads!). Okay, ₱120.00 ma'am.
Louise This is all the money I've got, ₱80.00.
Vendor One hundred pesos ma'am, that's ever so cheap.
Louise I can only really pay ₱80.00.
Vendor ₱90.00 ma'am, anyway you are rich.
Louise Okay, ₱85.00, if not, never mind (I won't buy it).
Vendor Okay ma'am, ₱85.00.
Louise Thank you, here you are. (*lit, here's my payment*)

Exercise 5

Imagine you are at a local market in the Philippines. Try asking how much different items are, using both **magkano** and **magkakano**. Use the vocabulary box to help you. Why not ask your Filipino friends to help you, too!

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
mangga	mango
guyabano	soursop
dalandan	oranges
papaya	papaya
pinya	pineapple
saging	banana
lanzones	lanzones (tropical fruit, similar to lychee)
bayabas	guava
talong	eggplant (aubergine)
ampalaya	bitter melon
kalabasa	squash
sili	hot pepper
kamatis	tomatoes
pechay	pakchoi (Chinese cabbage)
repolyo	cabbage

Changing currency and travellers' cheques at the bank

Dialogue 3

Bill and Louise Cook want to change some money at the bank. Bill strikes up a conversation with one of the bank tellers.

Teller Magandang umaga *po*. Ano *po* ang maipaglilingkod ko sa inyo?

Bill Magandang umaga naman. Gusto kong magpapalit ng sterling pounds.

Teller Magkano *po*?

Bill Limandaang sterling pounds. Magkano ba ang palit?

Teller Sisenta y otso pesos *po* sa isang sterling pound.

Bill O sige. Heto. (Iniabot)

Teller (Bumilang). O, heto *po* ang pera at recibo ninyo.

Bill Nagpapalit din ba kayo ng travellers cheques?

Teller Opo. Pero sisenta pesos *po* ang palit. Kailangan *po* namin ang pasaporte ninyo.

Bill Heto ang travellers cheques at ang pasaporte ko.

Teller Sige *po*, pirmahan lang *po* ninyo ang mga tseke.

Bill Salamat.

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
ano <i>po</i> ang maipaglilingkod ko	what (service) can I do?
gusto kong magpapalit ng	I want to change some
ang palit	the exchange rate
sa isang	to one/ against one
iniabot	handed over
bumilang	counted
pera at recibo ninyo	your money and receipt
nagpapalit din ba kayo	do you also change?
kailangan <i>po</i> namin	we need
pasaporte ninyo	your passport
pirmahan lang	(just) please sign
ang mga tseke	the cheques

Translation

Teller Good morning sir. What can I do for you?

Bill Good morning to you too. I'd like to change some sterling pounds.

Teller How much sir?

Bill £500.00 What (*how much*) is the exchange rate?

Teller (It's) 68 pesos to a sterling pound.

Bill Okay. Here you are. (*Handing him the money*)

Teller (*Counting*). Here's your money and receipt sir.

Bill Do you also change travellers' cheques?


Teller Yes sir. But the exchange rate is 60 pesos to a sterling pound. We'll need your passport.

Bill Here are my travellers' cheques and my passport.

Teller Kindly (*please*) sign the cheques, sir.

Bill Thank you.

 **Exercise 6**

 How much of the conversation at the bank can you remember? Listen to the tape again and follow Dialogue 3 (page 72). The following statements or questions appeared in the dialogue.

True or false?:

1. Ano po ang maipaglilingkod ko sa inyo? True / False
2. Magkano ba ang palit? True / False
3. Sisenta pesos po ang palit. True / False
4. Nagpapalit din ba kayo ng sterling pounds? True / False
5. Pirmahan lang po ninyo ang mga tseke. True / False


 **Exercise 7**

How do you ask the following in Tagalog?

1. I'd like to change some dollars.
2. What is the exchange rate?
3. The exchange rate is 40 pesos.
4. Do you also exchange Australian dollars?

Use the dialogue and the vocabulary box provided to help you.

 **Exercise 8**

 Listening and understanding

A common form of recreation for Filipino men is cockfighting. Many men rear and train fighting cocks in the hope of winning prestige and of course, making money. Let us now join a group of men at a 'sabungan' (cockfighting pit).

1. How much money are they betting on the red fighting cock ('sa pula')?
2. How much are they betting on the white fighting cock ('sa puti')?

One-minute phrases

Atik (*ah-teeek*) Street word for **pera**, money. Someone who has a lot of money is **maatik**.

Perahin na lang (*peh-rah-heen nah lahng*) Literally, *just to make into money*, meaning *just give cash/money instead of goods etc.*

Nakatuntong sa numero (*nah-kah-toon-tawng sah noo-meh-raw*) Literally, *stepping on numbers*. This Tagalog expression is used to refer to someone who is constantly subject to scrutiny, *making him/her feel uneasy*. A person who has to constantly watch his/her ps and qs.

Isang katutak (*ee-sahng kah-too-tahk*) Literally, *One/a load of more than plenty*. This phrase is used in connection with surplus or abundance. For example: **Isang katutak ang pagkain sa pinggan ko!** *I've got plenty of food on my plate!*

Nagmimiron (*nahg-mee-mee-rawn*) Derived from the verb **nagmamayroon** meaning *pretending to possess something*. This phrase is often used in connection with a person who is seen to be 'showing off' or 'bragging', or for someone who is ogling.

 **Cultural tip**

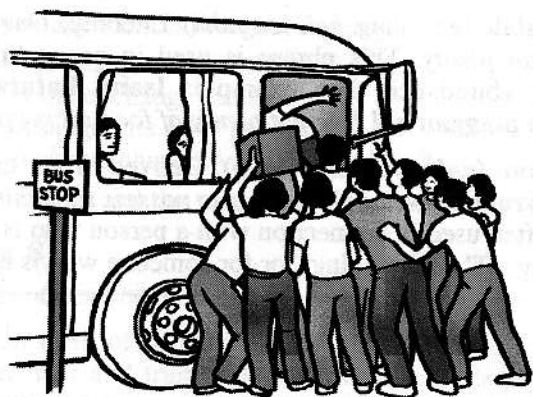
As in so many countries around the world, prices often increase when the shopkeeper, vendor or salesperson sees that the customer is a foreigner. Be patient with this. Don't be afraid to try out your Tagalog, even if they speak back to you in broken English. You will find that with a smile and even a little Tagalog, the price will go down. Don't be afraid to haggle in the markets and in small stores. Don't try to haggle in big stores as prices there are fixed.

6 SAAN KA NAKATIRA?

Where do you live?

In this unit you will learn how to

- use the question word **saan**
- follow directions



Using the question word **saan**

Dialogue 1

Roy Cook is waiting at a bus stop. He's off to Makati, the heart of the business and commercial district of Manila. While waiting, Roy notices his old friend Manny and strikes up a conversation with him.

- Roy** O, ano Manny, kumusta ka?
Manny Roy, ikaw ba talaga? Bakasyon ka ba?
Roy Ako nga. Oo kasama ko ang mga magulang ko.
Manny Saan ang punta mo?

- Roy** Sa Makati Mega Mall lang kasi masyadong mainit ngayon.
Manny Doon din ang punta ko. Sabay na tayo.
Roy Mabuti. Saan kayo nakatira ngayon?
Manny Sa Sikatuna Village, malapit sa Diliman.
Roy Saan sa Sikatuna Village? May kilala ako doon.
Manny Sa may simbahang Katoliko, numero uno, tres, otso. Pumunta ka sa bahay ha? Heto ang mapa.
Roy Salamat. O, Makati na pala ito!!!

Talasalitaan

ikaw ba talaga
 sa
 bakasyon ka ba
 nga
 kasama ko
 mga magulang ko
 saan
 ang punta mo
 masyadong mainit
 ngayon
 doon
 din
 sabay na
 nakatira
 may kilala ako
 sa may
 simbahan
 numero
 uno, tres, otso
 pumunta ka
 sa bahay
 ang mapa
 Makati na pala ito

Vocabulary

is it really you?
in /on/ at/ in the/ on the/ at the
are you on vacation?
indeed/ it's true
I'm with
my parents
where (direction)
your destination
too/very/quite hot
now/today
there
also/ too/ as well
do it together/ at the same time
living / residence
I know someone
near
church
number
one, three, eight
you go / you visit / stop by
at my place
the map
ah, we've arrived in Makati already
(literally; so this is Makati already)

Translation

- Roy** Hey, Manny, how are you?
Manny Roy, is it really you? Are you on vacation?
Roy I am indeed. I'm with my parents.
Manny Where are you going?
Roy To Makati Mega Mall because it's so hot today.
Manny I'm also going there. Let's go together.
Roy Good. Where are you living now?
Manny At Sikatuna Village, near to Diliman.
Roy Where in Sikatuna Village? I know someone there.
Manny Near the Catholic Church, number one, three, eight (Why not) Stop by the house? Here's the map.
Roy Thanks. Ah, we've arrived in Makati already!

🗨️ Language skills**1 Saan? Where?**

In Dialogue 1, Roy Cook introduces us to a new question word: **saan** or 'where'. He asks Manny: '**Saan** ang punta mo? (*Where are you going?*)'. '**Saan** kayo nakatira? (*Where do you live?*)' Be careful not to confuse **saan** with the question word **nasaan** we first met in Unit 4. Although both **saan** and **nasaan** can be translated into English as 'where', both question words perform different functions in Tagalog and so need to be addressed separately.

Saan has two major uses: 1) it represents the place where the action expressed in a sentence occurs. For example: *Saan ka bumili ng selyo?* (*Where did you buy stamps?*); 2) it represents a continuing condition. Example: *Saan ka nakaupo?* (*Where are you seated?*) When using **saan** as a question word, the reply should begin with '**sa**' followed by the place where the action occurred in the sentence.

In summary, the difference between **nasaan** and **saan** is quite simple: whereas both questions may refer to location ('where?'), only **saan** questions refer to either the *place of action*, or to a *continuing condition*. For example: *Nasaan si Richard?* Where [location] is Richard? *Saan matutulog si Richard?* Where will

Richard sleep [action]? Don't worry if this sounds a bit heavy going. It will soon become clear to you. Study the following examples and then re-read the explanation.

Examples:

- Tagalog: **Saan** tayo kakain?
 Literal: Where we will eat?
 English: Where are we going to eat?
 Reply: **Sa** Dad's (At Dad's)
- Tagalog: **Saan** ka nagpagupit?
 Literal: Where you have a haircut?
 English: Where did you have a haircut?
 Reply: **Sa** Rudy's Barber Shop (At Rudy's Barber Shop)
- Tagalog: **Saan** sila matutulog?
 Literal: Where they will sleep?
 English: Where will they sleep?
 Reply: **Sa** bahay ko (At my house)
- Tagalog: **Saan** mag-aaral si Tessie?
 Literal: Where will study Tessie?
 English: Where will Tessie study?
 Reply: **Sa** St Paul's (At St Paul's)
- Tagalog: **Saan** nakahiga ang bata?
 Literal: Where lying down the child?
 English: Where is the child lying down?
 Reply: **Sa** kama (On the bed)
- Tagalog: **Saan** sila nakatayo?
 Literal: Where they standing?
 English: Where are they standing?
 Reply: **Sa** harapan (At the front)
- Tagalog: **Saan** naupo ang babae?
 Literal: Where sat the woman?
 English: Where did the woman sit?
 Reply: **Sa** bagong silya (On the new chair)
- Tagalog: **Saan** bumili ng sorbetes ang mga bata?
 Literal: Where bought ice cream the children?
 English: Where did the children buy ice cream?
 Reply: **Sa** Ben & Jerry's (At Ben & Jerry's)


Talasalitaan

kakain
nagpagupit
matutulog
mag-aaral
nakahiga
nakatayo
naupo
bumili
sorbetes


Vocabulary

will eat
had a haircut
will sleep
will study
lying down
standing
sat
bought
ice cream

 **Exercise 1**

 Listen to Dialogue 1 again and follow the conversation on page 76. You will notice that the dialogue has been repeated for a second time on the tape, but this time, Manny's voice has been omitted. Using the text provided, why not try out the role of Manny.

Exercise 2

 Here are some sentences with the word jumbled up. Can you put the words back into the correct order to make a good **saan** sentence? Use the explanation and examples to guide you.

1. nakatira / sila / saan.

Answer: _____

Translation: Where do they live?

2. kayo / matutulog / saan.

Answer: _____

Translation: Where will you sleep?

3. Nag-aaral / saan / sina Lucy.

Answer: _____

Translation: Where do Lucy and her friends study?

4. bumibili / saan / po kayo/ ng sorbetes.

Answer: _____

Translation: Where do you buy ice cream? (formal)

5. Si Adam / kakain / saan / ng almusal.

Answer: _____

Translation: Where will Adam eat breakfast?

Talasalitaan

nag-aaral
bumibili

Vocabulary

studying/study
buying/buy

 **Finding an address on a map** **Dialogue 2**

Roy decided to call Manny on the telephone. Manny is giving Roy instructions on how to get to his house.

Roy Hello Manny, si Roy ito.

Manny Kumusta Roy, **pupunta** ka ba **rito**?

Roy Oo, **pero** pakiulit mo nga ang tirahan mo. *Hindi* ba masyadong malayo iyan?

Manny Okey lang. Masyadong malapit nga eh! Tingnan mo ang mapa. Nakikita mo ba ang simbahang Katoliko?

Roy Oo. Nasa Kalye Vito ito.

Manny Una, *bumaba* ka sa McDonald's. Iyan ay **Kalye Sanchez**. Dumiretso ka **buhat** sa McDonald's. Nakikita mo ba ang **Kalye Roxas**?

Roy Oo.

Manny Tumawid ka doon – iyan ang **kalye namin**, **Kalye Simeon**. **Kami** ay **numero uno**, tres, otso. May kasama ka ba?

Roy *Wala*. Nag-iisa ako. Hintayin mo ako.

Talasalitaan

pupunta ka ba
pakiulit mo nga
tirahan
nakikita mo
Katoliko
una
bumaba ka
iyan
kalye namin
kami ay
kasama
nag-iisa
hintayin mo ako

Vocabulary

are you going to
please repeat
residence/ address
you see/ you are seeing
Catholic
first
you alight/ get off
that
our street
we are
companion
alone
wait for me

Translation

Roy Hello Manny, this is Roy.

Manny How are you Roy, are you coming over?

Roy Yes, but can you repeat your address for me? Isn't it very far?

Manny It's ok. In fact it's quite near. Look at the map. Can you see a Catholic church?

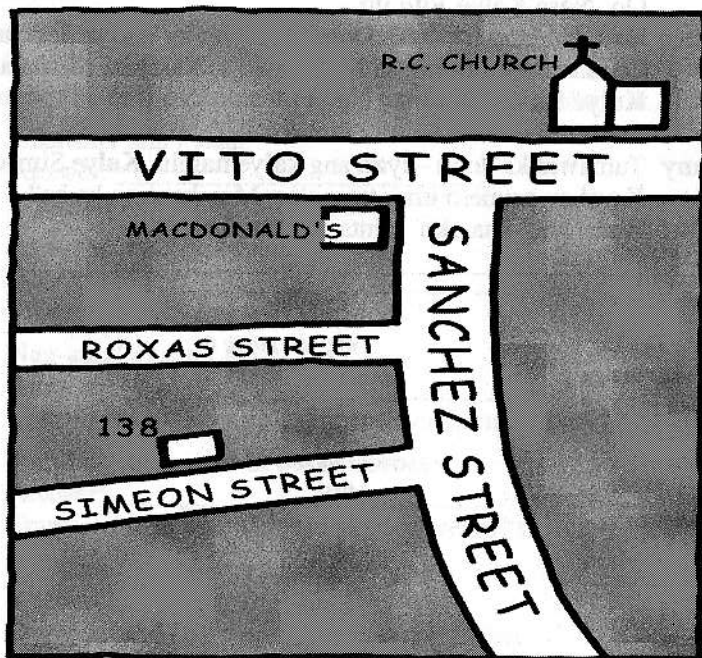
Roy Yes, it is along Vito Street.

Manny First, get off at McDonald's. That is Sanchez Street. From McDonald's walk straight ahead. Can you see Roxas Street?

Roy Yes.

Manny Cross there. That's our street, Simeon Street
We are (Our house is) number one three eight. Do you have somebody with you? (Literally, do you have a companion?)

Roy No, I'm alone. Wait for me.

**More useful words**

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
plaza	town square
ospital	hospital
munisipyo	municipal offices
kapitolyong panglalawigan	provincial capital
korte	court
istasyon ng pulis	police station
sementeryo	cemetery
Bulwagang Pambarangay	Barangay Hall
palengke	market
LRT	light rail transit

Exercise 3

Fill in the right word using a word from the box.

bahay kasama ka mapa nakikita

- Pupunta ___ ba sa hotel?
- Sa Kalye Simeon ang _____ namin.
- Saan sa _____ ang simbahang Katoliko?
- _____ mo ba ang McDonald's?
- Sino ang _____ mo?

Exercise 4

Match up the question with the correct answer:

- | Question | Answer |
|--|----------------------------------|
| 1. Masyadong malayo ba ang tirahan ni Manny? | a. Walang kasama si Roy |
| 2. Saan nakatira si Manny? | b. Nasa Kalye Vito ito. |
| 3. Saan dapat tumawid si Manny? | c. Sa Sikatuna Village. |
| 4. May kasama ba si Roy? | d. Hindi. Masyadong malapit ito. |
| 5. Nasaan ang simbahang Katoliko? | e. Sa Kalye Roxas. |

Language skills

2 Masyado So, very, quite, too, etc.

Remember the adjectives (describing words) you met on page 55? Well, the good news is that there are some interesting ways of 'spicing up' your adjectives with small words such as *too, quite, very, so, etc.* These small words are known as 'adverbs'. You can spot them easily because in addition to being small, they always go in front of the adjective. For example, quite (adverb) + handsome (adjective) = quite handsome; so (adverb) + hot (adjective) = so hot, etc. Adverbs give additional information about adjectives. This means that if you want to give extra impact to your adjectives, you need to use an adverb or adverbs. In Tagalog, adverbs such as *so, very, quite, too* are represented by a single word: '**masyado**'. Adverbs work in Tagalog in just about the same way as they do in English. As with English adverbs (e.g. 'quite'), **masyado** can appear on its own. However, when **masyado** is used in connection with an adjective, it is placed before the adjective. In order to help the sentence flow better, '**ng**' is attached to the end of the word '**masyado**'. For example: masyado + ng (very) + marumi (dirty) = masyadong marumi (very dirty); masyadong mataas (too high), masyadong mahaba (very long) and so on. Of course, there are other kinds of adverbs but we will deal with those as they come along.

Here are some examples of adverb + adjective combinations:

Masyado + ng + adjective =	Combination	English
Masyadong + malaki =	masyadong malaki	very big
Masyadong + malamig =	masyadong malamig	too cold
Masyadong + mabilis =	masyadong mabilis	so fast
Masyadong + mainit =	masyadong mainit	very hot
Masyadong + madaldal =	masyadong madaldal	very talkative
Masyadong + mataas =	masyadong mataas	quite high
Masyadong + madilim =	masyadong madilim	very dark
Masyadong + malakas =	masyadong malakas	quite loud, very strong
Masyadong + mahina =	masyadong mahina	too soft (volume), very weak

Masyadong + mabagal =	masyadong mabagal	too slow
Masyadong + mahaba =	masyadong mahaba	quite long

Exercise 5 Sentence building

Can you fill in the spaces with the right word combination words that you can find in the box?

Magbabakasyon si Philip at si Tina sa Pilipinas!

Phil and Tina will go on Holiday to the Philippines

Nasa eroplano si Phil at si Tina. _____ sila sa Pilipinas. _____ (40 c) sa Pilipinas pero doon sila magbabakasyon. _____ daw ang Pilipinas (17,000 milya _____ Heathrow). Ang eroplano ay _____ na. Sabi ng _____ alas 9:30 daw nang umaga _____ ng eroplano sa paliparan.

Talasalitaan

Vocabulary

masyadong mainit	very hot
masyadong mataas	quite high
kapitan ng eroplano	captain of the airplane
magbabakasyon	will go on vacation
ang dating	time of arrival
masyadong malayo	quite far
buhat sa	from

Finding the right Jeepney/bus

Dialogue 3

Roy has decided to take a Jeepney to Manny's place. There are many Jeepneys in Manila so Roy wants to make sure that he gets on the right one.

Roy	Papunta ba ito sa Sikatuna Village?
Drayber	Opo. Saan <i>po</i> ba doon?
Roy	Sa McDonald's sa Kalye Sanchez.

- Drayber** OK *po*, hihinto ito sa McDonald's.
Roy Magkano ang pamasaha hanggang sa Sikatuna?
Drayber Dos singkwenta lang *po*.
Roy Heto ang bayad. Pakipara mo sa Kalye Sanchez ha?
Drayber Opo.

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
papunta ba ito sa	<i>is this going to</i>
saan po ba	<i>where sir?</i>
hihinto ito	<i>this will stop</i>
ang pamasaha	<i>the fare</i>
hanggang sa	<i>until</i>
dos singkewenta	<i>2.50 pesos</i>
heto ang bayad ko	<i>here's my fare</i>
pakipara mo	<i>please stop at</i>

Translation

- Roy** Is this going to Sikatuna Village?
Driver Yes sir, where (in Sikatuna Village)?
Roy McDonald's on Sanchez Street.
Driver OK sir, we will be stopping there. (literally, this will stop)
Roy How much is the fare to Sikatuna Village?
Driver It's 2.50 pesos sir.
Roy Here's my fare. Please stop at Sanchez Street, OK?
Driver Yes sir.



Exercise 6



Imagine that you are going to visit a friend in the Diliman area of Metro Manila. Use Dialogue 3 and the vocabulary box to help you form your own dialogue. Use your tape to make the exercise more realistic and more fun:

- Ikaw** _____
Drayber Opo. Saan po ba doon?
Ikaw _____
Drayber Okay po, hihinto ito sa _____

- Ikaw** _____ hanggang sa _____
Drayber Tres singkwenta lang po.
Ikaw _____
Drayber Opo.

One-minute phrases

Kilala ko siya (*kee-lah-lah kaw see-yah*) Literally, *I know him/her*. This expression is used to mean that a person knows 'of' someone (has heard of them/shook hands with them or they have been introduced to each other). The expression does not necessarily mean that they know the person as a friend or acquaintance. For example: **Kilala niya ang asawa ng gobernador**. *He/she knows the governor's wife/husband.*

Do not mistake the above with

Kakilala ko siya (*kah-kee-lah-lah kaw-see-yah*) Literally *He/she is an acquaintance*. For example: **Kakilala ko si Bobbie Rodero**. *Bobbie Rodero is my acquaintance.*

Matalik na kaibigan (*mah-tah-leek nah kah-ee-bee gahn*) Meaning *best friend*. For example: **Matalik na kaibigan ko si Jun Terra**. *Jun Terra is my best friend.*

Mabilis magpatakbo (*mah-bee-lee mahg-pah-tahk-boo*) Literally, *fast to run a vehicle*. Meaning: *a fast driver*. For example: **Mabilis magpatakbo ang aming drayber kaya maaga kaming nakarating sa paliparan**. *Ours was a fast driver so we arrived at the airport early.*

Huling biyahe (*hoo-leeng bee-yah-heeh*) Meaning: *last trip*. For example: **Anong oras ang huling biyahe ninyo papunta sa Calapan?** *What time is your last trip to Calapan?*

i Cultural tip

The Jeepney is a mode of transport unique to the Philippines. Originally modelled on the US army Jeep, it has since been transformed into the most common form of public transport on Philippine roads. Jeepneys are easily identifiable by their typically colourful and lavish decoration. They are probably the cheapest means of transport available, although not always the most comfortable! If you wish to ride on a jeepney, don't forget that there are few official 'stopping' places and so you will have to inform the driver when and where you want to get off.

Destinations and routes are usually written on both the front and the side of the Jeepney. You can hail Jeepneys in most places except on main roads where stricter traffic regulations apply. If in doubt, ask a local!

7 ANG PAMILYA KO

My family

In this unit you will learn how to

- introduce the members of your family
- use **ay** in a sentence
- use possessive pronouns

Introducing the members of your family

Dialogue 1

At the Abiva house, Tita Abiva is showing her family album to Bill and Louise Cook.



Tita Ito ay larawan ng pamilya ko. Sa likuran, buhat sa kaliwa ay si Tatay, si ate Azon at si Jake ang asawa niya, si Edith ang asawa ni Jose, si Louie ang asawa ni Citta, at ito ay si Nanay.

Bill Ang mga nasa harapan?

Tita Ang mga nasa harapan, buhat sa kaliwa ay si Ely walang asawa, si Dino na katabi ko ay binata at pinakabunso sa pamilya namin, at ito si Toto ang asawa ko.

Bill Malaki-laki ang pamilya ninyo.

Tita Oo, pero ang malaking pamilya ay masayang pamilya.

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
pinakabunso	youngest
larawan	photograph/picture
ng pamilya ko	of my family
sa likuran	behind/at the back
ang pamilya ninyo	your family
tatay	father
asawa	spouse
pero	but
ang asawa niya	her/his partner
binata	bachelor
na katabi ko	(who's) next to me
katabi ni	next to
nasa likuran	at the back
ng pamilya namin	of our family
ang asawa ko	my partner
malaki-laki	quite big
ate	elder sister
harapan	front
malaking pamilya	big family
kapag	if/when
masayang pamilya	happy family
nasa harapan	in front

Translation

Tita This is a photograph of my family. At the back, from the left that is (my) father, (my) older sister Azon and her husband Jake, Edith the wife of Jose, Louie, the husband of Citta and this is (my) mother.

Bill [and] Those in the front?

Tita The ones in front, from the left are Ely who is unmarried, Dino (who is) seated next to me, (he) is a bachelor and the youngest in our family, and this is Toto my husband.

Bill Your family is quite big.

Tita Yes, but a big family is a happy family.

Exercise 1

Look at the picture of the Abiva family on page 89. Imagine that Tita Abiva has asked **you** to explain to the Cooks 'who is who' in the picture. Remember, your answer should begin with '**nasa**' as you will need to show the *location* of the person. In your answers, use the words from the box. The dialogue and vocabulary box may also be of help to you.

nasa likuran kaliwa katabi ni nasa harapan kanan

Example: Tatay. Answer: Nasa likuran, sa kaliwa.

- Si Ate Azon at si Jake. Answer:
- Si Ely. Answer:
- Si Tita. Answer:
- Si Citta. Answer:
- Si Toto. Answer:
- Si Dino. Answer:

The Filipino family tree

Tagalog	Pronunciation	English
nanay/inay	nah-nigh/ee-nigh	mother
tatay/itay	tah-tigh/ee-tigh	father
ate	ah-te	older sister
kuya	koo-yah	older brother
kapatid	kah-pah-teed	sibling
kapatid na lalaki	kah-pah teed nah lah-lah-kee	brother
kapatid na babae	kah-pah teed nah bah-bah-ee	sister
tiyo	tee-yaw	uncle
tiya	tee-yah	aunt
lolo	law-law	grandfather
lola	law-lah	grandmother
apo	ah-paw	grandchild
bayaw	bah-yao	brother-in-law
hipag	hee-pahg	sister-in-law
pamangkin	pah-mahng-keen	nephew/niece
asawa	ah-sah-wah	husband/wife

🗣️ Language skills

1 Ko, mo, niya, namin, ninyo, nila Possessive pronouns

If you look closely at Dialogue 1, you will notice that the words **ko** (*my*), **niya** (*his/her*) and **namin** (*our*) have one thing in common: they express *ownership* or *possession*. These words are known as **possessive pronouns**. Possessive pronouns are used in two basic ways: 1) they tell us about *ownership*, i.e. 'ang pasaporte **ko**' (*my* passport), 'ang guro **namin**' (*our* teacher), 2) they show *relationship* with a person, i.e., 'ang nanay **ko**' (*my* mother), 'ang tatay **namin**' (*our* father). You will notice that in English the possessive pronoun goes in front of the thing (*noun*) it possesses. For example: **your** name, **his** house, **my** father, **our** country and so on. In Tagalog, the order is reversed with the possessive pronoun being placed *after* the word it possesses. For example: pangalan **mo** (*your* name), bahay **niya** (*his* house), tatay **ko** (*my* father), bansa **natin** (*our* country) and so on. One small but important difference to watch out for is the first person plural. In English, we simply say '*our* house', '*our* street', '*our* village'. Tagalog has two possibilities: one which *includes* the listener (**natin**), and another which *excludes* the listener (**namin**). For example, if I were to speak to you about 'tatay **natin**' or '*our* father', then the use of the inclusive form (**natin**) makes it clear that he is also *your* father. If however I talk about 'tatay **namin**', then the use of the exclusive form (**namin**) indicates that he is '*our*' father (me, my brothers and sisters) while not implying that he is also your father. Look at the following table:

Personal possessive pronouns:

Number	English	Tagalog
1st person (singular)	<i>my</i>	ko
(plural)	<i>our</i>	namin (exclusive of listener/s)
	<i>our</i>	natin (inclusive of listener/s)
2nd person (singular)	<i>your</i>	mo
(plural)	<i>your</i>	ninyo
3rd person (singular)	<i>his/her</i>	niya
(plural)	<i>their</i>	nila

Here are some example sentences:

English

1. He/she is **my** friend.
2. Is he **your** driver?
3. We are **their** guest.
4. Cora is **our** teacher.
5. Are you **his** friend?

Tagalog

- Kaibigan ko siya*
Drayber mo ba siya?
Bisita nila kami
Guro namin si Cora
Kaibigan ka ba niya?

🗣️ Exercise 2

Translate the following sentences, using the vocabulary box to help you:

1. Margaret is my friend.
2. John is his brother.
3. Ann is their visitor.
4. They are my classmates.

Exercise 3 Listening

Talasalitaan

bisita
mga kaklase
guro

Vocabulary

guest
classmates
teacher



Listen carefully to the accompanying exercise, then look at the pictures. Can you tell who is related to whom?



1.



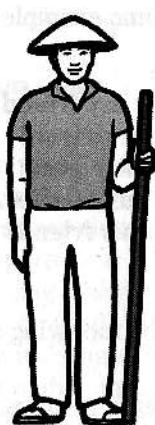
2.



3.



4.



Language skills

2 Ng Of/of the Ni/nina + Name of person/s

Another new word used in Dialogue was 'ng' (pronounced *nang*). Ng is also used to show **possession**. For example: 'ang laruan ng bata' (literally, *the toy of the child = the child's toy*), 'baso ng tubig' (a glass **of** water), 'ang pintuan ng bahay' (*the doorway of the house*). These examples show that **ng** can be translated into English as '**of**' or '**of the**'. Try to remember, however, that in English, the word **of** often disappears completely and is replaced by an **apostrophe + 's**. For example, 'the mother **of** the bride' becomes 'the bride's mother', 'the book **of** the student' becomes 'the student's book'. When using a person's name, however, we use the word **ni** instead of **ng**, indicating that the person concerned is the possessor. For example, 'Ito ang bahay **ni** Mary' (*this is Mary's house*). If more than one person is involved, then **nina** is used (the plural of **ni**). For example: 'Ka-opisina siya **nina** Tony'. *He is an officemate of Tony and his friend/s.*

Look at the following examples:

Tagalog	English
ni Jose	of Jose/ Jose's
nina Jose	of Jose and his friend/s'
ni Mary	of Mary/ Mary's
nina Mary	of Mary and her friend/s'
ng bata	of the child / the child's
ng mga babae	of the women/ the women's
ng Presidente	of the President/ the President's
ni Queen Elizabeth	of Queen Elizabeth/ Queen Elizabeth's

Here are some full sentences to show this expression in use.

- Anak **ni** Queen Elizabeth si Prince Charles.
Prince Charles is the son of Queen Elizabeth.
- Kotse **ng** Presidente ito.
This is the car of the President.
- Doktor **ni** Bennie si Doktor Cruz.
Doctor Cruz is Bennie's doctor.
- Maleta **ng** mga babae iyan.
That is the women's suitcase.

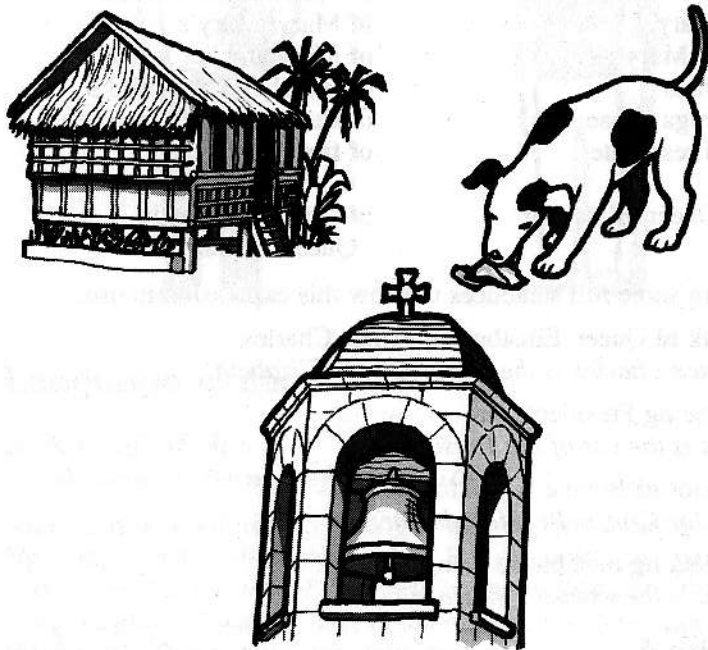
Exercise 4


Fill in the blank with the correct word. Refer to the Language skills on pages 94-5.

- Kailangan mo ba _____ (ng/ni) tulong ko?
- Hindi _____ (namin/nina) alam ang tirahan ni Phil.
- Anak _____ (ni/ng) ginoong Abiva si Jobert.
- Sino ang kapatid _____ (ng/ng mga) guro?
- Gusto _____ (ko/nina) ang bagong kotse mo.
- Nasa mesa ang pagkain _____ (ng/ni) mga bisita.
- Bukas, narito ang guro _____ (niya/nina).

 **Exercise 5**

Look at the pictures and write a sentence about each using either *ng, ni* or *nina*.



 **Using 'ay' in a sentence**

 **Dialogue 2**

At the Abiva house, Bill, Louise and Tita continue their conversation.

Louise Ilan ang anak ninyo?

Tita Lima. Isa lang ang walang asawa. Heto ang larawan ng mga anak at mga apo ko.

Louise Sila ay magaganda.

Tita Kayo, ilan ang anak ninyo?

Louise Dalawa lang. Si John at si Roy.

- Tita** May anak ba si John?
Bill Oo. Dalawa. Si Adam at si Lucy.
Tita Maliit ang pamilya ninyo!
Louise Oo nga.
Katulong Eto po ang pampalamig.
Tita Salamat. Tayo ay magpalamig muna.

Talasalitaan

ilan
 ang anak ninyo
 lima sila
 isa lang
 walang asawa
 ng mga anak
 pampalamig
 mga apo ko
 dalawa lang
 anak ninyo
 pamilya ninyo
 oo nga
 eto po
 magpalamig muna

Vocabulary

how many
your child
there are five
only one
not married
of the children
refreshment
my grandchildren
only two
your children
your family
I agree
here you are
have some refreshments first

Translation

- Louise** How many children do you have?
Tita Five. Only one is not (yet) married. Here is a photo of my children and my grandchildren.
Louise They are beautiful.
Tita How many children do you have? (*literally, and you, how many children do you have?*)
Louise Just two. John and Roy.
Tita Does John have children?
Bill Yes. Two. Adam and Lucy.
Tita Your family is small!
Louise I agree.
Maid Here is your refreshment ma'am!
Tita Thank you. Let's have something to drink first (*literally, refreshments*).

Exercise 6

Read the following story. You will notice that several words are missing from the Tagalog dialogue. Using the vocabulary box provided, fill in the missing words. Use the English translation to help you.

Donna visits Chit's family in Batangas

Donna Magandang araw po. Kumusta po kayo? Si Donna po ako. _____ ako ni Chit.

Host Ikaw ba si Donna? Pasok ka. _____ ka pala. Ilan kayong _____?

Donna Tatlo po. Ako, ang _____, si Eloisa ang pangalawa, at si Mila, ang _____. Lahat po kami walang asawa.

Host Ganoon ba? Kumusta ang mga magulang mo?

Donna Mabuti po naman sila. Kayo po, ilan po ang _____?

Host Apat ang _____.

Donna _____ ang may asawa?

Host Isa lang _____. Si Zeny at dalawa na _____. Magpalamig ka muna.

Donna Maraming salamat po. Ang sarap nito! Kung gayon may _____ na pala kayo.

Host Oo at maligaya naman ako!

Donna Mabuti naman at nakilala ko kayo sa wakas.

Host Ako rin!

Translation

Donna Good morning (*polite*). How are you? I am Donna – Chit's friend.

Host Are you Donna? Ah, please come in! You are indeed tall! How many brothers and sisters do you have?

Donna Three ma'am. I'm the eldest, Eloisa the second and Mila is the youngest. We are all still single.

Host I see. And how are your parents?

Donna They are fine ma'am. And how about you ma'am, how many children do you have?

Host I have four children.

Donna Are any of them married yet?

Host Only one so far. Zeny. She has two children. Please have some refreshment.

Donna Thank you. This is delicious! So, you now have grandchildren!

Host Yes, and I am very happy about that!

Donna It is so nice to meet you at last.

Host You too!

Talasalitaan

Vocabulary


pinakabunso	youngest
matangkad	tall
magkakapatid	siblings
apo	grandchild
pinakamatanda	eldest
ang anak niya	her children
ang may-asawa	(the) married (one)
anak ko	my children
ilan	how many

Exercise 7

Which question matches which answer?

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Anak mo ba siya? | A. Oo. Asawa yata ni Azon si Jake. |
| 2. Nasa silangan ng Pilipinas ang Davao. | B. Kuya. |
| 3. Ano ang tawag sa matandang kapatid na lalaki? | C. Hindi. Sa tindahan tayo bumibili ng selyo. |
| 4. Asawa kaya ni Azon si Jake? | D. Hindi. Hindi ko siya anak. |
| 5. Sa ospital tayo bumibili ng selyo. | E. Wala. Nasa Timog ito. |

Exercise 8 Speaking and listening activity

 Listen to the dialogue on the tape. How many of the words or phrases from the conversation between Pepot and Donna can you remember? Listen to the tape again. Here are some snatches from the dialogue. Fill in the missing parts. When you have completed the task, why not ask one of your Filipino friends to help you act out the dialogue?

Donna O, tuloy ba _____ kina Peps? (*our picnic*)

Pepot Sino ba ang _____? (*older of the two?*)

Donna _____ ang tanda ni Romy kay Peps. (*three years*)

Pepot _____ si Peps. (*younger*)

Donna _____ ng anak ni Romy. (*what is the name*)

Pepot _____. (*Don't you know?*)

Donna Oo. _____. (*she is my mother's sister*).

Pepot Bibili ako _____ . (*some cold drinks*)

Donna Sa palagay ko, magiging masaya _____. (*this picnic*).

Language skills

3 Ay

Life and language would seem rather boring if we had only one set way of communicating correctly with one another. Fortunately, we can vary sentences in order to add spice, variety and colour to our language. For example, 'Hello Bob, how are you this morning?' becomes 'Morning Bob, how are you?' or perhaps 'How are you this morning, Bob?'. All of these simple sentences communicate the same message, but all are slightly different. Tagalog does much the same thing with the simple word **ay** (pronounced *eye*). This little word has no direct English translation but is a veritable gold

nugget when it comes to adding variety to our spoken Tagalog. The good news for English speakers is that the word **ay** follows the normal English language sentence structure. It *inverts* the usual sequence of Tagalog words making it resemble its English equivalent. For example, *he is good* (**mabuti siya**) becomes **siya ay mabuti**. You may be forgiven for thinking that **ay** means 'is' or that **ay** is the equivalent of the English verb 'to be', but this is not so. A sentence involving the use of **ay** does not differ in meaning from the sentence without **ay**. It simply offers variety and assists the flow of the sentence. **Ay** can also be used as a more formal style and as such is commonly found in writing, lectures, sermons and so on, although this is only used after vowels. You will no doubt have noticed the use of **ay** in Dialogue 1, together with the shortened form of 'y'. Both forms are correct. You will notice that the shortened 'y' form is most commonly used when following words which end with a vowel. This is not always the case however. For example: **Ito'y maganda**, *This is pretty*. **Ikaw'y guro**, *You are a teacher*.

Here are some more examples.

English	Tagalog	Inverted (ay sentence)
<i>They are Americans</i>	Amerikano sila	Sila ay Amerikano
<i>The queue is long</i>	Mahaba ang pila	Ang pila ay mahaba
<i>Is the chair clean?</i>	<i>Malinis ba ang silya?</i>	<i>Ang silya ba ay malinis?</i>
<i>Ann is industrious</i>	Masipag si Ann.	Si Ann ay masipag
<i>They are nurses</i>	Mga narses sila.	Sila'y mga narses
<i>The vegetable is fresh</i>	Sariwa ang gulay	Ang gulay ay sariwa.
<i>The mango is sour</i>	Maasim ang mangga	Ang mangga'y maasim
<i>The car is at the garage</i>	Nasa garahe ang kotse	Ang kotse'y nasa garahe
<i>He is a doctor here</i>	Doktor siya dito	Siya ay doktor dito

Exercise 9

Convert the following standard Tagalog sentences into their equivalent **ay** form sentences:

- Anak mo siya.
- May tiket ako.
- Malamig ang tubig.
- Mainit ngayon.
- Masarap ang handa mo.

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
tiket	ticket
malamig	cold
tubig	water
masarap	delicious
handa	food preparation

One-minute phrases

Maghabol sa tambol mayor (*mahg-hah-bawl sah tahm-bawl mah-yor*) Literally, *to chase the principal drum (of a marching band)*. This expression is applied to somebody who has been cheated (i.e. in money, relationships, financial deals etc.). The expression implies that the victim has no chance of finding justice. Marching bands are a common sight in the Philippines, especially during fiestas, funerals and weddings. *To chase the principal drum*, as the saying goes, takes some doing, as it is a heavy instrument to run away with! The phrase is similar in meaning to the English expressions, *caught napping* or *caught with his pants down!*

Mukhang Biyernes Santo (*mook-hahng beeyer-ness sahn-taw*) Literally, *a face like Good Friday!* This expression is applied to a person who looks gloomy. As a Christian country, the Philippines traditionally observes the celebration of Holy Week. Part of Holy Week is the observance of Good Friday, the solemn remembrance of the day Jesus died. Filipinos tend to disapprove of festivities on Good Friday as a sign of respect for the **Santo Intiero** or *Dead Christ*. Anyone who wears a solemn expression on their face at other times may find themselves on the receiving end of the comment, **Mukhang Biyernes Santo ka!** *You've got a face like Good Friday!*

Parang pinagbiyak na bunga (*pah-rahng pee-nahg-bee-yahk nah boo-ngah*) Literally, *Looks like a fruit chopped in two*. When a piece of fruit is chopped into two halves, the two halves are generally identical. This expression is commonly used therefore to refer to twins.

Kaibigang matalik/matalik na kaibigan (*kah-ee-bee-gahng mah-tah-leek/mah-tah-leek na kah-ee-bee-gahn*) a term which means *best friend*.

Kasa-kasama (*kah-sah-kah-sah-mah*) This expression is used to identify a person commonly seen with another person. For example: **Laging kasa-kasama ni Jun si Bobbie.** *Bobbie is always seen in Jun's company.*

i Cultural tip

When meeting the family of a Filipino friend for the first time do not be surprised if they appear to be more 'formal' than relaxed with you. This is normal. Many Filipinos often feel intimidated by foreigners, but as they gradually get to know you, they will begin to feel more relaxed. Don't be afraid to try out your Tagalog, even if you make mistakes. They will appreciate your efforts and will warm to you more quickly.

8

SA RESTAWRAN

At the restaurant

In this unit you will learn how to

- order your drinks
- choose some typical Filipino food
- ask for your bill
- make words plural using 'mga'

Ordering your drinks

Dialogue 1

Bill, Louise and Roy have decided to eat dinner at the local *Kamayan* restaurant.

Waiter Magandang gabi *po*. Maligayang pagdating sa 'Kamayan'.

Bill May mesa ba kayo para sa tatlo?

Waiter Mayroon *po*. Heto *po* ang mesa ninyo.

Bill Salamat. (*Naupo* ang mag-anak)

Waiter Sir, heto *po* ang menu namin. Ano *po* ang gusto ninyong inumin?

Bill Sandali lang. Louise?

Louise Malamig na tubig lang muna. May mineral water ba kayo?

Waiter Mayroon *po*. Kayo *po* sir?

Bill San Miguel beer.

Waiter (kay Roy) Sa inyo *po*, sir?

Roy White wine ang sa akin.

Waiter Okey *po*. Pulutan sir, Ibig *po* ba ninyo.

Bill Oo. Ano ang pulutan ninyo?

Waiter Tapa at litson *po*. Isang plato o isang platito *po*?

Bill Parang masarap. O sige. Isang plato. Salamat.

Waiter Wala pong anuman.

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
maligayang pagdating	welcome
may mesa ba kayo	do you have a table
para sa tatlo	for three
malamig na tubig	cold water
ang mesa ninyo	your table
ang menu namin	our menu
ang gusto ninyo	what you like
platito	saucer
muna	first/for the time being
parang	seems/like
kay	to (+ name)
ang sa akin	mine
pulutan	finger food to go with drinks
tapa	sliced fried beef
litson	suckling pig
plato	plate

Translation

Waiter Good evening sir. Welcome to *Kamayan*.

Bill Do you have a table for three?

Waiter Yes sir. Here is your table, sir.

Bill Thank you. (The family sits down)

Waiter Sir, here's our menu. What would you like to drink?

Bill Just one moment. (You) Louise?

Louise I'll have cold water (for the time being). Do you have any mineral water?

Waiter Yes, we have ma'am. And you sir?

Bill San Miguel beer.

Waiter (to Roy) And you, sir?

Roy I'll have a white wine.

Waiter OK sir. Finger foods (to go with the drinks) sir, would you like some?

Bill Yes. What are your pulutan?

Waiter Sliced fried beef and suckling pig sir. One plate sir, or one saucer?

Bill Seems delicious. OK, one plate (of finger foods). Thank you.

Waiter You're welcome sir.

Exercise 1

Can you say the following?

1. There are four of us. (We are four)
2. Do you have a table for four persons?
3. I want (a glass of) cold water.
4. I would like (a bottle of) San Miguel beer.
5. Do you have a big table?

Exercise 2

Look at Dialogue 1 again. Based on this dialogue, can you tell which of the following sentences are true and which are false?

1. Para sa dalawa ang mesa.
2. Ang mesa ay para sa tatlo.
3. Mabuti para kay Louise ang malamig na tubig.
4. Gusto ni Louise ng malamig na beer.
5. Hindi gusto ni Bill ang inumin.
6. San Miguel Beer yata ang gusto ni Bill.

Language skills

1 Mga Making words plural

Dialogue 1 introduced us to the word 'mga' (pronounced *mah-ngah*). In jargon, this word is known as a pluraliser. A pluraliser is a word which lets us know that more than one person, place or thing is being referred to. In English, there are three basic ways of indicating the plural: 1) by adding the letter 's' to the end of the pluralised word. Hence, suitcase becomes 'suitcases'; 2) by changing a single letter in the pluralised word. Here, woman becomes women; 3) by adding 'es' to the pluralised word. Here, mango becomes mangoes. Tagalog has a far less complex way of making words plural. Simply add the word **mga** before the noun you wish to pluralise. For example: **tiket** (*ticket*) becomes **mga tiket** (*tickets*); **babae** (*woman*) becomes **mga babae** (*women*);

Pilipino (*Filipino*) becomes **mga Pilipino** (*Filipinos*). What could be easier?!

Exercise 3

Find the correct Tagalog words for the following and then pluralise them.



Did you know...?

Sometimes Tagalog will pluralise adjectives, too. For example **mabuti** (*good*) can become **mabubuti**, **malaki** (*big*) can become **malalaki**. Here the **mga** pluraliser is dropped in favour of repeating the second syllable of the word. In this type of sentence the plural adjective must always precede a plural noun or pronoun. For example: **maliit siya - maliliit sila**. Don't worry if this seems to be complicated for you at this time - you can come back to it later when you feel more confident. Just stick to the **mga** form for the moment.

Exercise 4

Using the vocabulary box provided arrange the following muddled up words into correct Tagalog sentences.

1. bisita/ sa bahay/ na/ mga/ may.
2. kayo/ mga/ ba/ estudyante?
3. pilipino/ sila/ mga/ hindi.
4. kailangan/ ang/ ko/ at mesa /mga silya.
5. sariwa/ mga prutas/ na ito/ ang.

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
na	already
estudyante	student
hindi	no
kailangan	need
silya	chair
sariwa	fresh
prutas	fruit

Choosing some typical Filipino food

Dialogue 2

The Cook family are ready to order. The waiter approaches them.

Waiter Ibig n'yo na *po* bang umorder?

Bill Oo. Ako, gusto ko ng adobong pusit, mechado at ginisang gulay. Ikaw, Louise? Ano ang order mo?

Louise Ako, gusto ko ng apritada, sinigang na bangus at kanin. May napili ka na ba, Roy?

Roy Opo. Mukhang masarap ang adobong manok. Gusto ko rin ng pansit at piniritong lumpiya.

Waiter Ano *po* ang starter ninyo? Mayroon pong sopas manok o kaya'y sariwang lumpia.

Bill Sariwang lumpia!

Waiter Sariwang lumpia, sir. Masarap *po* ang sarsa.

Bill Salamat.

Waiter Wala pong anuman.

Talasalitaan

ibig n'yo na
umorder
sopas manok
adobong pusit
mechado
ginisang gulay
ano
apritada
sinigang na bangus
kanin
may napili
mukhang masarap
abobong manok
starter ninyo
o kaya'y
sariwa(ng) lumpia
rekomendado
sarsa
gusto ko rin

Vocabulary

would you like now
to make your order
chicken soup
squid adobo
mechado
sauteed vegetables
what
apritada
fish
boiled rice
has selected/chosen
seems tasty
chicken adobo
your starter
or
fresh spring rolls
recommended
sauce/dressing
I also like

Translation

Waiter Would you like to order now?

Bill I would like adobong pusit, mechado and sauteed vegetables. (And) You Louise? What would you like to order?

Louise I would like apritada, sinigang na bangus [fish] and rice. Have you chosen, Roy?

Roy Yes, mum. The chicken adobo looks tasty. I would also like noodles and fried lumpia.

Waiter Sir, what would you like for your starter? There is chicken soup or fresh lumpia.

Bill Fresh lumpia!

Waiter Fresh lumpia sir. The salad dressing is delicious!

Bill Thank you.

Waiter You're welcome.

*Mang Simeon's Kamayan Restaurant
Roxas Boulevard, Manila*

Starter:

Tapang baka	P175.00
Sopas Manok	P100.00
Lumpiang ubod	P125.00
Sariwang lumpia	P125.00
Ensaladang seafood	P200.00
Pansit luglog	P125.00

Ulam:

Adobong manok sa gata	P250.00
Adobong baboy at baka sa toyo	P300.00
Pansit bihon	P280.00
Pansit miki	P280.00
Pansit miki at bihon	P280.00
Kaldereta	P300.00
Sinigang na bangus	P280.00
Pritong tilapia	P280.00
Ginisang pusit	P300.00
Menudo	P200.00
Sinigang na bakang may saging	P250.00
Kanin	P100.00
Chinese fried rice	P120.00

Gulay:

Ginisang munggo	P65.00
Chop suey	P150.00
Inihaw na talong	P60.00

Pamutat:

Leche Flan	P100.00
Halo-halo	P150.00
Sorbetes	P150.00
Minatamisang saging na may yelo	P150.00

Inumin:

San Miguel beer	P35.00
Soft Drinks	P25.00
Fruit Shake	P40.00
Kape	P25.00

Service charge not included

Exercise 5

Choose from the list of condiments in the box and tell the waiter what you want. Use the dialogue to help you.

Waiter Para sa inihaw na bangus po ba?

You (Clue: ask for some vinegar for your bangus.)

Waiter Bakit, matabang po ba?

You (Clue: ask for some salt.)

Waiter Ito po ay para sa ensalada

You (Clue: ask for some sauce/ salad dressing.)

Waiter Ibig po ba ninyo ito para sa pansit?

You (Clue: ask for some soy sauce.)

Talasalitaan*Vocabulary*

toyo	<i>soy sauce</i>
paminta	<i>pepper</i>
suka	<i>vinegar</i>
sarsa	<i>sauce/salad dressing</i>
asin	<i>salt</i>
ibig po ba ninyo	<i>would you want</i>
gusto ko ng	<i>I would like/I want</i>

① Cultural tip

Whether at corner stores or in small (**turo-turo**) restaurants along the highway, some delicacies are always on the menu and are sure to tickle Filipino taste buds. Here are a few of the most popular dishes:

Leche flan – A sweet dish consisting of evaporated milk, condensed milk, egg yolks, sugar, lemon peel and vanilla essence. Similar in appearance and taste to *crème caramel*. It is always the main attraction on the buffet table at fiestas and celebrations.

Bilobilo – this popular snack is prepared by mixing water and sticky rice flour. The mixture is then shaped into small balls

which in turn are dropped into a pan quarter filled with boiling coconut milk where sugar, shredded jack fruit, pineapple and vanilla have already been added.

Bibingka – Cooked in smouldering coconut husks, **bibingka** has its own unique taste. It is prepared from rice flour, sugar and the flesh of a young (i.e. unripe) coconut. **Bibingka** is placed under a smouldering coconut husk until it turns a slightly brownish colour. Sometimes the top of the **bibingka** is decorated with chopped cheese. Nice to eat when warm, but tends to harden when cold.

Adobong manok – Made by marinating pieces of chicken in vinegar, pepper, garlic, then cooked in coconut milk until tender and aromatic. Seasoned with soy sauce. Served hot as a side dish. **Masarap!**

Language skills

2 Other uses of Mga

Mga is also used in Tagalog to express approximation. When used in connection with numbers, it can be understood to mean 'approximately', 'about' or 'around'.

Examples:

Tagalog: **Mga** apat na kilo ang kailangan ko.

English: *I need about 4 kilos.*

Tagalog: **Mga** pito siguro ang darating.

English: *Perhaps around seven (people) will be arriving.*

Tagalog: **Mga** isang yarda ang bilhin mo.

English: *You [need to] buy around one yard.*

Mga can also be used when approximating time.

Examples:

Tagalog: **Mga** alas dos nang hapon ako babalik.

English: *I'll be back by around 2.00 p.m.*

Tagalog: **Mga** alas onse sila natulog kagabi.

English: *They slept at about 11.00 last night.*

Tagalog: **Mga** alas sais nang umaga ang simula ng misa.

English: *The mass starts at around 6.00 a.m.*

Exercise 6

Complete the following sentences:

1. Gusto ko ng (around 2 kilos) dalanghita.
2. Kailangan namin ng (approximately 3 yards).
3. (Around 2 o'clock) ba ang alis ng bus?
4. (Approximately nine) ang mga bisita nila.
5. Siguro (about eight people) are in the Jeepney.

Talasalitaan

Vocabulary

gusto ko
dalanghita
kailangan
alis
siguro

*I like/want
oranges
need
departure
perhaps*

Dialogue 3

The Cook family are enjoying their meal, but they would like to order some more food.

Bill Umorder pa tayo ng pansit. Ubos na.

Louise Ubos na rin ang gulay at hipon.

Roy At saka adobong manok. Tubig rin.

Bill (to waiter) Gusto pa namin ng: isang platong pansit, isang platong gulay, isang platong hipon at adobong manok.

Waiter Kanin rin po sir?

Bill Oo. At saka malamig na tubig.

Waiter Opo sir. Salamat po.

Bill Walang anuman.

Talasalitaan*Vocabulary*

umorder pa tayo	<i>let's order some more</i>
ng pansit	<i>some noodles</i>
ubos na	<i>ran out/consumed</i>
tubig rin	<i>water too</i>
gulay at hipon	<i>vegetables and prawns</i>
at saka	<i>and also</i>
gusto pa namin ng	<i>we want some more</i>
isang plato(ng)	<i>a plate of</i>
gulay	<i>vegetables</i>

Translation

- Bill** Let's order some more noodles. (There's) Nothing left!
Louise No more vegetables and prawns either.
Roy And chicken adobo too! Water also.
Bill (to waiter) We would like another plate of noodles, some more vegetables, also prawns and chicken adobo.
Waiter Rice as well sir?
Bill Yes, and some cold water too.
Waiter Yes sir. Thank you.
Bill You're welcome.

Exercise 7

On the tape you can hear people ordering different dishes at a Manila Kamayan restaurant. Did you notice what each person ordered? Look at the waiter's ordering slip. Write down what each person has ordered.

*Mang Simeon's Kamayan Restaurant
Roxas Boulevard, Manila*

Customer 1: *Miss Buyco* _____

Customer 2: *Mrs Vito* _____

Customer 3: *Miss Guanzon* _____

Table 14

Waiter *Domingo*

Asking for the bill**Dialogue 4**

The Cook family have enjoyed their meal. Bill Cook now wants to pay.

- Bill** Ang chit nga namin.
Waiter Aba opo. *Sandali lang po.* (Waiter returns and hands him the bill)
Bill (Pointing at something) *Ano ito?*
Waiter *Iyan po* ang starter ninyo.
Bill *Iyan, ano iyan?*
Waiter *Iyan po* ang inumin ninyo.
Bill *Ganoon ba? Kasama ba ang service charge dito?*
Waiter *Hindi po.*
Bill O, *ano naman ang mga ito?*
Waiter Ang mga *iyang po* ang pulutan ninyo.
Bill *Ganoon ba? Okey, mabuti. Heto ang bayad ko.*
Waiter *Salamat po sir.*
Bill *Walang anuman.*

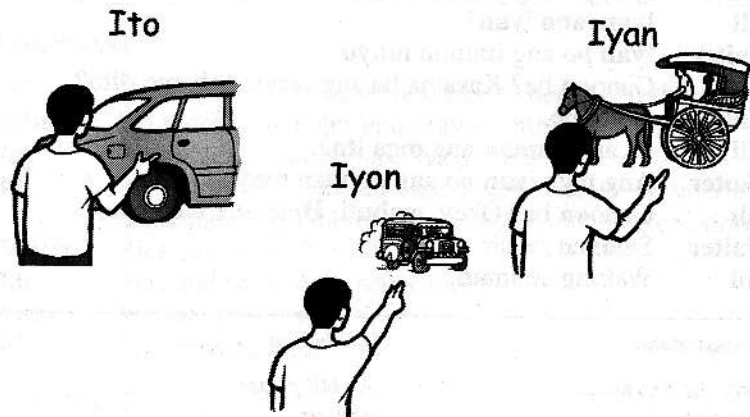
Talasalitaan*Vocabulary*

ang chit nga namin	<i>our bill please</i>
aba opo	<i>sure, sir</i>
medyo nagulat	<i>somewhat surprised</i>
ano ito	<i>what is this?</i>
ang mga ito	<i>these</i>
ang mga iyan	<i>those</i>
magkano	<i>how much</i>
pangalawang order	<i>second order</i>
kasama ba	<i>is it included</i>
heto ang bayad	<i>here's the payment</i>

Translation

- Bill** (May we have) Our bill please.
Waiter Of course sir. One moment please.
Bill (Checking bill) What is this?

- Waiter** That's your starter sir.
Bill And that, what is that?
Waiter That is (those are) your drinks, sir.
Bill Is that so? Is the service charge included here?
Waiter No, sir.
Bill What are these here?
Waiter Sir, those are your side dishes that came with the drinks.
Bill Is that so? Ok, that's fine. Here's the payment.
Waiter Thank you sir.
Bill You're welcome.



Language skills

3 Ito, iyan, iyon *This, that, that (over there)*

Ito (pronounced *ee-taw*) 'This' refers to something close to the speaker, approximately within arm's reach. For example: **Relos ko ito.** *This is my watch.*

Iyan (pronounced *ee-yahn*) 'That' is used to refer to anything close to the person/s addressed (approximately within arm's reach) but not too close to the speaker. For example: **Sariwa ba iyan?** *Is that fresh?*

Iyon (pronounced *ee-yawn*) 'that' is used to refer to things at a distance from both the speaker and the person/s addressed. For example: **Anong halaman iyon?** *What [kind of] plant is that [over there]?*

Practise reading the following sentences:

Tagalog	Literal	English
Pasaporte ko ito	Passport my this	<i>This is my passport</i>
Ito ba ang pila?	This ? the queue	<i>Is this the queue?</i>
Ilog Pasig iyan	River Pasig that	<i>That is Pasig River</i>
Bulkang Mayon iyon	Volcano Mayon that	<i>That (over there) is Mayon volcano</i>
Masarap ito	Delicious this	<i>This is delicious</i>
Bolpen ko rin iyan	Pen my also that	<i>That is also my pen</i>
Hindi ba barko iyon?	Not ? ship that	<i>Isn't that a ship (over there)?</i>

4 Mga + ito, iyan, iyon

Remember **mga** from page 106? By adding the pluraliser **mga** to **ito**, **iyon**, and **iyon**, we get **mga ito**, **mga iyan**, **mga iyon**. Strictly speaking, as **ito**, **iyon** and **iyon** are pronouns, it is theoretically correct just to add **mga**. In practice however, this does not happen. The problem is solved by simply annexing **ang** before **mga**, thus **mga ito** becomes **ang mga ito**, **mga iyan** becomes **ang mga iyan** and **mga iyon** becomes **ang mga iyon**. Look at the explanation:

	Process	Meaning
ang mga ito	the /pluraliser /this	= <i>these</i>
ang mga iyan	the/ pluraliser /that	= <i>those</i>
ang mga iyon	the/ pluraliser /that	= <i>those (over there)</i>

Here are some further examples:

	Singular	Plural
1.	Tagalog: Maleta ko ito. English: <i>This is my suitcase.</i>	Maleta ko ang mga ito or Mga maleta ko ang mga ito. <i>These are my suitcases.</i>
2.	Tagalog: Malinis ba iyan? English: <i>Is that clean?</i>	Malilinis ba ang mga iyan? <i>Are those clean?</i>
3.	Tagalog: Bahay iyon. English: <i>Is that a house (over there)?</i>	Mga bahay ba ang mga iyon? Bahay ba ang mga iyon? <i>Are those houses (over there)?</i>

One-minute phrases:

Dala-dala (*dah-lah dah-lah*) Literally, *load-load*. Meaning *a load carried around*. For example: **Laging maraming dala-dala si Bing.** *Bing has always a lot to carry around.*

May padala (*meh pah-dah-lah*) Literally, *has something* (an item) *to be delivered*. Meaning *a delivery*. Something sent either through the post or delivered in person. **May padala(ng) Barong Tagalog si Ate Ely sa akin.** *Ate Ely sent me a Barong Tagalog.*

Mabuting makisama (*mah-boo-teeng mah-kee-sah-mah*) Literally, *nice to conform with others*. Meaning *a person who gets along well with everybody*. For example: **Mabuting makisama si Doktor Rivera.** *Doctor Rivera gets along well with everybody.*

Tirhan mo ako (*teer-hahn maw ah-kaw*) Meaning *leave some (food) for me*. **Tirhan** is derived from the verb **tira** meaning *to portion out*. For example: **Tirhan mo ako ng leche flan.** *Leave some leche flan for me.*

Sabi-sabi (*sah-bee sah-bee*) Literally, *say-say/talk-talk*. This phrase is used to refer to *idle gossip*. A common and very popular Tagalog saying is as follows: **Ang maniwala sa sabi-sabi walang bait sa sarili.** *You are not kind to yourself if you believe in gossip.*

i Cultural tip

In rural Philippines, it is still very common for people to eat with their hands. This was the way Filipinos ate for hundreds of years before the arrival of the Spanish. *Kamayan* restaurants (**kamayan** comes from the Tagalog word **kamay** which means *hand*) offer people the opportunity to sample local delicacies in this traditional way. Why not try it out for yourself? If you show a willingness to enter into Filipino traditions, it can only serve to strengthen the ties with your Filipino friends.



SA BOTIKA

At the pharmacy

In this unit you will learn how to

- ask for medication
- consult a doctor
- name the parts of the body

Asking for medication**Dialogue 1**

Louise Cook is at the pharmacy. She wants to buy some medicine for Roy who has been experiencing stomach trouble.

Louise May gamot ba kayo para sa pagtatae?

Pharmacist Meron po. Para sa inyo po ba?

Louise Hindi. Para sa anak ko.

Pharmacist Anong edad po ang anak ninyo?

Louise Dalawampung taon siya.

Pharmacist Heto po ang gamot sa pagtatae. Masakit din po ba ang ulo niya?

Louise Hindi naman. Kailangan ba niya ng reseta ng doktor?

Pharmacist Hindi na po. Inumin po niya ito tatlong beses isang araw. Iwasan lang po niyang uminom ng tubig na may yelo.

Louise Maraming salamat. Heto ang bayad.

Pharmacist Wala pong anuman.

Talasalitaan

may gamot
(para) sa pagtatae
anong edad
anak ninyo
dalawampung anyos
ang gamot
masakit
ang ulo niya
hindi naman
reseta ng doktor
hindi na po
iinumin
tatlong beses isang araw
iwasan lang
uminom
tubig na may yelo

Vocabulary

*has/have medicine
for diarrhoea
how old
your child
20 years old
the medicine
hurting/painful
his/her head
not quite
doctor's prescription
not anymore
will swallow
three times a day
please avoid
to drink
water with ice*

Translation

- Louise** Do you have anything for diarrhoea ?
Pharmacist Yes ma'am. Is it for you?
Louise No. It's for my son.
Pharmacist How old is your son?
Louise Twenty years old.
Pharmacist Here's the medicine for diarrhoea. Does he have a headache too?
Louise No. Does he need a doctor's prescription?
Pharmacist No. He must take this three times a day. He needs to avoid drinking water with ice.
Louise Thank you very much. Here's the payment.
Pharmacist Don't mention it.

Exercise 1

How much do you remember from the dialogue between Louise Cook and the pharmacist? Can you match column A and column B?

A

- gamot
- reseta
- edad
- para sa inyo po ba?
- masakit
- uminom

B

- para sa anak ko
- tubig
- ulo
- doktor
- dalawampung anyos
- sa pagtatae

Other items commonly found at the pharmacy can be found in the vocabulary box.

Talasalitaan

termometro
'band aid'
antiseptik krema
gamot sa pagtatae
gamot sa sakit ng ulo
gamot sa sipon
bulak
gamot sa nagsusuka
'bandage' or pantapal
tintura de yudo
gamot sa ubo

Vocabulary

*thermometer
sticking plaster
antiseptic cream
medicine for diarrhoea
headache tablet
medicine for colds
cotton wool
medicine for vomiting
bandage
iodine
cough medicine*

Language skills**1 Para sa For**

When Louise Cook asked the pharmacist for some medicine for her son, she said: 'May gamot ba kayo **para sa pagtatae**? Do you have (any) medication for diarrhoea? The Tagalog words '**Para sa**' used in this example are translated into English as 'for'. **Para sa** can be used in three different ways:-

- To indicate where or who something is for: for example, '**Para sa guro ang bolpen**', *The ballpen is for the teacher.* '**Para sa kusina ang mga silya**', *The chairs are for the kitchen.* Sometimes Tagalog drops the word '**para**' and so the sentence becomes simply '**sa guro ang bolpen**' or '**sa kusina ang mga silya**'. When **para** is deleted, however, the resultant sentence is often ambiguous, since the **sa** phrase may be interpreted as a

possessive **sa** phrase '**sa guro ang bol pen**' may also mean *the pen belongs to the teacher*. **Para**, therefore, cannot be dropped. When the name of an individual is involved, then **para sa** becomes **para kay**, for example, '**Para kay Amy ang silid na ito**' or simply '**kay Amy ang silid na ito**', *This room is for Amy*.

- To indicate favour or support for an individual or group: for example, '**Para sa Partido Mabuhay si Ignacio**', *Ignacio is for the Mabuhay Party*, '**Para sa Newcastle United F.C. si John**', *John is for Newcastle United F.C.* Once again, sometimes the word '**para**' is dropped and the sentences become '**sa Partido Mabuhay si Ignacio**' and '**sa Newcastle United F.C. si John**'.
- To indicate the purpose of or for something: for example, '**Para sa paglalaba ang sabon**', *The soap is for washing clothes*; '**Para sa pagtulog ang kulambo**', *The mosquito net is for sleeping*; '**Para sa pagsulat ang lapis**', *The pencil is for writing*. Notice that in this type of sentence, the word **para** cannot be dropped.

2 Para kanino For whom Para saan For what

The related Tagalog question words are '**para kanino**' (for whom?) and '**para saan**' (for what?). Both question words look for an answer in the '**para sa**' form. For example: '**Para kanino ang pasalubong?**' (*for whom is the gift?*), '**para kay Alice ang pasalubong**' (*the gift is for Alice*). '**Para saan ang gatas?**' (*what is the milk for?*), '**para sa kape ang gatas**' (*the milk is for the coffee*). Use the following table to guide you through the different variations of the **para sa** form:

	Tagalog	English	Question word
1st person	para sa akin	for me	Para kanino
	para sa amin	for us (exclusive)	Para kanino
	para sa atin	for us (inclusive)	Para kanino
2nd person	para sa iyo	for you	Para kanino
	para sa inyo	for you (plural and singular formal)	Para kanino

3rd person	para kay	for + person's name =	para kanino
	para kina	for + person's and friend/s' names =	para kanino
	para sa kaniya	for him/her	para kanino
	para sa kanila	for them	para kanino
	para sa tao	for a person (personal noun)	para kanino
	para sa paa	for the foot (thing)	para saan
	para sa bintana	for the window (place)	para saan

Take a look at the following examples:

Tagalog: Para sa bata ang gatas

English: The milk is for the child

Tagalog: Para sa lola ang pamaypay

English: The fan is for grandmother

Tagalog: Para kay Patricia ang mga bulaklak

English: The flowers are for Patricia

Tagalog: Para sa akin ba ang mga ito?

English: Are these for me?

Tagalog: Hindi para sa kanila ang pagkain

English: The food is not for them

Tagalog: Para sa bagong meyor ako

English: I am for the new mayor

Tagalog: Para sa mga bata ang mga laruan

English: The toys are for the children

Tagalog: Para sa organisasyon ko ba si Liam?

English: Is Liam for my organisation?

Exercise 2

Now try answering the questions by saying what each item is for. Choose the correct answer from the vocabulary box provided.

Example:

Para saan ang mantikilya?

Para sa tinapay ang mantikilya.

1. Para saan ang gatas? _____
2. Para saan ang kurtina? _____
3. Para saan ang selyo? _____
4. Para saan ang payong? _____
5. Para saan ang kama? _____
6. Para saan ang maleta? _____
7. Para saan ang yelo? _____

Talasalitaan

ulan
mantikilya
gatas
silid-tulugan
kurtina
selyo
tsaa
bintana
biyahe
kama
maleta

Vocabulary

rain
margarine
milk
bedroom
curtain
stamp
tea
window
travel
bed
suitcase

Consulting a doctor

Dialogue 2

Roy Cook's stomach trouble had still not cleared up by the following day and so he decided to pay a visit to the doctor. We now join him at the surgery.

Doktor Anong masakit sa iyo?

Roy Masakit *po* ang tiyan ko at nagtatae ako. May binili akong gamot sa botika para sa pagtatae.

Doktor Mabuti. Ano ba ang kinain mo?

Roy Pansit, litson at San Miguel beer.

Doktor Tingnan ko nga ang mata mo.

Roy (Ibinuka ang mata)

Doktor Tingnan ko naman ang bibig mo at ilabas mo ang dila mo.

Roy (Ibinuka ang bibig at inilabas ang dila).

Doktor Ilang beses kang nagtatae sa isang araw?

Roy Mga limang beses *po*.

Doktor Sobra siguro ang nakain mo. Bibigyan kita ng dalawang reseta. Isa para sa sakit ng tiyan.

Roy Para saan *po* itong isa?

Doktor Para sa pagtatae. Toasted bread lang muna ang kainin mo.

Roy Salamat *po*.

Doktor Walang anumang.

Talasalitaan

ang tiyan ko
nagtatae ako
may binili ako(ng)
ang kinain mo
tingnan ko nga
ang mata mo
ibinuka
ang bibig mo
ilabas
ang dila mo
ilang beses
sa isang araw
mga lima
sobra siguro
ang nakain mo
bibigyan kita
dalawang reseta
para sa sakit ng tiyan
para sa pagtatae
lang muna
ang kainin mo

Vocabulary

my stomach
I'm having diarrhoea
I bought
what you ate
let me see/examine
your eyes
opened
your mouth
show
your tongue
how many times
in one day
about five
perhaps too much
what you have eaten
I'll give you
two prescriptions
for stomach ache
for diarrhoea
first
what you have to eat

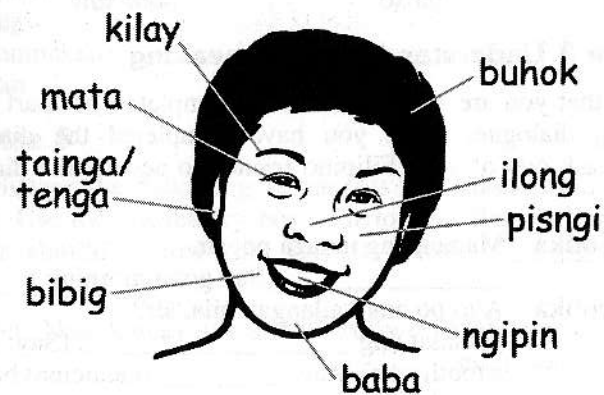
Translation

- Doctor** Where are you feeling the pain?
Roy I have a stomach ache and I've got diarrhoea. I bought some medication for diarrhoea from the pharmacy.
Doctor Good. What have you eaten?
Roy Noodles, suckling pig and San Miguel beer.
Doctor Let me examine your eyes.
Roy (Opening his eyes)
Doctor Now let me look in your mouth. Show me your tongue.
Roy (Opening his mouth and showing his tongue).
Doctor How many times a day are you going to the toilet?
Roy About five times sir.
Doctor Perhaps you've over eaten. I will give you two prescriptions. One for your stomach ache.
Roy What is the other one for?
Doctor For your diarrhoea. Just eat toast for the meantime.
Roy Thank you.
Doctor Don't mention it.

■ Naming the parts of the body**Mga bahagi ng katawan *Parts of the body***

Listen to the tape for the correct pronunciation of each word. Use the pronunciation guide to help you remember the words.

English	Tagalog	Pronounced
1. ankle	bukongbukong	boo-kawng-boo-kawng
2. arm	bisig	bee-seeg
3. back	likod	lee-kawd
4. backside	puwit	poo-weet
5. breast	dibdib	deeb-deeb
6. cheek	pisngi	pees-ngee
7. chin	baba	bah-bah
8. ears	tainga/tenga	teh-ngah
9. elbow	siko	see-kaw
10. eye(s)	mata	mah-tah
11. eyebrow	kilay	kee-ligh
12. eyelashes	plikmata	pee-leet-mah-tah



13. <i>face</i>	mukha	<i>mook-hah</i>
14. <i>foot</i>	paa	<i>pah-ah</i>
15. <i>fingers/toes</i>	daliri	<i>dah-lee-ree</i>
16. <i>hand</i>	kamay	<i>kah-migh</i>
17. <i>hair</i>	buhok	<i>boo-hawk</i>
18. <i>head</i>	ulo	<i>oo-law</i>
19. <i>heel</i>	sakong	<i>sah-kawng</i>
20. <i>hips</i>	balakang	<i>bah-lah-kahng</i>
21. <i>jaw</i>	panga	<i>pah-ngah</i>
22. <i>knee</i>	tuhod	<i>too-hawd</i>
23. <i>leg</i>	binti	<i>been-tee</i>
24. <i>lower arm</i>	braso	<i>brah-saw</i>
25. <i>mouth</i>	bibig	<i>bee-beeg</i>
26. <i>nape</i>	batok	<i>bah-tawk</i>
27. <i>neck</i>	leeg	<i>leh-ehg</i>
28. <i>nose</i>	ilong	<i>ee-lawng</i>
29. <i>palm</i>	palad	<i>pah-lahd</i>
30. <i>penis</i>	buto	<i>boo-taw</i>
31. <i>scalp</i>	anit	<i>ah-neet</i>
32. <i>shoulder</i>	balikat	<i>bah-lee-kaht</i>
33. <i>sole</i>	talampakan	<i>tah-lahm-pah-kahn</i>
34. <i>stomach</i>	tiyan	<i>tee-yahn</i>
35. <i>teeth</i>	ngipin	<i>ngee-peen</i>
36. <i>tongue</i>	dila	<i>dee-lah</i>
37. <i>vagina</i>	puki	<i>poo-kee</i>
38. <i>waist</i>	baywang/bewang	<i>beh-wahng</i>
39. <i>wrist</i>	pulso	<i>pool-saw</i>

Exercise 3 Understanding and speaking

Imagine that you are at the pharmacy. Complete your part of the following dialogue. Once you have completed the dialogue, why not ask one of your Filipino friends to act out the dialogue with you:

- Parmasyotika** Magandang umaga po, sir.
Ikaw _____. (Say good morning)
Parmasyotika Ano po ang kailangan nila, sir?
Ikaw Masakit ang _____. (Say: I have a toothache) May _____ (medicine) ba kayo para dito?

- Parmasyotika** Opo. Mayroon po.
Ikaw _____. _____ (Say all right. Thank you (formal).)
Parmasyotika Gusto po ba ninyo ay yung iinumina?
Ikaw (Say Yes, that's fine)
Parmasyotika O sige po. heto po ang tabletas. Iinumina ninyo ito tatlong beses isang araw.
Ikaw _____? (Ask how much it is)
Parmasyotika Treynta pesos po.
Ikaw Heto _____. (Say Here's the payment)
Parmasyotika Maraming salamat po.
Ikaw _____. (Say don't mention it)

Exercise 4

Can you place the following list of body parts in their correct order? For the correct order, begin with the top of the body and work down to the feet.

1. ulo
2. paa
3. mata
4. daliri
5. binti
6. kamay
7. buhok
8. panga
9. talampakan
10. tiyan

Exercise 5

Say whether the following statements are **tama** (true) or **mali** (false). Use the vocabulary box to help you. **Remember:** a **mali** answer should follow this format: Nasa _____ ang _____.

Example: Nasa kamay ang mata. Answer: Mali. Nasa mukha ang mata.

1. Nasa gitna ng binti ang tuhod. Answer:
2. Nasa likuran ang dibdib. Answer:
3. Nasa kamay ang mga daliri. Answer:
4. Nasa bisig ang talampakan. Answer:
5. Nasa tenga ang labi. Answer:
6. Nasa bisig ang kamay. Answer:

Talasalitaan

nasa harapan
 nasa tabi ng
 nasa gitna ng
 nasa pagitan ng
 nasa ilalim ng
 nasa ibaba ng
 nasa itaas ng
 nasa likuran

Vocabulary

at the front
 beside/next to the
 in the middle of
 between the
 at the bottom of
 below the
 above the
 at the back/behind

Exercise 6 Listening and understanding

Look at the pictures. On the tape you will hear a number of people complaining about their ailments. Can you match up the picture with the ailment?

**One-minute phrases**

Parang kabute pronounced (*pah-rahng kah-boo-teh*) Literally, 'like mushroom'. This term is applied to a person who seems to have the ability to *appear and disappear*. In Filipino tradition, mushrooms are said to appear almost overnight. An example of this is the child who regularly plays truant from school, attending class only occasionally.

Ang sakit ng kalingkingan ay damdam ng buong katawan (*ang-sah-keet nahng kah-leeng-kee-ngahn igh dahm-dahm nahng booawng kah-tah-wahn*) This is a popular Filipino saying which can be translated as *the pain of the little finger is felt by the whole body*. For example, in a situation where a worker makes a mistake, the consequences of that mistake may be experienced by all or many of his / her co-workers.

Ganito 'yon (*gah-nee-taw 'yawn*) Literally, *it's like this...* A phrase roughly equivalent to the English expression, 'beating around the bush'. The expression is often used when someone wants to give a long (boring ?) explanation. Example: **Saan ka galing? Ganito 'yon...** . *Where have you been? Well, it's like this...*

Nakapamburool (*nah-kah-pahm-boo-rawl*) Literally, *dressed in funeral attire*. This is a very common Tagalog expression applied to a person dressed in his/ her Sunday best (best clothing). Similar in meaning to the English expressions, *dressed to the nines* or *dressed to kill*. Example: **Nakapamburool si Mario kasi abay siya sa kasal.** *Mario is dressed to kill because he will be a sponsor at the wedding.*

Dedbol na ako (*ded-bol-nah-ahkaw*) Literally, *I'm like a dead bull*. Similar in meaning to the English expressions *I'm exhausted*, *I'm shattered*.

Cultural tip

Filipino people are generally very modest about their bodies, particularly the women. Revealing swimming costumes and other garments are not commonly worn, especially in rural areas. In Filipino culture, modesty and respectability go hand in hand. Respecting local culture in this regard will ensure a healthy respect for the visitor too! Tourist beaches and resorts do, however, offer a more relaxed environment for the sun worshipper. Don't forget the after-sun lotion!

10 TULONG? (Need) Help?

In this unit you will learn how to

- ask for help
- use the **sa** possessives and **kanino** (*whose*)
- shop for a gift
- use **sa** as a preposition

Asking for help

Dialogue 1

Bill Cook needs some assistance. He bought a tee-shirt but it doesn't fit him. He's gone back to the department store.

Tindera Magandang hapon *po*. Ano pong maipaglilingkod ko sa inyo?

Bill Magandang hapon naman. Itong T-shirt na binili ko dito, maliit sa akin. Size L lang ito.

Tindera Ganoon *po* ba? Sa inyo *po* ba? Ano pong size ninyo?

Bill Size XXL ako. Oo sa akin. May XXL ba kayo?

Tindera Sa palagay ko *po*. Sumunod *po* kayo sa akin sa T-shirt department. Dito *po* ba ninyo kinuha iyan?

Bill Oo. Dito sa lugar na ito.

Tindera Pumili *po* kayo ng size ninyo at papalitan namin iyan.

Bill Maraming salamat.

Tindera Wala pong anuman.

Talasalitaan

tindera
itong T-shirt
na binili ko dito
maliit sa akin
lang ito
ganoon po ba
sa palagay ko
sumunod po kayo sa akin
ninyo kinuha iyan
sa lugar na ito
pumili po kayo
ng size ninyo
papalitan namin iyan

Vocabulary

assistant (female)
this tee-shirt
that I bought here
small for me
this is only
is that so
in my opinion
please follow me
you got that
here in this place
please choose
your size
we will replace that

Translation

Tindera Good afternoon sir. What can I do for you?

Bill Good afternoon to you, too. The tee-shirt I bought here, it's small for me. (It's) Only size L.

Tindera Is that so sir? Is it yours sir? What size do you take?

Bill I take XXL. Yes it's mine. Do you have size XXL?

Tindera I think so sir. Please follow me to the tee-shirt department. Did you get that from this department?

Bill Yes. Here in this area.

Tindera Please choose your size and we'll exchange it.

Bill Thank you.

Tindera You're welcome sir.

Exercise 1

Can you supply the correct question to Bill's answer?

1. Bill: 'Itong T-shirt na binili ko dito, maliit sa akin.'

Did the tindera ask:

- Gusto po ba ninyo ng T-shirt?
- Ano pong maipaglilingkod ko sa inyo?
- Magandang hapon po.

2. Bill: 'Size L lang ito.'

Was he asked:

- Sa inyo po ba?
- Anong size po?
- Ganoon po ba?

3. Bill: 'Size XXL ako.'

Did the tindera ask:

- Ganoon po ba?
- Size L po ba?
- Ano pong size ninyo?

4. Bill: 'Oo. Dito sa lugar na ito.'

The tindera asked:

- Saan po ninyo kinuha iyan?
- Dito ba ninyo kinuha iyan?
- Dito mo ba kinuha iyan?

Language skills

1 Sa akin, sa iyo, sa kaniya *Mine, yours, his/hers*

The words mine, yours, his/hers, ours, yours, and theirs all tell us about who owns or possesses something. In English these words are known as possessives (see also Unit 7). There are two main ways in which the possessive is expressed in Tagalog: 1) by the use of **may** or **mayroon** (see Unit 2), 2) by the use of the possessive **sa** form. In the possessive **sa** form (**sa akin, sa iyo, sa kaniya, sa amin, sa atin, sa inyo, sa kanila** and **sa + personal / common noun**) **sa** is used together with the possessor in order to express possession of the subject. For example: **Sa akin ang aklat.** *The book is mine.* **Sa inyo ba ang maletang ito?** *Is this suitcase yours?* **Sa babae ang payong.** *The umbrella belongs to the woman.* **Remember:** the **sa** form changes depending on who or what is the possessor. For example, **sa** becomes **kay** or **kina** when used with a person or people's names. Try not to worry about this. You will pick up more as you go along. Just look at the following examples:

- Sa bata** ang bisikleta *The bicycle belongs to the child*
- Kay Joe** ang malamig na inumin *The cold drink is Joe's*
- Kina Ely** ang regalo *The gift belongs to Ely and her friends*
- Sa atin** ba iyan? *Is that ours?*
- Sa Amerikano** daw ang lapis *Apparently the pencil belongs to the American*

Sa possession table

	Tagalog	English
1st person	sa akin	mine
	sa amin	ours (exclusive)
	sa atin	ours (inclusive)
2nd person	sa iyo	yours
	sa inyo	yours (plural and singular polite)
3rd person	kay Sally	Sally's
	kina Gary	Gary's and his friend/s'
	sa kaniya	his/hers
	sa kanila	theirs
	sa + personal noun	belong/s to
	sa + common noun	belong/s to

Exercise 2

Using what you have learned so far in this chapter, re-arrange the following jumbled up sentences into their correct form. The literal English translation should give you a clue.

- Tagalog: maletang / ito / ang / sa akin
Correct order: _____
Literal: Mine the suitcase this.
- Tagalog: Sa bata / bisikleta / ang / ba?
Correct order: _____
Literal: Belonging to the child the bicycle?

3. Tagalog: ang / Jeepney / bagong / sa kanila .
 Correct order: _____
 Literal: Belongs to them the new Jeepney.
4. Tagalog: sa / iyan / hindi / iyo.
 Correct order: _____
 Literal: Not yours that.
5. Tagalog: tsinelas / Beth / ang / kay.
 Correct order: _____
 Literal: Beth's the slippers.
6. Tagalog: ito / kina / ba / Philip?
 Correct order: _____
 Literal: Belong to Philip and his friend/s does this?

2 Mga kulay Colours

We have already met some of the Tagalog words for colours. Here is a fuller list:

Tagalog	Pronunciation	English
berde	behr-deh	green
azul	ah-sool	blue
pula	poo-lah	red
puti	poo-tee	white
dilaw	dee-lao	yellow
itim	ee-teem	black
rosas	raw-sahs	pink
kayumanggi	ka-you-mang-gee	brown
kulay dalandan	koo-lie da-lan-dan	orange
kulay-abo	koo-lie-ah-bo	grey
biyoleta/murado	bee-yaw-let-ah	purple
kulay-pilak	koo-lie-pee-lak	silver
kulay-ginto	koo-lie-gin-taw	gold

Exercise 3

Read through the list of Tagalog colour words again. Now cover the list up and line up the English words with their correct Tagalog equivalents:

- | | | |
|-----------|-------------|-------|
| 1. yellow | berde | _____ |
| 2. white | kulay-pilak | _____ |
| 3. red | itim | _____ |
| 4. blue | puti | _____ |
| 5. silver | biyoleta | _____ |
| 6. purple | kulay ginto | _____ |
| 7. black | dilaw | _____ |
| 8. green | pula | _____ |
| 9. gold | azul | _____ |

Exercise 4 Reading and listening

Listen to the tape. Margaret, Bob and family are on a visit to Mines View Park in Baguio. They are trying to decide who will carry each of the bags. Follow the text then try to answer the questions that follow.

Sa Mines View Park sa Baguio

Nasa Mines View Park sa Baguio si Margaret at ang asawa niyang si Bob. Marami silang bag dahil kasama nila si Stephen, Amy, Lucy at Paul. Pakinggan natin sila:

- Margaret** Kanino itong pulang bag?
Amy Sa akin po.
Bob Kanino naman ang itim na tote bag?
Stephen Hindi sa akin. Kay Paul iyan.
Margaret Kanino ang dilaw na plastic bag?
Paul Kay Lucy yata.
Bob Itong itim na duffel bag, sa iyo ba ito, Stephen?
Stephen Opo. Salamat po.
Margaret Sa iyo ba ang denim na tote bag, Paul?
Paul Hindi po. Kay tatay iyan.

Talasalitaan

nasa parke
ang asawa niyang
marami
dahil sa
kasama nila
kanino
pulang handbag
itim
hindi sa akin
dilaw
yata
itong itim

Vocabulary

at the park
her husband
many/plenty
because
accompanied by
whose
red handbag
black
not mine
yellow
I think
this black (one)

Translation

- Margaret** Whose red bag is this?
Amy (It's) mine mum.
Bob: (And) who does this black tote bag belong to?
Stephen Not mine. That is Paul's.
Margaret Whose is the yellow plastic bag?
Paul I think that's Lucy's.
Bob This black duffel bag, is this yours, Stephen?
Stephen Yes sir. Thank you.
Margaret Is the denim tote bag yours, Paul?
Paul No ma'am. That belongs to Dad.

Answer in complete sentences.

1. Kay Paul ba ang itim na tote bag?
2. Kay Stephen ba ang pulang plastic bag?
3. Kay Paul ba ang duffel bag?
4. Kanino ang denim na tote bag?
5. Kay Lucy ba ang dilaw na plastic bag?

Shopping for a gift**Dialogue 2**

The Cook family are at a handicraft shop shopping for **pasalubong**.

- Louise** Magaganda ang mga panyolito, pamaypay at burdadong napkins dito. **Bibili ako ng isang dosenang panyolito.**
Bill Tama. Para kanino ang mga panyolito?
Louise Para sa mga ka-opisina ko.
Bill Kanino ang mga pamaypay?
Louise Sa akin. **Bibili ako ng tatlo.**
Bill **Bibili naman ako ng laruang Jeepney.**
Louise Kanino ang laruang Jeepney?
Bill Kanino pa? 'di sa akin at kay Roy.
Louise Kanino naman ang burdadong napkins?
Bill Sa kapitbahay natin. Pasalubong!
Louise Tama.

Talasalitaan

magaganda
ang mga panyolito
mga pamaypay
burdado(ng)
sa kapitbahay natin
bibili ako ng
isang dosenang
tama
para kanino
para sa
mga ka-opisina ko
laruan(g)
kanino pa
'di sa akin
pasalubong

Vocabulary

beautiful (plural)
the handkerchiefs
fans
embroidered
for our neighbours
I'll buy/I'm going to buy
one dozen
that's right
for whom
for
my officemates
toy
whose else
of course it's mine
gift

Translation

- Louise** The handkerchiefs, fans and embroidered napkins here are gorgeous. I'm going to buy a dozen handkerchiefs.
Bill All right. For whom are the handkerchiefs?
Louise For my officemates.
Bill Whose are the fans?
Louise Mine. I'm going to buy three.
Bill I'm going to buy a toy Jeepney.
Louise Whose is the toy Jeepney?
Bill Who else's? Of course, it's for Roy and me.
Louise And whose are the embroidered napkins?
Bill They are for our neighbours. Homecoming gifts!
Louise Exactly!

Language skills**3 Kanino Whose**

Whenever we use a **sa** form sentence to express possession by a person or persons, then the accompanying question word is always **kanino** (*whose*). For example, '**Kanino ang payong?**', *Whose is the umbrella?* / *To whom does the umbrella belong?* or *Who does the umbrella belong to?* You will notice that there are three variations given in English. The Tagalog form is much simpler using only **kanino**. To form a **kanino** question, simply use **kanino** in place of the **sa** possessor. Note that Tagalog sometimes uses **kanino** in connection with **ng** as a linker, thereby becoming **kanino + ng = kaninong**. The main difference is that **kanino** is used on its own to represent the question word '*whose*', whereas **kaninong** may only be used when followed by the noun it describes or modifies. It can never stand alone. Here are some examples of this form:

1. **Kaninong** sombrero (noun) iyan? *Whose hat is that?*
Kaninong kotse (noun) ang nasa garahe? *Whose car is in the garage?*
Kaninong anak (noun) si Sophie? *Whose child is Sophie?*

2. **Kanino** ang lapis? *Whose is the pencil?* **Kanino** ang kotseng itim? *Whose is the black car?*

Look at the following examples:

- Question: **Kanino** ang mga maleta?
 Reply: **Sa amin** ang mga maleta.
- Question: **Kanino** ang bansang Pilipinas?
 Reply: **Sa mga Pilipino** ang bansang Pilipinas.
- Question: **Kaninong** anak si Prince Charles?
 Reply: **Kay Queen Elizabeth na anak** si Prince Charles *or* **Kay Queen Elizabeth**.
- Question: **Kaninong** pamasaha ito?
 Reply: **Sa aking pamasaha** ito.
- Question: **Kaninong** pasaporte ang nasa mesa?
 Reply: **Kay Corang pasaporte** ang nasa mesa.
- Question: **Kanino** ang computer dito?
 Reply: **Sa mga estudyante** ang computer dito.

Exercise 5

Why don't you translate the following sentences into Tagalog? Use **kanino** or **kaninong** + noun.

Example: Whose is this? **Kanino** ito?
 Whose child is Beth? **Kaninong** anak si Beth?

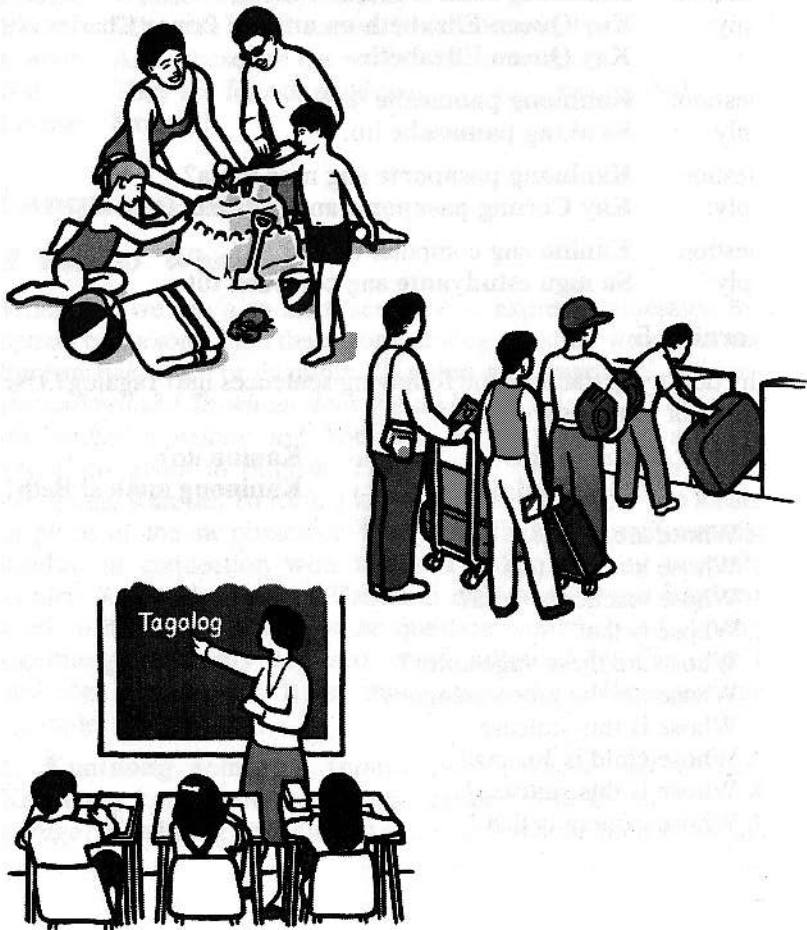
1. Whose are those?
2. Whose house is this ?
3. Whose teacher is Cora?
4. Whose is that?
5. Whose are these vegetables?
6. Whose are the green mangoes?
7. Whose is this suitcase?
8. Whose child is Joanna?
9. Whose is this suitcase?
10. Whose camera is that?

Exercise 6 Listening and speaking

Listen to the tape. You will hear items mentioned that belong to one of the groups of people in the cartoons. Can you identify which item belongs to which group? You will be asked: **Kanino ang** [+ item]? Your reply should be:

1. **sa mga tao sa beach**, 2. **sa mga turista** or 3. **sa mga bata**.

Use the vocabulary box provided to help you.



Talasalitaan

beach ball
pala
balde
tuwalya
pasaporte
tiket
lapis
notbuk
pisara
kamera/Kodak
sunglasses
radyo
alimango
desk

Vocabulary

beach ball
spade
bucket
towel
passport
ticket
pencil
notebook
blackboard
camera
sunglasses
radio
crab
desk

Language skills

4 Sa To/to the, in/in the, on/on the, at/at the

We have already met 'sa' and looked at its uses in connection with other words. A further use of 'sa' is that it represents the place where the action expressed in a sentence occurs. For example: **Bumili si Roy ng posporo sa tindahan.** *Roy bought some matches from the store.* By far the most common usage of **sa** is when it represents the English words *in/in the, on/on the, at/at the*. English refers to these words as prepositions. Prepositions tend to be used in two main ways: 1) to represent a place, 2) to represent time. We can try to make this a little clearer by looking at a few examples of each: **Lumalangoy si Louie sa dagat,** *Louie is swimming in the sea.* **May kumakain ba sa kusina?** *Is someone eating in the kitchen?* **May pagkain na sa mesa,** *There is food on the table now.* **Umiyak siya sa simula ng tula,** *He/she cried at the beginning of the poem.* All of these are prepositions of place. Prepositions can also be used to express the time in which an action occurred. For example: **Matutulog ako sa hapon,** *I will sleep in the afternoon.* **Mananahi ako sa Sabado,** *I will do some sewing on Saturday.* **Nagtatrabaho si Greg sa gabi,** *Greg works at night.*

Study these further examples:

Tagalog: **Bibisita ka ba sa kamakalawa?**
English: *Will you be visiting in a fortnight?*

Tagalog: **Wala kami sa bahay kahapon.**
English: *We weren't at home yesterday.*

Tagalog: **Pupunta ka ba sa kaarawan ko?**
English: *Are you coming to my party?*

Tagalog: **Kayo ba ang manedyer sa tindahang ito?**
English: *Are you the manager in this store?*

The vocabulary box contains some useful time words and phrases.

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
ngayon	today
kahapon	yesterday
bukas	tomorrow
sa isang araw	the day before yesterday
sa isang araw	the day after tomorrow
ngayong linggo	this week
noong isang linggo	last week
sa isang linggo	next week
ngayong umaga	this morning
ngayong hapon	this afternoon
mamayang gabi	tonight
kahapon nang hapon	yesterday afternoon
kagabi	last night
bukas nang umaga	tomorrow morning
bukas nang gabi	tomorrow night
bukas nang hapon	tomorrow afternoon
bukas nang tanghali	tomorrow midday
mamaya	later
linggo-linggo	every week
tuwing Linggo	every Sunday

Exercise 7

Fill in the space with the correct **sa** (preposition of place) reply. Use the vocabulary box to help you.

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
dagat	sea
tindahan	store
palengke	market
palaruan	playground
kalye	street/road
tindahan ng laruan	toy store
paliparan	airport

- Bibili (buy) si Boy ng sorbetes _____.
- Maraming eroplano (aeroplanes) _____.
- Maliligo (bathe) ka ba _____.
- Magaganda ang mga laruan (toys) _____.
- Sariwa (fresh) ang mga gulay (vegetables) _____.
- Naglalaro (play) sina Eileen _____.
- Tumatakbo (run) ang mga sasakyan (transportation) _____.

Exercise 8

This time, provide a **sa** (preposition of time) reply. Use the vocabulary from the box to help you.

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
tanghali	midday
gabi	at night
hapon	afternoon
umaga	morning
Sabado	Saturday
Linggo	Sunday
hatinggabi	midnight

Example: Aalis daw siya **sa umaga**.

Apparently he/she is leaving in the morning.

1. Narito ang mga magulang (parents) ni Elizabeth _____, (afternoon)
2. _____ kami sisimba. (will go to church)
3. Maraming bituin (stars) _____.
4. Mainit (hot) ang araw _____. (midday)
5. Lumulubog (sets) ang araw _____.
6. Sumisikat (shine) ang araw _____.
7. Pupunta (will go) si Jayne at si John dito _____.

One-minute phrases

Sigurado ka ba? (*see-goo-rah-daw kah bah*) Literally, *sure you are?* This phrase is commonly used to express doubt about information. For example: **Sigurado ka bang darating ang bisita mo mamaya?** *Are you sure your visitor will be arriving later?*

Palabiro (*pah-lah-bee-raw*) Literally, *fond of joking*. A person with a good sense of humour! For example: **Palabiro si Juanito kaya laging masaya ang barkada niya.** *Juanito is fond of cracking jokes that's why his friends are always in a happy mood.*

Tayo-tayo (*tah-yaw tah-yaw*) Literally, *we-we* or *us-us*. First person plural. This phrase seems grammatically unusual. Anybody who uses the expression 'tayo-tayo' automatically excludes other people from their group. For example: **Sinu-sino ang iimbitahin mo sa party mo?** *Who are you going to invite to your party?* Reply: **Wala. Tayo-tayo lang.** *No-one. Just ourselves.*

Sila-sila (*see-lah-see-lah*) Literally, *they-they*, exactly the same connotation as 'tayo-tayo' except that this time, it is in the third person plural. For example: **Sila-sila lang ang nag-uusap.** *They themselves are just talking to one another.*

Maasim ang mukha (*mah-ah-seem ahng mook-hah*) Literally, *the face is sour*. This applies to someone whose facial expressions indicate disapproval. For example: **Parang galit si Mister Cruz, maasim ang mukha eh.** *I think Mr Cruz is angry, his face looks sour.*

① Cultural tip

For the visiting westerner, clothing in the Philippines can seem very good value for money. Be careful, however, as things may not always be as they seem! Always check a garment carefully. As regulations tend to be more relaxed, there are plenty of 'fake' goods on the market. Check the size carefully, too. Filipinos tend to be smaller in physical stature than their western cousins. A good rule of thumb would be to always try the next size up. For example, if you normally buy XL tee-shirts at home, look for a Filipino size XXL.

11 GUSTO KONG MAGPAGUPIT

I want a haircut

In this unit you will learn how to

- make an appointment
- describe what you want done
- use pseudo-verbs

☐ Making an appointment

☐ Dialogue 1

Bill Cook wants to have his hair cut. He telephones a nearby barber shop.

- Bill** Magandang umaga. **Gusto kong magpagupit.**
Barbero Magandang umaga *po* naman. **Anong oras *po* ang ibig ninyo?**
Bill Kailangan kong **magpagupit ngayong alas dos. Puwede ba?**
Barbero **Titingnan ko *po*. Aba, may bakante *po* kami. Puwede *po*. Kung **gusto *po* ninyo**, mas maaga.
Bill **Ayaw ko nang mas maaga. Alas dos na lang.**
Barbero **Opo. Maraming salamat *po*.**
Bill **Walang anuman.****

Talasalitaan

gusto ko(ng)
 magpagupit
 ang ibig ninyo?
 ngayon(g) alas dos
 puwede ba
 titingnan ko
 aba
 may bakante
 ayaw ko
 mas maaga

Vocabulary

I like/want
have a haircut
what you want?
today at two o'clock
is it possible
let me see
oh!/say!
has/have a vacancy
I don't like
earlier

Translation

- Bill** Good morning. I want to have a haircut.
Barber Good morning to you, too. What time do you have in mind?
Bill I need to have a haircut today at 2.00 p.m. Is this possible?
Barber Let me see. Yes, we have a vacancy. It's possible sir. If you like, we have an earlier time.
Bill I don't want an earlier time. 2.00 p.m. would be all right.
Barber Yes sir. Thank you very much.
Bill Don't mention it.

Inday & Nenet Styling Salon

Del Pilar Street
 Iloilo City 5000

Telephone: 56534

Price List

Gupit (lalaki)	₱50.00
Kulot (perm)	₱200.00
Manicure	₱60.00
Pedicure	₱60.00
Masahe	₱75.00
Hair Colour & Wash	₱300.00
Wax	₱400.00
Cut & Wash	₱150.00

Tumatanggap kami ng Home Bookings

☑ Exercise 1

Listen once again to Dialogue 1 on the tape. Try playing the part of the barber, then reverse roles and play the part of Bill Cook.

Language skills

1 Pseudo-verbs

kailangan	need(s) (to), ought to, must, should
dapat	ought to, must, should
maaari	can, may, could, might
puwede	can, may, could, might
gusto	like(s) (to), would like (to) want(s) (to)
ibig	like(s) (to), would like (to), want(s) (to)
nais	like(s) (to), would like (to), want(s) (to)
ayaw	do(es)n't like (to), wouldn't like (to)

Just one look at this lengthy list is probably enough to send a chill down the spine of the most hardened language learner... – but fear not! Although the list looks complicated, it is in fact quite straightforward. All of the words in the list appear at first glance to be ordinary verbs (doing words). However, although they do have verb-like meanings, they do not change in the same way that genuine verbs do and are therefore called pseudo-verbs. As the translations show, some of the pseudo-verbs are similar to one another in meaning: **kailangan** and **dapat**; **maaari** and **puwede**; **gusto**, **ibig** and **nais**. There are however certain subtle differences.

For example, in sentences where **kailangan** or **dapat** occur, **kailangan** suggests internal necessity or need, whereas **dapat** suggests external necessity or appropriateness. Look at the following sample sentences: a. **Kailangan** matalino ang estudyante b. **Dapat** (na) matalino ang estudyante, may be translated as *The student must be intelligent*. Sentence (a) suggests that the student feels the need to be intelligent, whereas sentence (b) requires that the student be intelligent.

In sentences where **maaari** or **puwede** occur, both denote ability, permission or possibility. **Maaari** is common in both formal and informal contexts; **puwede** is common only in informal contexts.

Gusto, **ibig** and **nais** all denote preference or desire. The three differ from one another in level of usage and in some cases, in connotation as well. **Gusto** is the most common. **Ibig** is more formal than **gusto**, and occurs more frequently in writing than in speech. **Nais** is the most formal and is rare in ordinary conversation.

Ayaw is the contrary of **gusto**, **ibig** and **nais** in that it expresses dislike.

These pseudo-verbs are commonly used in conjunction with **ng** which we first met in Unit 7 (more on this later in this unit). The usage table will help you to decide which is the most appropriate pseudo verb to use:

Usage table

Pseudo-verb	English	Use
gusto	<i>like(s) (to), would like (to), want (s)</i>	most common; mild inclination to a stronger desire
ibig	<i>like(s) (to), would like (to), want (s)</i>	more formal than gusto and occurs more frequently in writing than in speech; a fairly strong desire
nais	<i>like(s), (to) would like (to), want (s)</i>	specify stronger preferences than gusto ; a strong desire
ayaw	<i>do(es)n't like (to), wouldn't like (to)</i>	contrary of gusto , ibig , nais (similar in meaning to hindi)
dapat	<i>ought to, must, should</i>	connotes external necessity or appropriateness
kailangan	<i>need(s) (to), ought to, must, should</i>	connotes internal necessity or need
maaari	<i>can, may, could, might</i>	denotes ability, permission, or possibility; common in both informal and formal contexts
Puwede	<i>can, may, could, might</i>	denotes ability, permission, or possibility; common only in informal contexts

Examples:

Tagalog: **Kailangan** mo ba ito?

English: *Do you need this?*

Tagalog: **Hindi** ko **gusto** ang pagkain kagabi.

English: *I didn't like the food last night.*

Tagalog: **Puwede** tayong matulog doon.

English: *We can sleep (over) there.*

Tagalog: Ito ba ang **nais** mo?

English: *Is this what you want?*

Tagalog: Iyan ang **ibig** ko sa kaniya.

English: *That's what I like about him.*

Tagalog: **Ayaw** ko ng kapeng walang gatas.

English: *I don't like coffee without milk.*

Tagalog: **Dapat** na narito sila bukas.

English: *They should be here tomorrow.*

Tagalog: **Maaari** bang dito muna tayo?

English: *Might we stop here first?*

Exercise 2

Complete the following sentences with an appropriate pseudo-verb.

1. Ano ang (gusto, kailangan, ibig, nais) [like] mo?
2. (Kailangan, nais, ibig) [need] namin ng malamig na tubig.
3. Bakit (ayaw, ibig, gusto) [doesn't like] niya ng halo-halo?
4. (Dapat, nais, ayaw) [should] nasa bahay na ang mga bata.
5. Ano ang (ibig, puwede, dapat) [want] kainin ng bisita?

Describing what you want done

Dialogue 2

Bill Cook is at the barber's. He is describing to the barber the haircut he wants.

Barber Sir, ano pong gupit ang gusto ninyo?

Bill Gusto ko *hindi* masyadong mahaba.

Barber Ibig *po* ba ninyo hanggang itaas ng batok?

Bill Puwede na, pero *hindi* ko gusto ang crew cut.

Barber Nais *po* ba ninyo maikli sa tabi?

Bill Oo. Pero kailangan medyo makapal sa tuktok.

Barber Okay lang *po*. Huhugasan ko lang *po* ang inyong buhok.

Bill O sige, gusto ko rin ng konting masahe.

Barber Opo sir.

Bill Salamat.

Barber *Wala* pong anuman.

Talasalitaan

ano pong gupit
sa tabi
hindi masyado(ng)
mahaba
ibig po ba ninyo
hanggang itaas
batok
puwede na
gusto ko rin
hindi ko gusto
nais po ba ninyo
medyo
maikli
makapal
sa tuktok
huhugasan ko lang
ang inyong buhok
konting masahe

Vocabulary

what (kind of) haircut
at the sides
not very
long
do you want
reaching the top
nape
will suffice
I'd also want
I don't like
do you want
slightly
short
thick
at the top
I'll just wash
your hair
a little massage

Translation

Barber Sir, what kind of haircut would you like?

Bill I like it not too long.

Barber Would you like it just above the nape of the neck?

Bill That would do, but I don't want a crew cut.

Barber Would you like it to be short at the sides?

Bill Yes. But it needs to be thick on top.

Barber That's OK sir. I just have to wash your hair.

Bill OK, I'd also want a massage.

Barber Yes sir.

Bill Thank you.

Barber You're welcome sir.

Exercise 3 Writing and speaking

Sagutin sa Tagalog (respond in Tagalog):

1. Anong klaseng gupit ang gusto ni Bill?
2. Gusto ba ni Bill ng crew cut?
3. Saan dapat maikli ang gupit?
4. Ano muna ang gagawin ng barbero?
5. Ano pa ang gusto ni Bill na gagawin ng barbero?

Language skills

2 More about pseudo-verbs

Since **kailangan**, **gusto**, **ibig**, **nais**, **maaari**, **puwede**, **ayaw** and **dapat** are considered as action words, it is clear that they have to be used in connection with a word which identifies those actually 'doing' the 'action' ('subjects' or, perhaps more appropriately, we can refer to them as 'actors').

In Tagalog, the general rule is as follows: pseudo-verbs take only **ng** form 'actors'. The **ng** form consists of the following: **ni** (of / singular - personal), **nina** (of / plural - personal), **ko** (my), **mo** (your), **niya** (his / her), **namin** (our / exclusive), **natin** (our / inclusive), **ninyo** (your / plural), **nila** (their), **nito** (of this), **niyan** (of that), **noon** (of that over there) and **ng** (of). These pseudo-verbs may also need an object or objects.

Remember the difference between a definite and an indefinite object? A definite object is always preceded by the word 'the', whereas an indefinite object is always preceded by the word 'a'. The connecting word used with an indefinite object is **ng** whereas **ang** is used for definite objects. Although this may sound horribly complicated, try not to feel intimidated by the jargon. Look carefully at the table below and then study the examples:

Pseudo-verb	Actor	Object		
		Definite B	or	indefinite C
kailangan (ng)	ni, nina, ko, mo,	(ang) si sina, ako,	(ng)	
gusto	niya, namin, natin	ka, siya, kami		same as A
ibig	ninyo, nila, nito	tayo, kayo, sila		
nais	niyan, noon	ito, iyan, iyon		
puwede	ng + noun	ang + noun		
ayaw				
dapat				
maaari				

(Note: ko + ka = kita)

To produce a pseudo-verb sentence: 1. Choose a pseudo-verb. 2. Choose an 'actor' from column A. 3. Choose a definite object from column 'B' 'or' 4. Choose an indefinite object from column C.

The basic formula is as follows:

Pseudo-verb + A + B or C = sentence

Look at the following example sentences. Note the differences between a pseudo-verb and actor used in connection with a definite object, then with an indefinite object.

Pseudo-verb	Actor	Indefinite object	Definite object
Ayaw	ni Judy	ng hilaw na mangga	
		<i>Judy doesn't like unripe mangoes</i>	
Ayaw	ni Judy		ang hilaw na mangga
		<i>Judy doesn't like the unripe mango</i>	
Gusto	mo [ba]		ito?
		<i>Do you want/like/Would you want/like this?</i>	
Gusto	mo [ba]	nito?	
		<i>Do you want/like Would you want/like some of this?</i>	
Kailangan	ko	ng bagong sapatos	
		<i>I need a new (pair of) shoes</i>	
Kailangan ko			ang bagong sapatos
		<i>I need the new (pair of) shoes</i>	

Did you notice...?

The first example could be literally translated as 'doesn't like of Judy unripe mangoes'. However, as explained earlier, all pseudo-verbs require **ng** form actors. Although these **ng** form actors are required in Tagalog, we do not need to translate them into English. The correct translation of the sentence thus reads, *Judy doesn't like unripe mangoes.*

Exercise 4

Match up columns A (pseudo-verb with **ng** actor) and B (definite / indefinite object) correctly. When you have done this, use a preposition of time or space from the box to expand the sentence further.

Example:

<p>A</p> <p>Gusto namin</p> <p>A (pseudo-verb with 'actor')</p> <p>Gusto ni Tessie</p> <p>Kailangan nila</p> <p>Nais po ba ninyo</p> <p>Hindi ko gusto (ng)</p> <p>Ayaw ng mga bisita</p>	<p>B</p> <p>ng malamig na Pepsi</p> <p>B (definite or indefinite object)</p> <p>magpagupit</p> <p>ng malamig na kape</p> <p>ang bagong kotse</p> <p>ng katulong</p> <p>ng aking tulong</p>	<p>Place</p> <p>sa bahay</p>
---	--	------------------------------

Exercise 5

Fill in the space with a pseudo-verb and then translate your sentence into English.

- _____ mo ba ng lapis (pencil)?
Translation:
- _____ bumili ni Baby ng saging (banana) sa palengke.
Translation:
- Bakit mo _____ ng malaking pisara (blackboard)?
Translation:

- Sino ang _____ mong isama (go with you) sa sine?
Translation:
- _____ mo ba ng malamig (cold) na Pepsi?
Translation:

Dialogue 3

Louise Cook is at the hairdresser's. She is discussing hairstyles with the hairdresser (HD).

- HD** Maganda *po* ang buhok ninyo ma'am, Ano *po* ang gusto ninyong gawin ko?
- Louise** Puwede bang cut, and blow dry?
- HD** Maaari *po*. Gusto *po* ba ninyo ng maikli?
- Louise** Bagay ba sa akin ang maikling gupit?
- HD** Opo. Babagay *po* sa inyo. Maganda *po* sa inyo ang maikling buhok.
- Louise** Mas bagay yata sa akin ang mahaba.
- HD** Bagay *po* sa inyo ang mahaba at maikli.
- Louise** O sige, maikli.
- HD** Okay *po*. Huhugasan ko muna ang buhok ninyo.
- Louise** Salamat.
- HD** Wala pang anuman.

Talasalitaan**Vocabulary**

maikling buhok	short hair
ang buhok ninyo	your hair
ang mahaba	a longer one
gawin ko	I'd do
puwede ba(ng)?	is it possible?
maaari po	it's possible (formal)
bagay ba sa akin	does it suit me
ang maikling gupit	short cut
babagay po sa inyo	it will suit you
mas bagay	suits better
huhugasan ko muna	I will wash first
maganda sa inyo	beautiful/nice on you

- Stylist** Ano po ang maitutulong ko sa inyo?
Ikaw (Tell him you want to have your hair cut)
Stylist Ibig n'yo na po bang magpagupit ngayon o gumawa ng appointment para bukas?
Ikaw (Tell him you would like it now, if possible)
Stylist Aba opo. Gusto rin po ba ninyong hugasan ko ito?
Ikaw (Tell him no thank you. You just want it cut)
Stylist Ibig po ba ninyo mahabang gupit o maikli?
Ikaw (Tell him you want it cut short)
Stylist Ibig rin po ba ninyo ng masahe?
Ikaw (Tell him politely you just want the haircut)
Stylist Okay lang po sir.
Ikaw (Say thank you very much)

Tips

1. Don't forget to tip 10–15%
2. Ask if they have worked with non-Asian hair before (if you are non-Asian)
3. Ask them to repeat what you have requested (to make sure they have understood)
4. Stylists often love to chat. Don't lose the opportunity to practice your Tagalog!

Language skills!

3 More on the sa preposition

During the conversation between Louise Cook and the hairdresser, the hairdresser said: **Babagay po sa inyo. Maganda po sa inyo and maikling buhok. It will suit you ma'am. A short cut would be nice on you.** In this example, the word 'sa' was used in yet another way. It wasn't used as a preposition of time or place, but rather with the describing word **maganda**. **Sa** can also be used with adjectives. For example: **Mabait sa akin si Cora. Cora is nice to me. Mabuti sa kanila ang mga guro. The teachers are**

good to them. Mapagmahal si Jonathan sa mga kapatid niya. Jonathan is affectionate to his brothers. When sa is used as an ordinary preposition, then it is translated into English as either to, for, on, in, into, about, or at.

Some further examples:

1. Tagalog: Malaki **sa iyo** ang blusa mo
English: *Your blouse is big on you*
2. Tagalog: Maliit **sa bata** ang sapatos
English: *The shoes are small on the child*
3. Tagalog: Maluwang **kay Larry** ang sombrero ng ito
English: *This hat is loose (big) on Larry*
4. Tagalog: Mabuti raw **sa iyo** ang gamot
English: *Apparently, the medicine is good for you*

Exercise 9

Why don't you see how much you have remembered – choose the correct answer from the box:

1. Magalang _____ (to the old people) si Rosita.
2. Mabuti _____ (to you) ang magpahinga.
3. Malaki yata _____ (on him) ang tsinelas.
4. Hindi ba maliit _____ (on me) ang pantalong ito?
5. Mabait _____ (to us) ang bisita ni Margaret.
6. Masyadong mahaba _____ (on her) ang damit na ito.

One-minute phrases

Matigas ang ulo (*mah-tee-gahs ahng oolaw*) Literally; *hard the head*. Meaning hardheaded/stubborn. For example: **Matigas ang ulo ni Boy. Boy is stubborn.**

Hindi yata pupuwede (*heen-dee yah-tah poo-poo-weh-deh*) Literally; *not I think it will do* Meaning *I don't think it's possible./ I don't think it can.*

Pagbutihin mo (*pahg-boo-tee-heen maw*). Meaning *make it good*. This phrase is commonly used when offering encouragement. For example: **Pagbutihin mo ang pag-aaral**

para maging doktor ka pagdating ng araw. *Study hard so that you'll become a doctor in the future.*

Lakad-takbo (*lah-kahd tahk-baw*) Literally; *walk-run*. Meaning a brisk walking pace. For example: **Lakad-takbo ang ginawa ko para maabot ko ang huling biyahe ng tren.** *I half walked, half-ran in order to catch the last train.*

Mabilis pa sa alas-singko (*mah-bee-lees pah sah ah-lahs-seeng-kaw*). Literally, *faster than five o'clock*. This phrase goes back to the time in the 1950s and 1960s when Filipino employees in Manila used to listen out for the five o'clock whistle from the port area of the city. The whistle signalled the end of the shift for the dock workers. Anyone finishing their work before the five o'clock whistle was deemed by his or her workmates to be *faster than the five o'clock* [whistle].

i Cultural tip

Whether you want to make an appointment with a hairdresser or buy something from a department store, you may sometimes find it difficult to attract the attention of a shop assistant. Invariably, they know that you are there but are hesitant to give you eye contact or approach you because of a lack of confidence in their own English. The assumption is always that foreigners do not understand Tagalog. This is just shyness and can easily be overcome with a warm and friendly smile, coupled with a few words of Tagalog. Never be afraid to try out your Tagalog. Even a few words will go a long way towards giving you a positive and memorable experience of the Philippines.

12 BAGAY BA SA AKIN?

Does this suit me?

In this unit you will learn how to

- try something on in a store
- use the passive
- describe the weather

Trying something on in a store

Dialogue 1

Louise Cook is trying something on in the changing room of a departmental store.

Store assistant **Gusto po ba ninyo iyan? Magsukat pa po kayo ng iba. Palda at blusa po kung ayaw ninyo ng direktso. May ibang kulay rin po. Magsukat po kayo ng palda at blusa.**

Louise **Sige. (Isinukat) Medyo masikip yata ang blusa pero maluwang naman ang palda. Gusto kong pumili pa. Sige po. Pumili pa po kayo. Ito pong may bulaklak? Direktso po ito.**

Louise **Napakaganda niyan at kung tama ang sukat, h'bili ako ng dalawa. Gusto ko ring bumili ng bandana.**

Store assistant **Marami po kaming bandana. Nasa kabilang departamento po ang mga ito.**

Louise **Maraming salamat.**

Store assistant **Wala pong anuman.**

Talasalitaan

gusto po ba ninyo
 magsukat pa
 ng iba
 may palda at blusa
 kung ayaw ninyo
 diretso
 ibang kulay rin
 bibili ako
 isinukat
 medyo masikip
 ng bandana
 pero maluwang
 pumili pa
 may bulaklak
 napakaganda
 niyan
 kung tama
 ang sukat
 ang kamay
 nasa kabila(ng) departamento

Vocabulary

*do you like/would you like
 try some more
 other ones
 we have blouses and skirts
 if you don't like
 straight (dress)
 other colours also
 I will buy
 tried it on
 slightly small
 a scarf
 but loose
 choose some more
 with flowers
 so pretty
 that
 if right
 the size
 the arms
 in the department store*

Translation

- Store assistant** Do you like that ma'am? Why not try a few others. We have skirts and blouses if you don't want a dress. They come in other colours too. Why not try on a skirt and a blouse ma'am.
- Louise** All right. (*trying*) I think the blouse is a little tight but on the other hand the skirt is loose.
- Store assistant** Okay ma'am. Please try on some others. How about this flowery dress?
- Louise** That is so pretty, and if it's my size, I will take two. I would also like to buy a scarf.
- Store assistant** We have many scarves. They're in the department next door.
- Louise** Thank you very much.
- Store assistant** You're welcome.

Exercise 1

Drawing from what you have learned so far, replace the words in italics with a different adjective, verb, noun or pronoun, to form coherent Tagalog sentences.

Example: Gusto po ba ninyo *inyan*?

Answer: Gusto po ba ninyo *ito*?

1. May palda at blusa po kung *ayaw* ninyo ng diretso.
2. Magsukat po kayo ng *palda at blusa*.
3. Medyo *masikip* yata ito.
4. Ito pong may *bulaklak*?
5. Napakaganda niyan at kung *mabuti* ang sukat, bibili ako ng dalawa.
6. Gusto ko ring *bumili* ng bandana.
7. Marami po kaming *bandana*.

Language skills**1 Verbs: Active voice / passive voice
Transitive / intransitive**

When forming a simple sentence, action words play a key role: they let us know what is being done. These action words are known as verbs. Verbs have two distinct ways of indicating an action, each giving a different flavour or 'voice' to the sentence. We can call these distinct flavours the active voice and the passive voice. The 'voice' of a sentence tells us something about the relationship between: 1) the subject of the verb; 2) the 'doer' of the verbal action; 3) the person or thing that the verbal action is done to.

We use the active voice when the subject of the verb is the 'doer' of the action. The active voice is used in most English speech and writing, because we usually want to inform our listeners or our readers about who or what carried out the action of the verb. For example: Roy read a book yesterday. Jack and Jill carried a pail of water. I bought a pair of slippers.

The passive voice is used when the subject is not the person or thing 'doing' the action of the verb. It is the person or thing that is

acted upon by the verb. For example: The ball was thrown by the boy. The ribbon was cut by the mayor. These words were said by him. We also use the passive voice to direct our listener's attention to the most important part of our message. The passive voice can be used when we do not know who carries out the action expressed by the verb. For example: The food has been eaten.

Before moving on to **um** verbs, it is important for us to understand the difference between transitive and intransitive verbs. Very simply, a transitive verb is a verb that has a direct object. For example: **Bumili si Roy ng sombrero** (*bumili* is the verb while **ng sombrero** is the direct object). *Roy bought a hat.* An intransitive verb, by way of contrast, is a verb that has no direct object. For example: **Namili si Mary.** *Mary went shopping.* Some verbs are always transitive (with an object), others are always intransitive (without an object), but just to keep us on our toes, many verbs are used both transitively and intransitively. We will further explore both transitive and intransitive verbs as we go along.

2 The um verb

We now turn to the first active verb type, known as the **um** verb. The **um** verb type forms major transitive and intransitive verbs. There are two major ways of forming **um** verbs: 1) by adding **um** in front of a verb stem or 'root' that begins with a vowel. (A verb root is a verb in its simplest form. For example, the verb **kumain** to eat. The root / stem of **kumain**, is **kain** = eat); or 2) by inserting **um** inside a verb root that begins with a consonant (non-vowel). Look at some examples.

How to change the tense of an **um** verb stem beginning with a vowel:

Example: Verb stem: **alis** (*leave*)


um + alis	= umalis (to leave)	infinitive
a + alis	= aalis	future
um + a + alis	= umaalis	present
um + alis	= umalis	past

Note: Did you notice that in the **um** verb the infinitive and past tense look the same? They are distinguished only by their use. While the infinitive is only used in commands, suggestions and

requests, (For example: **Umalis ka!** 'You go'), the past tense usually takes a time element in the sentence (for example: **Kumain kami kagabi,** *We ate last night*).

Four major ways of changing verb tenses in Tagalog

1. Infinitive (used in commands, suggestions and requests only)
For example:
Command: **Huwag kang tumayo** diyan! *Don't [you] stand there!*
Suggestion: **Kumain** na tayo. *Let's eat now*
Request: **Puwede bang kumuha** ka ng plato sa kusina?
Could you fetch a plate from the kitchen?
2. Future: will/shall + infinitive, the future perfect tense (will have + past participle), be going to + infinitive the future progressive tense (will be + present participle)
For example: **Uuwi ako.** *I am going home. I will/shall go home*
3. Present: the simple present tense, the present progressive tense
For example: **Kumakain** ako ng gulay araw-araw. *I eat vegetables every day*
4. Past: the simple past tense, the past progressive tense
Example: **Bumili** si Ronald ng sorbetes. *Ronald bought some ice-cream*


 Listen to the pronunciation of each of the following verbs, then try to pronounce each word yourself, without the help of the tape.

Verb root	Meaning	Infinitive	Future	Present	Past
akyat	<i>climb</i>	umakyat	aakyat	umaakyat	umakyat
asa	<i>rely upon</i>	umasa	aasa	umaasa	umasa
inom	<i>drink</i>	uminom	iinom	umiinom	uminom
iyak	<i>cry</i>	umiyak	iiyak	umiiyak	umiyak
uwi	<i>go home</i>	umuwi	uuwi	umuuwi	umuwi
utang	<i>borrow</i>	umutang	uutang	umuutang	umutang
	<i>money</i>				

How to change the tense of an **um** verb stem beginning with a consonant:

Example: Verb stem: **basa** (*read*)

b + um + asa	= bumasa (to read)	infinitive
ba + basa	= babasa	future
b + um + abasa	= bumabasa	present
b + um + asa	= bumasa	past

 Listen to the pronunciation of each of the following verbs, then try to pronounce each word yourself, without the help of the tape.

Verb root	Meaning	Infinitive	Future	Present	Past
bili	<i>buy</i>	bumili	bibili	bumibili	bumili
kain	<i>eat</i>	kumain	kakain	kumakain	kumain
kuha	<i>get</i>	kumuha	kukuha	kumukuha	kumuha
gawa	<i>make</i>	gumawa	gagawa	gumagawa	gumawa
hiram	<i>borrow</i>	humiram	hihiram	humihiram	humiram
lakad	<i>walk</i>	lumakad	lalakad	lumalakad	lumakad

More verbs can be found listed at the back of this book.

This is the formula:

Verb	+ actor
Kumain	si Louie
Ate	Louie
<i>Louie ate</i>	

Verb	+ actor	+ object
Kumain	si Louie	ng sorbetes
Ate	Louie	ice cream
<i>Louie ate (some) ice cream</i>		

Verb	+ actor	+ object	+ place
Kumain	si Louie	ng sorbetes	sa restawran
Ate	Louie	ice cream	at the restaurant
<i>Louie ate (some) ice cream at the restaurant</i>			

Verb	+ actor	+ object	+ place	+ time
Kumain	si Louie	ng sorbetes	sa restawran	kahapon
Ate	Louie	ice cream	at the restaurant	yesterday
<i>Louie ate (some) ice cream at the restaurant yesterday</i>				

Did you notice how you are able to expand a very simple sentence easily? You can lengthen a sentence by merely adding a preposition of time or place or an adverb etc.

Exercise 2

Using the sentence structure provided (verb + actor + object + place + time), build a Tagalog sentence around each of the following verbs. Use the vocabulary box provided to help you:

1. Bibili
2. Kumakain
3. Gumawa
4. Humihiram
5. Iinom

Talasalitaan

kahapon
ngayon
humihiram
ng kape
kumakain
iinom
ng laruan
araw-araw
gumawa
bibili

Vocabulary

yesterday
today
borrowing
coffee
eating
will drink
toy
every day
to make
will buy

A note about recent action

There is a minor, yet important, aspect of active Tagalog verbs known as the recent action. The recent action is used to express events in the very recent past. It is formed by prefixing **ka** to the future tense of the verb. For example, the future tense of the **um** verb **alis** is **aalis**. To form the recent action aspect of the verb, we simply add **ka** + **aalis** = **kaaalis**. Remember, however, that the recent action takes the **ng** form as the 'doer' of the action. In order to underline how recent the action is, the word **lang** (*only/just/only just*) is always used with the recent action form. For example, **Kaaalis lang ni Stephen at ni Amy, Amy and Stephen have only just left. Huwag na tayong magmeryenda, kakakain lang natin ng tanghalian, Let's not have a snack as we've only just eaten lunch. Kadarating mo lang ba?, Have you just arrived?**

Asking about alterations

Dialogue 2

Louise Cook is at the dressmaker's.

Louise Magandang hapon.

Modista Magandang hapon *po* naman.

Louise Bumili ako ng telang pambistida sa palengke, at gusto kong magpatahi ng bestida.

Modista Aba opo. Nasaan *po* ang tela n'yo?

Louise Heto. Ayokong masyadong maikli ito.

Modista *Hindi po*. Puwede *po* bang sukatan ko kayo?

Louise Aba oo naman.

Modista Ang sukatan *po* ng dibdib ay tatlungpu't anim na pulgada. Ang baywang *po* ay dalawampu't walong pulgada. Ang hips *po* ay tatlungpu't walong pulgada. Ang manggas *po* ay walong pulgada. Ang balikat ay labing-anim na pulgada. Ang haba ng palda ay dalawampu't apat na pulgada. Iyan lang *po*.

Louise Kailan ko maaaring makuha ang damit?

Modista Sa Biyernes *po*. Mga alas kwatro nang hapon.

Louise Maraming salamat.

Modista Wala pong anuman.

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
ang sukatan ko	<i>my measurement</i>
bumili	<i>bought</i>
telang pambistida	<i>dress material</i>
haba	<i>length</i>
sukatan	<i>to measure</i>
pulgada	<i>inches</i>
paikliin	<i>be shortened</i>
nasaan	<i>where</i>
heto	<i>here</i>
ayoko(ng)	<i>don't like</i>
sukat ng dibdib	<i>bust line</i>
palengke	<i>market</i>
kailan	<i>when</i>
magpatahi	<i>have clothes made</i>
bukas nang hapon	<i>tomorrow afternoon</i>
baywang	<i>waistline</i>

hips	<i>hips</i>
manggas	<i>sleeves</i>
balikat	<i>shoulders</i>
palda	<i>skirt</i>
makuha	<i>to collect/get</i>

Translation

Louise Good afternoon.

Dressmaker Good afternoon to you, too.

Louise I bought some cloth at the market and I would like to have a dress made up.

Dressmaker Yes ma'am. Where is your cloth?

Louise Here. I don't want it to be too short.

Dressmaker No ma'am. Can I take your measurements?

Louise Of course.

Dressmaker Your bust line is 36. Your waist line is 28. Your hips are 38. Sleeve length is 8 inches. Armhole is 14 inches. Shoulders are 16. Skirt length is 24 inches. That's all ma'am.

Louise When will I be able to collect the dress?

Dressmaker On Friday ma'am, at about 4.00 in the afternoon.

Louise Thank you very much.

Dressmaker You're welcome.

Some useful words for a visit to the *sastre* (*tailor*) can be found in the vocabulary box.

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
medida	<i>tape measure</i>
sinulid	<i>thread</i>
karayom	<i>needle</i>
iklihan	<i>to make short</i>
habaan	<i>to make long</i>
lakihan	<i>to make big</i>
liitan	<i>to make small</i>
palitan	<i>change</i>
terno	<i>go together</i>
itupi	<i>to fold</i>
kalsahan	<i>to lower the hemline</i>

Exercise 3

Listen to the list of items on the tape. The tailor has misplaced his spectacles and can't see where he has left things. Can you help him find them? With a pen or pencil, circle each item mentioned as you hear it.



Exercise 4

How do you say the following in Tagalog?

1. You want a green skirt.
2. You don't want a long skirt.
3. You need it on Monday.
4. Your skirt is at home.

Language skills

3 Verbalisation of adjectives

Louise Cook used the word **umikli** in her conversation with the dressmaker, **ayokong masyadong umikli ito**. **Umikli** is derived from the adjective **maikli** (*short*). In Tagalog, adjectives can also become action words (verbs). When this happens, the resulting meaning of the newly formed action word is 'to become ____'. To do this, simply drop the prefix 'ma' from the adjective, e.g., **maikli** (*short*), add 'um' = **um + ikli = umikli** (*to become shorter*). When

the adjective root begins with a vowel (e.g. **asim**, '*sourness*'), simply add 'um' before the root word to produce the infinitive (e.g. **um + asim = umasim** *to become sour*). When the adjective root begins with a consonant (e.g. **ganda** *beauty*), then 'um' is placed after the first letter (e.g. **g + um + anda = gumanda**, *to become beautiful*). Here are some more examples:

Example: Adjective stem: **sama** (*badness*) source: **masama** (*bad*)

s + um + ama = sumama	(to become/ get worse)	infinitive
sa + sama = sasama	(will become/ get worse)	future
s + um + asama = sumasama	(becoming/ getting worse)	present
s + um + ama = sumama	(became/ got worse)	past

Listen to the pronunciation of each of the following verbalised adjectives on the tape. Why not try to repeat them without the help of the tape.

Adjective	Meaning	Infinitive	Future	Present	Past
(ma)laki	<i>big</i>	lumaki	lalaki	lumalaki	lumaki
(ma)ganda	<i>pretty</i>	gumanda	gaganda	gumaganda	gumanda
(ma)liit	<i>small</i>	lumiit	liliit	lumiliit	lumiit
(ma)sarap	<i>delicious</i>	sumarap	sasarap	sumasarap	sumarap
(ma)layo	<i>far</i>	lumayo	lalayo	lumalayo	lumayo
(ma)buti	<i>good</i>	bumuti	bubuti	bumubuti	bumuti
(ma)linis	<i>clean</i>	luminis	lilinis	lumilinis	luminis

A further list can be found at the back of this book.

Some example sentences:

Tagalog: **Gumaganda** ang hardin ni Patricia

Literal: becoming more beautiful the garden of Patricia

English: *Patricia's garden is becoming more beautiful*

Tagalog: **Lumilinis** ang kotse mo

Literal: becoming cleaner the car your

English: *Your car is becoming cleaner*

Tagalog: **Hindi bumuti** ang panahon

Literal: (did)not improve the weather

English: *The weather did not improve*

Tagalog: **Bumibilis** yata ang takbo ng relos mo

Literal: becoming fast I think the running of watch your

English: *I think your watch is running fast*

Exercise 5

Provide the correct tense of the following verbalised adjectives. The stem of each adjective is given in the bracket:

- _____ ang problema ni Jose araw-araw. (laki, present)
- Ang bahay ni Aling Maria ay _____. (ganda, present)
- Hindi ba _____ ang kotse ni Les? (linis, past)
- Kailangang _____ tayo sa gulò. (layo, infinitive)

Exercise 6

See how many verbalised adjectives you can find in the crossword.

		S	A	K	A	L	I	D
	L	U	M	A	L	A	K	I
L	U	M	I	W	A	N	A	G
	M	A		A	H	A	S	H
H	I	R	A	P		P	M	A
I	N	A	K	B	A	Y	A	A
	A	P	A	N	D	A		
A	W		T	A	N	O	T	N

Describing the weather

Dialogue 3

The weather is bad. Bill, Louise and Roy Cook are talking about it in their hotel room.

Bill Mukhang *sumasama* ang panahon. **Babagyo yata!**

Louise Kagabi, **umulan** nang malakas at humangin din.

Roy Noong isang linggo, kahit umuulan, sumisikat ang araw.

Louise Mabuti kung ganoon.

Bill Mahirap kasi dito sa Pilipinas, kapag umulan, babaha kaagad.

Roy Dumidilim na naman ang langit.

Louise Mabuti yata dito muna tayo sa hotel hanggang sa gumanda ang panahon.

Bill Sang-ayon sa radyo, bubuti raw ang panahon bago gumabi.

Roy Magbabasa ako ng aklat.

Talasalitaan

umulan
sumasama
ang panahon
babagyo
na naman
ang langit
umulan
humangin
noong isang linggo
kahit
umuulan
sumisikat
ang araw
gumabi
kung ganoon
mahirap
kapag
babaha
kaagad
dumidilim

Vocabulary

to rain
becoming/getting worse
the weather
there will be a typhoon
again
the sky
rained
was windy
last week
even though
raining
shining
the sun
to become night
if that's the case
difficult
if/when
will flood
immediately
becoming dark

dito muna	here (for the moment)
hanggang	until
gumanda	to become fine
sang-ayon sa	according to
radio	radio
bubuti	will become better
bago	before
magbabasa	will read

Translation

- Bill** The weather seems to be getting worse. I think a typhoon is coming.
- Louise** Last night, it rained hard and there was wind too.
- Roy** The other week, even though it was raining, the sun was shining.
- Louise** It's good (when it's) like that.
- Bill** The trouble here in the Philippines is that when it rains there are floods.
- Roy** The sky is getting darker again.
- Louise** It might be a good idea to stay in the hotel until the weather settles.
- Bill** According to the radio, the weather will be fine by tonight.
- Roy** I will read a book.

Exercise 7

The following sentences need to be expanded. Can you add an adverb of time (e.g. **bukas**, *tomorrow*) or preposition (e.g. **sa in**, *at*) to expand each sentence? Use the vocabulary box provided to help you:

Example: Kumikidlat kanina add: **pero** hindi yata uulan.

1. Bumubuti ang panahon **kasi**
2. Umuulan nang malakas **lagi**
3. Hindi bumabaha sa Pilipinas **kung**
4. Lumiliwanag ba ang langit **kahit na**
5. Sasama ang panahon bago gumabi **sapagka't**

Talasalitaan	<i>Vocabulary</i>
kasi	<i>because</i>
lagi	<i>always</i>
kung	<i>if/when</i>
kahit na	<i>even though</i>
sapagka't	<i>because</i>

Language skills

4 Verbalisation of acts of nature

Most Tagalog words describing acts of nature can also be made into verbs. For example, if the sun is shining, Filipinos merely say 'Umaaraw!' (from **araw** = the sun). If there is a flash of lightning, they exclaim: 'Kumikidlat!' (from **kidlat** = lightning). **Umulan kasi kaya hindi kami sumimba**, *It rained that's why we didn't go to church*. The following list gives further examples of other verbalised acts of nature. Notice that they also form their tenses in the same manner as the **um** verb.

Examples:

	Infinitive & past tense		Present continuous	Future
baha – flood	bumaha	<i>to flood</i>	bumabaha	babaha
araw – sun	umaraw	<i>to shine (sun only)</i>	umaaraw	aaraw
ulan – rain	umulan	<i>to rain</i>	umuulan	uulan
kidlat – lightning	kumidlat	<i>to flash (lightning)</i>	kumikidlat	kikidlat
kulog – thunder	kumulog	<i>to thunder</i>	kumukulog	kukulog
sikat – shine	sumikat	<i>to shine (sun, moon)</i>	sumisikat	sisikat
lubog – set	lumubog	<i>to set (sun, moon)</i>	lumulubog	lulubog
bagyo – typhoon	bumagyo	<i>to have a typhoon</i>	bumabagyo	babagyo
hangin – wind	humangin	<i>to become windy</i>	humahangin	hahangin
ambon – drizzle	umambon	<i>to drizzle</i>	umaambon	aambon
lindol – earthquake	lumindol	<i>to have an e'quake</i>	lumilindol	lilindol

Changing the tenses of the um acts of nature:

	Infinitive	Future	Present	Past
	umulan	uulan	umuulan	umulan

Example: *It's going to rain* *It is raining* *It rained*

Sample sentences:

Tagalog: Sumisikat ang araw sa silangan

Literal: Shine/shining the sun in the east

English: *The sun shines in the east*

Tagalog: Bumabagyo lagi sa may China Sea

Literal: Typhoon always near the China Sea

English: *There's always a typhoon near the China Sea*

Tagalog: Kapag umaambon may bahag-hari daw

Literal: If/when drizzling there is rainbow apparently

English: *Apparently, when it drizzles, a rainbow appears*

Exercise 8

Basing your answers on the verb in italics, supply an appropriate reply to the following questions:

1. Hindi ba *bumabaha* sa Maynila?
2. *Lumulubog* ba ang araw sa silangan?
3. Mga anong oras *sumisikat* ang araw sa Pilipinas?
4. Wala bang ingay kung *kumukulog at kumikidlat*?
5. *Umaaraw* ba kung *sumisikat* ang buwan?

Exercise 9

Look at the pictures showing some acts of nature. Can you say them in Tagalog using the tense or form indicated?



Exercise 10

Listen to the radio weather forecast on the tape. In your own words, try to give the following weather forecast. Use the vocabulary box to help you:

Today's weather: Cloudy, possible rain in northern Luzon.

Tonight: Warm

Tomorrow: Plenty of sunshine

Talasalitaan

makulimlim
maaaring umulan
hilagang Luzon
mainit
mainit ang araw
mamayang gabi
sa hapon

Vocabulary

cloudy
it might rain
northern Luzon
warm
plenty of sunshine
tonight
in the afternoon

One-minute phrases

Ilista sa tubig (*ee-lees-tah sah too-beeg*) Literally, *list in water*. Meaning not to make a note of something, to forget all about it. This phrase is commonly used in connection with a 'conveniently forgotten' debt.

Di-mahulugang karayom (*dee mah-hoo-loo-gang kah-rah-yawm*) literally, *cannot drop a needle* Meaning a crowded area/ a tightly packed space. For example: **Napakaraming tao noong dumalaw ang Papa sa Luneta at ito'y di mahulugang karayom.** *Luneta was so crowded when the Pope visited that it was so difficult to move around (find a needle).*

Sisikat din ang araw (*see-see-kaht deen ahng ah-rao*) Literally, *the sun will also rise*. Similar in meaning to the English proverb: 'Every cloud has a silver lining'. **Kalimutan mo na ang nangyari sa iyong pananim dahil sa baha. May kasabihan tayong: sisikat din ang araw,** *Try to forget what happened to your crops because of the flood. We have a saying: every cloud has a silver lining.*

Isukat mo nga (*ee-soo-kaht maw ngah*) Literal and true meaning *why don't you try it on?* Trying an article of clothing etc. something on in a shop.

Bahag-hari (*bah-hahg-haa-ree*) Literally, *the king's loin cloth*. This is the Tagalog word for rainbow!

i Cultural tip

Dress sense is very important in Filipino culture. Formal occasions require formal clothes. If you are unsure what to wear, don't be afraid to ask your Filipino friends for advice. If you are attending weddings, business meetings or baptisms, why not invest in a Filipino 'Barong Tagalog'. This is Filipino national dress and very acceptable as formal attire. Good-quality material is easily obtainable. There are many tailor shops where they can take your measurements and make the garment up for you. Made-to-measure suits and dresses are generally very good value for money in the Philippines.

13 SA ISTASYON NG BUS

At the bus station

In this unit you will learn how to

- ask about tickets, destinations, departures and arrivals
- express days of the week, etc.
- use **mag** and **ma** verbs

Asking about tickets, destinations and departures

Dialogue 1

The Cook family are going to the north of Luzon. They are at the ticket office enquiring about departures.

- Bill** Magandang umaga. Gusto kong bumili ng tiket para sa tatlo papuntang Banaue.
- Opisyal** Magandang umaga *po* naman. Ibig *po* ba ninyo tiket na papunta lamang doon o balikan?
- Bill** Kung puwede balikan at sa Biyernes ika-lima ng Abril ang balik.
- Opisyal** Kailan *po* ninyo ibig magbiyahe?
- Bill** Kung puwede sa Martes.
- Opisyal** Sandali lang *po* at titingnan ko.
- Bill** OK lang, maghihintay ako.
- Opisyal** Tatlo *po* ang biyahe sa Martes, ika-dalawa ng Abril. Ang una ay aalis sa alas 4.30 nang umaga, tapos alas 10.30, at alas 2.30 nang hapon. Mabuti *po* ang alas 4.30 nang umaga kung maaari kayong magbiyahe nang maaga.

- Bill** Oo. Puwede kaming magbiyahe nang maaga. Saan kami puwedeng mag-almusal?
- Opisyal** Hihinto *po* ang bus nang mga alas 7.30 sa Pampanga upang makapag-almusal kayo.
- Bill** Mabuti kung ganoon.
- Opisyal** Eto *po* ang tiket ninyo para sa tatlong pasahero. Maligayang paglalakbay *po*!
- Bill** Maraming salamat.
- Opisyal** Wala pong anuman.

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
balikan	<i>return</i>
kung puwede sana	<i>if possible</i>
dating	<i>arrival</i>
gusto kong bumili	<i>I want to buy</i>
ng tiket	<i>tickets</i>
para sa tatlo	<i>for three</i>
papunta sa	<i>going to</i>
naman	<i>too, also</i>
hihinto	<i>will stop</i>
aalis	<i>will go etc.</i>
kung puwede sana	<i>if possible</i>
ang biyahe	<i>the trip</i>
sa araw	<i>during the day</i>
nang umaga	<i>in the morning</i>
tapos	<i>afterwards/ then</i>
nang hapon	<i>in the afternoon</i>
magbiyahe	<i>to travel</i>
maghintay	<i>to wait</i>
alis	<i>departure</i>
nang maaga	<i>early</i>
mag-almusal	<i>to have breakfast</i>
upang	<i>in order to/ so that</i>
makapag-almusal	<i>can have breakfast</i>
kung ganoon	<i>if that's the case</i>
eto po	<i>here sir</i>
tiket ninyo	<i>your tickets</i>
maligaya(ng)	<i>happy</i>
paglalakbay	<i>trip</i>

Translation

- Bill** Good morning. I'd like to buy tickets for three (persons) to Banaue.
- Official** Good morning sir. Do you want single tickets or return?
- Bill** Return tickets, please if possible coming back on Friday April 5.
- Official** When do you want to travel sir?
- Bill** If possible, on Tuesday.
- Official** Please wait sir while I check.
- Bill** Yes. I'll wait.
- Official** Sir, there are three trips on Tuesday April 2. The first is at 4.30 in the morning, then at 10.30 and at 2.30 in the afternoon. The 4.30 (departure) is the best (one) if you can travel early.
- Bill** Sure. We can travel early. Where can we have breakfast?
- Official** Sir, the bus is going to make a stop at 7.30 at Pampanga so that you can have your breakfast.
- Bill** That's good.
- Official** Sir, here are your tickets for three passengers. Have a good trip!
- Bill** Thank you very much.
- Official** You're welcome.

Other useful vocabulary for travelling can be found in the vocab box.

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
pasahero	<i>passenger</i>
tiket	<i>ticket</i>
pamasaha	<i>fare</i>
biyahe	<i>trip</i>
pang-isa	<i>single</i>
sasakay	<i>will board</i>
bababa	<i>will alight/get off</i>
sukli	<i>change</i>
upuan	<i>seat</i>
bakante	<i>vacant</i>

parahin	to stop (a public vehicle)
konduktor	conductor
drayber	driver
umangkas	to get a lift
siksikan	packed to capacity
mama	term a passenger uses to call driver's attention
barya	change

Exercise 1 Listening and understanding

Listen carefully once again to the conversation between Bill Cook and the clerk. Based on the dialogue, identify which of the following statements are true and which are false.

1. Gustong bumili ni Bill ng tiket papuntang Davao.
2. Kung puwede sana gustong umalis nang maaga ni Bill.
3. Sabi ng opisyal: 'Mag-almusal kayo at titingnan ko.'
4. Sabi ni Bill sa opisyal: 'Maghihintay ako.'
5. Tatlo ang biyahe sa araw.
6. May biyahe sa gabi at maaga ito.
7. Hindi puwedeng magbiyahe sina Bill nang maaga.
8. Maaari silang mag-almusal nang maaga.
9. Sa Pampanga hihinto ang bus.
10. Hindi sila mag-almusal sa Pampanga.

Exercise 2

Can you say the following sentences in the negative?

1. Gusto kong bumili ng tiket.
2. Puwede bukas nang umaga.
3. Humihinto ang bus nang mga alas 7.30.
4. Malapit ang Babauae buhat sa Maynila.
5. Mabuti ang alas 4.30 nang umaga.

Days, months and dates

In Dialogue 1, Bill Cook mentions that he wants to travel on Tuesday April 2. To give the date in Tagalog, simply use **ika +**

Tagalog number. For example: **ika-apat ng Disyembre = December 4.**

Question: **Kailan ang kaarawan mo? When is your birthday?**

Answer: **Sa ika-apat ng Disyembre. On December 4.**

Here is a complete list of the days of the week and months of the year:

Days of the week		Months of the year	
Lunes	<i>Monday</i>	Enero	<i>January</i>
Martes	<i>Tuesday</i>	Pebrero	<i>February</i>
Miyerkoles	<i>Wednesday</i>	Marso	<i>March</i>
Huwebes	<i>Thursday</i>	Abril	<i>April</i>
Biyernes	<i>Friday</i>	Mayo	<i>May</i>
Sabado	<i>Saturday</i>	Hunyo	<i>June</i>
Linggo	<i>Sunday</i>	Hulyo	<i>July</i>
		Agosto	<i>August</i>
		Septyembre	<i>September</i>
		Oktubre	<i>October</i>
		Nobyembre	<i>November</i>
		Disyembre	<i>December</i>

Exercise 3

What comes after _____? Can you fill in the blank with the correct answer?

1. Miyerkoles _____
2. Agosto _____
3. Oktubre _____
4. Sabado _____
5. Martes _____
6. Mayo _____
7. Biyernes _____

Exercise 4

Can you translate the following into Tagalog? Use the vocabulary box provided to help you:

Example: July 4 Answer: Ika-apat ng Hulyo

1. His birthday is on August 30.
2. School begins on Monday.
3. We will be visiting you on Saturday, May 10.
4. The conference was last Tuesday, June 14.
5. We are going to the zoo on Sunday, September 3.
6. Are you leaving on Saturday?
7. Who is arriving on Thursday, January 5?

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
simula	start
bibisita	be visiting
kumperensiya	conference
pupunta	going
aalis	leaving
darating	arriving
paaralan	school

Language skills

1 Mag verbs

Most Tagalog verbs begin with **mag**. Like the **um** verbs we met in Unit 12, **mag** verbs can also be transitive (with an object) or intransitive (without an object). You will remember that **um** verbs take either a prefix (an addition before the verb root), or an infix (an addition within the verb root). **Mag** verbs are easier in that they take only a prefix. **Mag** verbs also need an object. As with the **um** verbs, the connecting word 'ng' is used before the object. For example: **Magbili ng bigas**. *Sell rice*. **Mag** verbs need a subject, but they do not always need: 1) a time element; 2) a preposition; 3) an adverb.

The **mag** verb is very versatile in that while it forms both major transitive verbs (verbs with a direct object) and intransitive verbs (verbs without a direct object), it continues to carry the word that the verb suggests. For example: **magtennis** (*to play tennis*), **maglaba** (*to wash clothes*), **magbihis** (*to put clothes on*), **magdasal** (*to pray*) etc. Although most verb stems can be used with the **mag** prefix, it is important to remember that some verbs

are **um** verbs only, while some verbs are **mag** verbs only. Listen carefully to how each verb is used by native Tagalog speakers. Through listening and repeating what you hear, you will soon be able to distinguish between the different verb types. If you are unsure, check out the verb list at the back of this book or check your Tagalog dictionary.

The versatility of the **MAG** verb becomes clear when we see the variety of ways in which it can be used:

1. **mag** + noun, e.g. mag + bus = magbus, *to go by bus*
2. **mag** + noun designating a member of a profession, e.g. abogado (*lawyer*) = mag-abogado, *to become a lawyer*
3. **mag** + article of clothing, e.g. mag + kamiseta = magkamiseta, *to wear a tee-shirt*
4. **mag** + language, e.g. mag + Tagalog = magTagalog, *to speak Tagalog*
5. **mag** + item designated by the noun, e.g. magbunga, *to bear fruit*
6. **mag** + noun expressing action involving two or more actors, mag + salubong (*greet one another*) = magsalubong, *to meet*
7. **mag** + adjective, e.g. mag + mabagal (*slow*) = magmabagal, *be slow in*, mag + mayaman = magmayaman, *to pretend to be rich*
8. **mag** + times of day, e.g. mag + madaling-araw (*dawn*) = magmadaling-araw, *be dawn*

Changing the tense of the **mag** verb is easy. Take for example the verb stem **laba** (*wash clothes*):

mag + laba	= maglaba	infinitive (used only in requests, commands and suggestions)
mag + la+laba	= maglalaba	future
*nag + la+laba	= naglalaba	present
*nag + laba	= naglaba	past
kapag + la + laba	= kapaglalaba	recent action

(*Note: the prefix **mag** is used in the infinitive and future tenses and changes to **nag** in the present and past tense.)

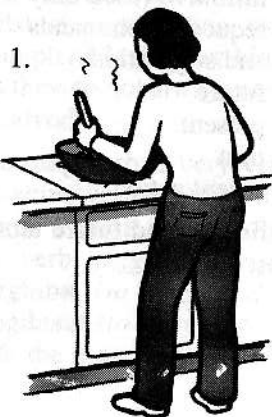
Here are a few commonly occurring **mag** verbs. Listen to how they are pronounced on the tape:

mag-ayos	to arrange
mag-alis	to remove
mag-abang	to wait for someone
mag-aral	to study
magbantay	to guard
magbigay	to give
magbili	to sell
magbintang	to accuse
magdasal	to pray
maghain	to serve food on the table
maghugas	to wash
maglaba	to wash clothes
maglakad	to walk
maglaro	to play
maglinis	to clean
magluto	to cook
magmana	to inherit
magmasid	to watch

A further selection of **mag** verbs can be found at the back of this book.

Exercise 5

Look at the pictures and try to find the correct verb to describe each activity? Give your answers in the **mag** verb form:



3.



A guide to expanding the **mag** sentence:

A) Transitive verbs (with object)

Verb	+ actor	+ object
Nagbibili	si Jose	ng lumang alahas
Selling/sells	Jose	old jewellery

Jose is selling / sells old jewellery.

Verb	+ actor	+ object	+ place
Nagluto	kami	ng pansit	sa bahay ni Letty
Cooked	we	noodles	at Letty's home

We cooked some noodles at Letty's home.

Verb	+ particle	+ actor	+ object	+ place + time
Nagdala	pala	silá	ng pagkain	sa party kagabi
Brought	so	they some	to the party	last night

food

So they brought some food to the party last night.

B) Intransitive verbs (without an object)

Verb	+ actor
Maglalaba	si Margaret
Will wash/ will be washing clothes	Margaret

Margaret will be washing clothes.

Qualifier/ Verb	+ actor	+ place and/or time
Hindi nagsalita	si Gener	sa pulong kahapon.
Did not talk/speak	Gener	at the meeting yesterday.

Gener didn't talk/speak at the meeting yesterday.

Exercise 6

Using the verb, form and scenario provided, see if you can do the following in Tagalog:

1. Suggest to a friend to play. (laro) (infinitive)
2. Say that you cleaned the car already. (linis) (past)
3. Say that Maria is washing the dishes. (hugas) (present)
4. Suggest to everyone you want to pray. (dasal) (infinitive)
5. Say that Lina and her friends will be cooking. (luto) (future)

Mag and recent action

Just to keep us on our toes, when using the recent action with **mag** verbs, we must be careful to remember that **mag** changes to **pag**. For example:

ka +	future	= recent action
ka +	maglalaro (will play)	= kapaglalaro
ka +	maglilinis (will clean)	= kapaglilinis
ka +	mag-aaral (will study)	= kapag-aaral

See Unit 12, page 169.

Enquiring about arrivals

Dialogue 2

Jobert is enquiring about the arrival of the Cook family on the bus from Banaue.

Jobert Anong oras ang dating ng bus ngayon galing sa Baguio?

Manager Alas 7.45 po nang gabi.

Jobert Bakit, anong oras ba itong umalis buhat sa Baguio?

Manager Kanina pong alas 9.00 nang umaga.

Jobert Saang mga lugar ba ito hihinto?

Manager Sa Ilocos po, sa, Tarlac, Pampanga at Bulacan.

Jobert Ganoon ba? Maraming salamat.

Manager Wala pong anuman.

Talasalitaan

ang dating
ngayon
galing sa
mga lugar
bakit
umalis

Vocabulary

the arrival
today/now
from
places
why
departed

Translation

Jobert What time will the bus from Baguio arrive?

Manager Sir, 7.45 in the evening.

Jobert (Why) What time did it leave / depart from Baguio?

Manager A while ago at 9.00 this morning.

Jobert What places will it make a stopover?

Manager At Ilocos, Tarlac, Pampanga and Bulacan

Jobert Is that so? Thank you very much.

Manager You're welcome sir.

Exercise 7

Use Dialogue 2 to answer the following questions:

1. Ilang oras ang biyahe ng bus galing sa Baguio?
2. Hihinto ba ang bus sa Zambales?
3. Alin ang ikatatlong probinsiya na hihintuan ng bus?
4. Ilan lahat-lahat ang probinsiya?

Talasalitaan

ilan(g)
alin
ikatatlo(ng)
lahat-lahat

Vocabulary

how many
which one
third
altogether

Exercise 8

Give a Tagalog summary of the schedule in Dialogue 2 in the second column.

English

1. Departure from Baguio:
2. Arrival from Baguio:
3. Stopover:

Tagalog

9.00 a.m.
7.45 p.m.
Ilocos, Pangasinan, Tarlac
Pampanga & Bulacan

TRITRAN, INC.			
BUS NO.	DATE	TIME	
2000	JAN 1	A.M. P.M.	
1000	FEB 2		
0 0 0	MAR 3	HOUR	
1	1	1	10
2	2	2	11
3	3	3	12
4	4	4	
5	5	5	15
6	6	6	30
7	7	7	40
8	8	8	55
9	9	9	
AC	EXP	CRD	HF
		FR	IFPR
		SF	

No. 622336 TRI-117

KILOMETER POST NO.		PESOS	CTS
FROM	TO		
0 9 0	0 9 0	9	50
1 8 1	1 8 1	2 3	10
2 7 2	2 7 2	4	20
3 6 3	3 6 3	5	30
4 5 4	4 5 4	6	40
5 4 5	5 4 5	7	50
6 3 6	6 3 6	8	60
7 2 7	7 2 7	9	70
8 1 8	8 1 8	10	80
9 0 9	9 0 9	11	90

Exercise 9

Look at the bus ticket. Can you answer the following questions?

1. Magkano ang halaga ng tiket?
2. Ang numero ng tiket ay: anim, dalawa, dalawa, apat, apat, anim.
3. May petsa ba ang tiket ng bus?
4. Ilang kilometro ang layo ng biyahe?
5. Sinasabi ba sa tiket kung anong oras ang alis?
6. Sinasabi ba sa tiket kung anong oras ang dating?

Language skills

2 Ma verbs

maligo	to have a bath
matulog	to sleep
maupo	to sit down
makinig	to listen
mahiga	to lie down

There are five special verb stems that are neither **um** verbs nor **mag** verbs. These verbs are known as **ma** verbs due to them taking the prefix **ma**. The five **ma** verbs are intransitive and their tenses cannot be formed by using **um** or **mag**. As there are so few **ma** verbs, the best approach is simply to try to memorise them. Like **um** and **mag** verbs, **ma** verbs can be used with pseudo-verbs. Example: **Gusto kong maligo I'd like to have a bath.**

Forming tenses with ma

Ma + ligo = maligo	=	infinitive (used with requests, suggestions and commands)
Ma + li + ligo	=	future
Na + li + ligo	=	present
Na + ligo	=	past

Example sentences:

Verb	+ actor	+ time
Naliligo	ako	araw-araw
<i>I have a bath every day</i>		

Question marker + verb	+ direction
Sino	ang nakikinig sa kaniya?
<i>Who is listening to him / her?</i>	

Verb	+ actor	+ particle	+ preposition
Naupo	ka	ba	sa silyang ito?
<i>Did you sit on this chair?</i>			

Exercise 10

Choose the correct form from the brackets:

1. Ayaw mo bang (maligo, naliligo, naligo) tayo sa dagat? (infinitive)
2. (Makikinig, nakikinig, nakinig) ako sa awitin niya. (present)
3. Maraming (naupo, nauupo, maupo) sa sahig kagabi sa awditoryum. (past)
4. Gusto po ba ninyong (mahiga, nahiga, mahihiga) sa kamang iyan? (infinitive)
5. Si Patricia yata ang (natutulog, natulog, matulog) sa bahay ni John kagabi. (past)

6 Finding out what your journey will be like

Dialogue 3

The Cook family are on the bus from Banaue to Manila. Bill Cook is talking to the conductor.

- Bill** Anong oras tayo darating sa Maynila?
Konduktor Mga alas-siyete y medya po nang gabi.
Bill Saan tayo hihinto upang makapagbanat ng katawan?
Konduktor Sa Pampanga po at meron ding kubeta at paliguan doon.
Bill Magdadagdag ba kayo ng gasolina?
Konduktor Opo.
Bill May telepono ba doon para makatawag ako?
Konduktor Meron po.
Bill Salamat.
Konduktor Wala pong anuman.

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
magdadagdag	will add
darating	will arrive
mga alas siyete y medya	around 7.30
nang gabi	at night
makatawag	be able to call
makapagbanat	to be able to stretch
kubeta	toilet
paliguan	shower/bathroom
gasolina	petrol
telepono	telephone
para	so that/ in order to

Translation

- Bill** What time are we arriving in Manila?
Conductor Around 7.30 in the evening.
Bill Is there any place where we can stop to stretch ourselves (lit, our body)?
Conductor In Pampanga sir. There are also bathroom facilities there.
Bill Are you going to top up your petrol?
Conductor Yes sir.
Bill Are there any telephones there for me to make a call?
Conductor There are (telephones there) sir.
Bill Thank you.
Conductor You're welcome sir.

Exercise 11

Using the dialogue as your guide, can you do the following?

1. Ask the conductor what time the bus is stopping at Pampanga. (use Anong oras)
2. Ask him where else you will be stopping. (use pa)
3. Ask the conductor if there are bathroom facilities at the stop. (use Mayroon)
4. Tell the conductor you want to use the bathroom. (use Gusto kong)

Exercise 12 Understanding and speaking

Imagine that you are on a bus bound for Batangas, south of Manila. Why not have a go at speaking with the conductor. Listen carefully to the conductor's responses. Using the hints and the vocabulary box to help you, write out your part of the dialogue and then practice speaking it:

- Ikaw** (greet the conductor, saying good morning)
Konduktor Magandang umaga po. Didiretso po ba kayo sa Batangas?
Ikaw (say yes, but that you are unsure about what time the bus returns to Manila)
Konduktor Babalik po ba kayo pa-Maynila bukas?
Ikaw (we will return tomorrow afternoon)
Konduktor Ganoon po ba? Mayroon pong bus na paalis sa istasyon sa alas 3.00
Ikaw (three o'clock, that's fine)
Konduktor Ibig po ba ninyong bumili ng tiket na papunta lamang doon o balikan?
Ikaw (just singles please. Three adults)
Konduktor Iyan po ay tres siyentos treynta pesos.
Ikaw (Say here you are / here's my payment)
Konduktor Maraming salamat po. Marunong kayong managalog!
Ikaw (say thank you very much, too)

Talasalitaan

didiretso
 babalik
 bukas
 ganoon po ba?
 paalis
 istasyon
 balikan
 tres siyentos treynta
 marunong
 managalog

Vocabulary

straight on
 will return
 tomorrow
 is that so ma'am/sir?
 leaving
 station
 return
 330
 know/knows how to
 to speak Tagalog

Language skills

- 3** **Maka + um verb stem** *To be able to, to happen to, to come to, to manage to*
Makapag + mag verb stem *To be able to, to happen to, to come to, to manage to*

In Dialogue 3, Bill Cook used the words **makapagbanat** and **makatawag**. These verb forms seem new and in jargon are known as circumstantial verbs. These verb forms above all give us a glimpse into Filipino culture. According to Filipino beliefs, some actions are brought about purely by circumstance, by accident or by occurrences beyond the actor/s' control. The active verbs **um** and **mag** verbs have special prefixes to express the circumstantial or involuntary nature of these actions. With **um** verbs, use the prefix **maka**. For example: **makabili** *to be able to / to happen to / to come to / to manage to buy*. With **mag** verbs, the prefix is **makapag**. For example: **makapag + laro = makapaglaro** *to be able to / to happen to / to come to / to manage to play*. Look at the guide on how to use the **maka** and **makapag** prefixes in the active **um** and **mag** verbs:

um verbs

Maka = (prefix) + alis (verb stem)

Maka + alis = makaalis = infinitive

to be able to leave
to happen to leave
to manage to leave
to come to leave

Maka + ka + alis = makakaalis = *will be able etc. to leave* = future

Naka + ka + alis = nakakaalis = *is able etc. to leave* = present

Naka + alis = nakaalis = *was able etc. to leave* = past

Some examples:

makakain	=	<i>to be able etc. to eat</i>
makabili	=	<i>to be able etc. to buy</i>
makabasa	=	<i>to be able etc. to read</i>
makasulat	=	<i>to be able etc. to write</i>
makakanta	=	<i>to be able etc. to sing</i>
makaalis	=	<i>to be able etc. to leave</i>

mag verbs

makapag + (prefix) luto (verb stem)

makapag + luto = makapagluto = infinitive (used in requests, commands and suggestions)
to be able to cook
to happen to cook
to manage to cook
to come to cook

maka + ka + pag + luto = makakapagluto = *will be able etc. to cook* = future

naka + ka + pag + luto = nakakapagluto = *is able etc. to cook* = present

nakapag + luto = nakapagluto = *was able etc. to cook* = past

Here are some examples:

Makapagsimba	=	<i>to be able to go to church</i>
Makapagsalita	=	<i>to be able to talk/speak</i>
Makapagbili	=	<i>to be able to sell</i>
Makapagluto	=	<i>to be able to cook</i>
Makapaglakad	=	<i>to be able to walk</i>
Makapaglinis	=	<i>to be able to clean</i>
Makapaglaba	=	<i>to be able to wash clothes</i>

Some variations of **maka** and **makapag** sentences:

Verb	+ actor	+ object	+ preposition
Nakabili	kami	ng magandang damit	sa palengke
<i>We managed to buy a beautiful dress from the market.</i>			

Verb + actor + particle

Nakapagluto ka na ba?

Were you able to cook?/ Did you manage to cook?

Verb + particle actor + object Preposition

Nakagawa na raw ang mga bata ng saranggola kahapon.

Apparently, the children [already] managed to make a kite yesterday.

Exercise 13

Look at the following sentences. Can you supply the missing verb form?

1. Araw-araw, _____ kami sa palaruan. (laro)
2. Hindi _____ ang mga turista kanina dahil sa bagyo. (alis)
3. _____ ba tayo ng mga pasalubong bukas? (bili)
4. Sa Sabado, maraming _____ ng masasarap na pagkain. (luto)
5. Sino sa mga babae ang _____ sa bus noong linggo? (tulog)

One-minute phrases

Magmeryenda muna tayo (*mahg-mer-yen-dah moo-nah tah-yaw*) Literally, *to have a snack first let us*. (Please note that 'first' should not be given emphasis here.) An expression of casual but polite invitation meaning *Why don't we have a snack?* or *Could I invite you to have a snack?*

Mag-beer muna tayo/ mag-kape muna tayo (*mahg-bber-moo-nah tay-yaw/mahg-kah-pe moo-nah fay-yaw*) *Could I invite you to a beer?, Shall we have coffee?* etc. (These expressions have the same connotation as above except that **meryenda** is replaced with beer or coffee) 'Mag + _____ muna tayo' has a potential to expand and can be used as a structure for other invitations.

Sa ibang araw na (*sah ee-bahng ah-rao nah*) Literally, *in other days already*. Meaning *Some other day/Next time*. **Sa ibang araw na** is a nice way of turning down an invitation.

Medyo tagilid (*mehd-yaw tah-gee-leed*) Literally, *somewhat tilted*. Similar in meaning to the English expression *The dice are loaded*. This phrase pertains to a situation the result of which is not positive. For example: **Sa palagay mo mananalo si Ginoong Santos sa eleksiyon?** *Do you reckon Mr Santos will win the election?* **Hindi yata. Medyo tagilid ang resulta.** *I don't think so. The results are not in his favour / the dice are loaded against him.*

May panahon ka ba? (*migh pah-nah-hawn kah bah?*) Literally, *Do you have time?* Meaning: *Are you available?, Do you have a moment?* etc. Students of the Tagalog language sometimes think that Filipinos are asking about the weather when they hear this question! Be careful not to mix up the two meanings of the word **panahon**.

Cultural tip

It will not take you very long to recognise that the Philippines is a country where 'snacks' are an essential part of life. In the west, we speak of 'three square meals a day'. Filipinos tend to eat more frequently, but in smaller amounts. If you take a long trip by bus or jeep, it is not uncommon to stop off at a small town or even a sarisari store for a snack. Bus stations and Jeepney stands abound with hawkers selling everything from grilled fish to chewing gum. If you are travelling anywhere with Filipino friends, make sure you take a supply of snacks along with you. If you take nothing on a long journey, they may not complain but you can be sure that they will be hungry!

14 SA TABING-DAGAT

At the beach

In this unit you will learn how to

- hire a boat and prepare for a picnic on the beach
- use **mang** verbs and particles

Hiring a boat

Dialogue 1

Bill, Louise and Roy Cook are at a beach resort. The surrounding islands look beautiful and so they decide to hire a boat.

Bill Maganda na ang panahon ngayon, magandang mamangka.

Louise Oo nga. Mamasyal kaya muna tayo tapos magtanong kung saan maaaring umarkila ng *bangka*. Roy, gusto mo bang sumama?

Roy Gusto ko. Tena. (Namasyal sa tabing-dagat ang mag-anak)

Bill Marami pang *mangingisda* sa laot. Nakikita ba ninyo?

Louise Oo. O, heto na pala ang pa-arkilahan ng *bangka*.

Bill Magandang araw. Gusto naming umarkila ng *bangka* para sa tatlo. Magkano ba?

May-ari Dalawandaang piso *po* sa bawa't oras.

Bill Sino naman ang tsuper namin?

May-ari Heto po siya. Les ang pangalan niya. (*Ngumiti* si Les)

Bill Magbabayad na ba kami ngayon?

May-ari Pagbalik na *po* ninyo.

Bill Maraming salamat.

May-ari Wala pong anuman.

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
para sa tatlo	for three (persons)
magkano	how much
mamangka	to go boating
oo nga	I agree
mamasyal	to take a stroll
kaya muna tayó	why don't we first
tapos	then
magtanong	enquire
kung saan	where
magbabayad	will pay
umarkila ng bangka	to hire a boat
sumama	to come/go with
marami(ng)	many
bawa't oras	each hour
pa(ng)	still
tsuper	(boat) driver
mangingisda	fishing
laot	sea
ang pangalan	the name
ngumiti	smiled
paarkilahan	a place to hire
pagbalik	when you return

Translation

- Bill** The weather is lovely now, it would be nice to go boating.
- Louise** I agree. Why don't we take a stroll first then we can enquire where there are boats for hire. Roy, would you like to join us?
- Roy** I'd love to. Let's go. (The family go for a stroll on the beach)
- Bill** There are still many fishermen at sea. Can you see (them)?
- Louise** Yes. Look, here's the place to hire boats from.
- Bill** Good day. We would like to hire a boat for three people. How much will it cost us?
- Owner** Two hundred pesos an hour sir.

- Bill** (And) who is the captain of our boat?
- Owner** Here he is sir. His name is Les (Les smiles)
- Bill** Do we have to pay now?
- Owner** When you get back sir.
- Bill** Thank you.
- Owner** You're welcome.

Exercise 1

Answer the following questions with complete Tagalog sentences:

- Bakit (why) sabi ni Bill 'magandang mamangka'?
- Sila ba ay mamangka muna (first) o mamamasyal muna?
- Ano ang nakita nila sa dagat habang (while) namamasyal sila?
- Sa palagay mo (in your opinion), mura ba ang pag-arkila ng bangka?
- Nagbayad na ba kaagad (immediately) sila sa may-ari ng bangka?

Language skills

1 Mang verbs

We have already met the **um** and **mag** active verb forms. The third form of active verbs are known as the **mang** verbs. In Dialogue 1, you will have noticed a few **mang** verbs: **mamangka**, to go boating, **mamasyal**, to go for a walk and **mangisda**, to go fishing. **Mang** verbs form transitive (e.g. **mamili** – to go shopping) and intransitive (e.g. **mangawit**, be tired) sentences. Broadly speaking, **mang** verbs could be described as **um** verbs where the action has been pluralised. This may sound confusing at first to the native English speaker but it is in fact quite simple.

For example, if we were to say **bumili ako ng sapatos**, then this **um** verb sentence would be translated as *I bought some shoes*. The act of 'buying' shoes is a one-off event. However, if we pluralise the action described by the **um** verb, then we end up with a very different sentence – **namili ako ng sapatos**, *I shopped for shoes*. The **mang** verb form suggests that the action of 'buying' was broader than a one-off event. As such, **namili ako ng sapatos**

would be translated as *I shopped for shoes*. As the verb 'to shop' implies the possibility of a process or more than one action (i.e. moving from shop to shop in order to buy more than one pair of shoes), Tagalog would therefore consider it as a plural action. Don't worry if this seems to be confusing. Listen carefully to how native Tagalog speakers use **mang** form verbs. You will soon become accustomed to them.

Apart from the pluralisation of action, a further characteristic of **mang** form verbs is that they can be used to express an action which is either 'deliberately harmful' (e.g. **mangain**, *to devour*) or an 'activity directed towards more than one object' (e.g., **manguha**, *to gather*). Another notable use of **mang** is to indicate an intensive or repeated activity directed toward a single object (e.g. a young man repeatedly dating a young woman = **mangibig**, *to date*).

Formation of mang verbs

1. Words that begin with p and b e.g. mang + pasyal (*take a stroll*), mang + buhay (*life*).

Formula: Change **mang** to **mam**. Drop first letter of word (pasyal becomes asyal) (buhay becomes uhay).

mam + asiyal = *mamasyal to go for a stroll* = infinitive

mam + uhay = *mamuhay to live/conduct one's life* = infinitive

2. Words that begin with d = mang + dukot (*put one's hand into a pocket*).

Formula: Change **mang** to **man**. Add the word to man.

man + dukot = *mandukot to go pickpocketing* = infinitive

man + daya = *mandaya to go cheating others* = infinitive

3. Words that begin with t and s = mang + takot (*afraid*), mang + saksak (*stab*).

Formula: Change **mang** to **man**. Drop first letter of word (takot becomes akot), (sakit becomes akit).

man + akot = *manakot to frighten* [several people]

man + akit = *manakit to cause pain*

4. Words that begin with k = mang + kuha (*get*).
Formula: Retain **mang**. Drop first letter of word (kuha becomes uha).

mang + uha = *manguha 'to get'* = infinitive

5. Words that begin with a, i (and other vowels) = mang + anak (*child*).

Formula: Merely add **mang** to word that begins with a vowel.

mang + anak = *manganak to give birth to* = infinitive

Mang + isda = *mangisda to go fishing* = infinitive

Mang + agaw = *mang-agaw to go grabbing* = infinitive

Mang + alok = *mang-alok to offer* = infinitive

- Listen to the following verb forms on the tape. Can you see the difference between the underlying verb form and the **mang** verb form?

Underlying verb

bumili *to buy*

kumain *to eat*

dumukot *to put hand*

inside pocket

sumugat *to wound*

tumaga *to cut*

magwalis *to sweep*

kumuha *to get*

pumitas *to pick*

tumahi *to sew*

tumakot *to frighten*

dumikit *to get stuck to*

sumuyo *to curry favour with*

umibig *to love*

pumasyal *to pay a visit/drop by*

Mang verb

mamili *to go shopping*

mangain *to devour*

mandukot *to go pickpocketing*

manugat *to wound* (deliberately)

managa *to slash* (with intent
to hurt or destroy)

mangwalis *to hit with a broom*

manguha *to gather*

mamitas *to go a-picking*

manahi *to sew*

(a number of things)

manakot *to frighten*

(a number of people)

manikit *to get thoroughly*

stuck to

manuyo *to curry favour with*

mangibig *to pay court to /*

to date

mamasyal *to take a walk/stroll*

Forming mang verb tenses

Mang (prefix) + isda (fish) = mang + isda 'to go fishing' infinitive (used for requests, commands and suggestions).

ma + ngi + ngisda = future
 na + ngi + ngisda = present
 na + ngis + da = past

Mang (prefix) + **buhay** (life) =

mam + uhay = *to live* infinitive
 ma + mu + mu + hay = future
 na + mu + mu + hay = present
 na + mu + hay = past

Variations of a mang sentence

Verb + actor
 Mamimili si Anne

Anne is going shopping

Verb + particle + actor
 Namamalengke kaya + si Elizabeth?

I wonder if Elizabeth is shopping at the market?

Qualifier + verb + actor + time
 Hindi mangingisda ang mga lalaki sa Biyernes.

The men are not going fishing on Friday

Question word + actor + object + place
 Sino ang mamimilitas ng dalanghita sa bukid?

Who will go picking oranges on the farm?

Qualifier + verb + place + time
 Maraming namamasyal sa Luneta tuwing Linggo.

Many (people) go strolling in Luneta every Sunday

Actor + verb + object + beneficiary
 Si Edith ang namili ng mga aklat para kay Manny.

It was Edith who shopped for books for Manny

Exercise 2

Can you translate the following?

1. I will go picking fruit tomorrow.
2. They will go fishing on Wednesday.
3. There are many people picking pockets in the market.
4. I will take a stroll tonight.
5. Let us go shopping!

Exercise 3

Can you supply the answer? (Use the explanations in this chapter to help you.)

1. Bukas, _____ sila ng rosas at ibang bulaklak sa hardin. (pitas/pick) (future)
2. Sino ang gustong _____? (isda / fish) (infinitive)
3. Walang _____ ngayon sa palengke kasi may baha. (bili/ shop) (present)
4. Meron bang _____ sa bayan? (dukot / pickpockets) (present)
5. _____ siya ng blusa noong bakasyon (tahi / sew) (past)

Mang verbs and recent action

Remember that when using the recent action with **mang** verbs, the same rules apply as outlined above except that **mang** changes to **pang**. For example:

ka +	Future	= Recent action
ka +	mamalengke (<i>will go marketing</i>)	= kapapamalengke
ka +	mamamaril (<i>will go shooting</i>)	= kapapamaril
ka +	mamimili (<i>will go shopping</i>)	= kapapamili

(See also Unit 12, page 169.)

Language skills

2 Particles

You may remember coming across small words such as **po** (a sign of respect), **pa** (*still*), **naman** (*on the other hand*) and **na** (*already*) in previous units. In spite of their small size, these words are important elements in Tagalog sentence construction. Their function is to highlight or add impact to a statement, question or exclamation. In English these small words are known as adverbs, while in Tagalog they are known as particles. They occur in certain fixed places in Tagalog sentences.

As a rule, a particle is located 'sandwiched' in between the comment on the left and the subject on the right. For example, **Superbisor si Edith**. *Edith is a supervisor*. (without particle) becomes: **Superbisor** (comment) **pala si Edith** (subject). *So, Edith is a supervisor*, or **Superbisor na si Edith**, *Edith is already a supervisor*. However, it is possible to use more than one particle. How then do we decide the correct order of usage? Where two particles are used together, then the basic rule of thumb is this: the shorter particles (one syllable) go before the longer (two syllable) particles. For example: **Superbisor na pala si Edith**. *So, Edith is already a supervisor!* In some instances, you may find anything up to four or five particles in a single sentence! Due to the many possible combinations, it would be unfair to try to suggest a single rule of usage. In such cases, the trick is to ask one of your Filipino friends how to 'string' the particles together, then memorise a few of the combinations that will be of use to you.

Let's take a closer look at how two of these particles **na** (*already*) and **pa** (*still*) are used:

Explanation of na and pa

Na denotes immediate performance of an action. It also means *already* or *now*.

Examples:

Bumili ka na *(You) buy now*
 Arkitekto na si Manny *Manny is already an architect*

Bukas na ang binyag	<i>The baptism will now be tomorrow</i>
Ayoko na	<i>I don't like it anymore</i>
Malaki na ang anak ni Tessie	<i>Tessie's child is big now</i>

Pa is used to mean continuation or resumption of an action.

Examples:

Bumili ka pa	<i>(You) buy some more</i>
Hilaw pa ang mga saging	<i>The bananas are still unripe</i>
Tulog pa ba si Father Fred?	<i>Is Father Fred still asleep?</i>
Bata pa ang bagong meyor	<i>The new mayor is still young</i>
Nagluluto pa ako	<i>I'm still cooking</i>

Example sentences:

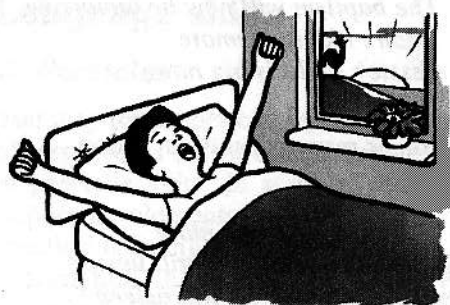
- 1 Malalaki na ang mga anak ni Ginoong de Leon
Mr de Leon's children are grown up now
- 2 Wala pa sila
They (are not here) haven't arrived yet
- 3 Bukas na ako mamamalantsa
I'm going to do my ironing tomorrow
- 4 Bukas na ang palabas
The show will be (held) tomorrow
- 5 Kumain pa po kayo
Please eat some more sir

Exercise 4

Look at the pictures. Each one is accompanied by two statements (one **na** and one **pa** statement). Can you decide which statement is appropriate to each picture?

Tulog pa si Erwin
Gising na si Erwin





Gising na si Ardin
Tulog pa si Ardin

Nagluluto pa si Fe
Kumakain na si Fe



Exercise 5

Place the following jumbled-up sentences into their correct word order. Be careful to place the particle in the correct position.

1. pasko / malapit / ang / na
2. pa / nakakakain / hindi / ako
3. ba / sa / na / Sabado / ng / binyag / ang / anak mo
4. sa / sagot / na / tanong / alam / ba / ang / mo
5. sila / pa / kumakain / ba

Going swimming

Dialogue 2

The Cook family are back on the beach after their boating trip.

- Bill Mabuti at naka-arkila tayo ng *bangka*.
 Louise Oo nga. Nakapamasiyal tuloy tayo.
 Roy Nakakita ako ng malalaking *isda* sa *tubig*.
 Louise Nakita ba ninyo ang mga *mangingisda*?
 Bill Oo. Nagtataka ako kung bakit nakapangisda sila kahit may mga *namamangka*.
 Roy Nasiyahan ako at *nakapamangka* tayo.
 Louise Ako rin.
 Bill Gusto kong lumangoy na naman.
 Louise Masarap ang *tubig*. Sige, lumangoy tayo.
 Roy Tena.

Talasalitaan

tahimik
 naka-arkila
 bangka
 nakapamangka
 nakapamasyal
 tuloy
 nakakita
 malalaking isda
 nakita ba ninyo
 mangingisda
 nakapangisda
 masyado(ng)
 namamangka
 nasiyahan
 kung bakit
 lumangoy
 nagtataka
 tena

Vocabulary

calm
was able to hire
boat (canoe)
was able to go boating
managed to take a stroll
as a result
happened to see
big fish
did you see
fisherman
are able/manage to catch fish
so
boating
was pleased
why
to swim
wondering
let's go

Translation

- Bill** It was good that we were able to hire a boat.
Louise I agree. And the sea was so calm.
Roy I could see big fish in the water.
Bill Did you see the fishermen?
Louise Yes. I was wondering how they are able to fish while there are boats (around them).
Roy I am pleased that we were able to go boating.
Louise I am too.
Bill I'd like to go swimming again.
Louise The water is nice. Come on let's swim.
Roy Let's go.

 Exercise 6

Answer the following questions in complete Tagalog sentences:

1. Sino ang nasiyahan noong makaarkila sila ng bangka?
2. Ano ang nakita nila noong sila'y namamangka?
3. Ano ang nagagawa ng mga mangingisda kahit maraming bangka sa paligid?
4. Nasiyahan ba ang pamilya Cook sa kanilang pamamangka?
5. Pagkatapos, ano ang ginawa nilang tatlo?

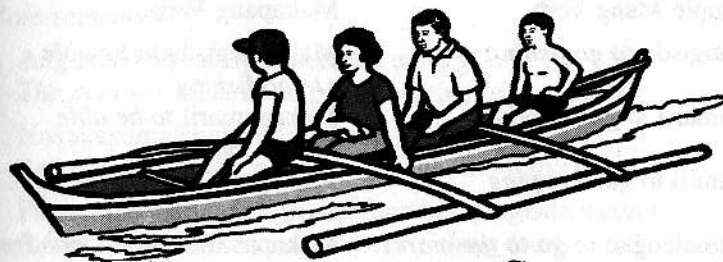
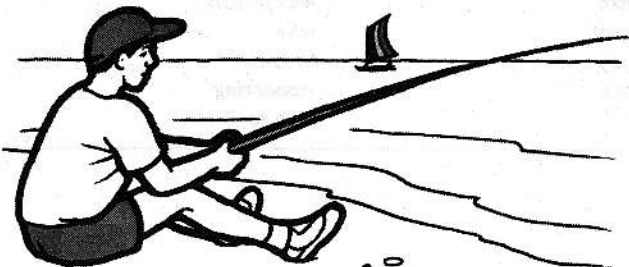
 Exercise 7

The following pictures are based on Dialogue 2. Can you find the correct verb to describe each action? Can you make up a simple sentence to describe each picture?

For example:

Verb: mangisda

Sentence: Nangingisda si Roy Cook


 Language skills

3 Makapang To be able to, to happen to, to manage to, to come to

In Dialogue 2, you will no doubt have noticed some new verb types: **nakapamasyal** (*managed to go strolling*), **nakapangisda** (*was able to go fishing*) and **nakapamangka** (*was able to go boating*). These verb types represent the circumstantial form of the **mang** verbs. The actions represented by these verb forms are based on 1) circumstances; 2) ability; 3) involuntary actions. For example 1) **makapang + palengke = makapamalengke**, *to be able to go shopping in the market. Makapamalengke na si Jayne kasi dumating na si John. Jayne will be able to go to the market because John has arrived.* 2) **makapang + tahi = makapanahi** *to be able to sew. Nakapanahi na si Tina kasi ibinili siya ng makina ni Philip, Tina is able to do some sewing now because Philip bought her a sewing machine.* 3) **Makapang + pasyal = makapamasyal**, *to be able to go for a walk/stroll. Nakapamasyal si Bernard at si Gary pagkatapos ng hapunan. Bernard and Gary managed to go for a stroll after supper.* Look at some comparisons:

Simple Mang Verb	Makapang Verb
mangisda <i>to go fishing</i>	Makapangisda <i>to be able to go fishing</i>
mamaril <i>to go shooting</i>	Makapamaril <i>to be able to go shooting</i>
mamili <i>to go shopping</i>	Makapamili <i>to be able to go shopping</i>
mamalengke <i>to go to the market</i>	Makapamalengke <i>to manage to go to the market</i>

How to form the makapang tense:

Prefix: Makapang, infinitive: mamili, *to go shopping*

Formula: Change makapang to makapa. Change mamili to **mili** = **makapamili**.

= Makapamili	=infinitive, <i>to be able to go shopping</i>
makapamili	= future
nakapamili	= present
nakapamili	= past

Prefix: makapang, infinitive: mangisda *to go fishing*

Formula: Retain **makapang**. Merely add makapang to **isda** = **makapangisda**

makapangisda	= infinitive, <i>to be able to go fishing</i>
makapangisda	= future, <i>will be able to go fishing</i>
nakapangisda	= present, <i>able to go fishing</i>
nakapangisda	= past <i>was able to go fishing</i>

Sentence variation in makapang

Verb	+	actor	+ time
Nakapamalengke		si Rosie	araw-araw

Rosie can go to the market every day.

Qualifier/verb	+	actor	+ place
Hindi nakapamasyal		ang mga bata	sa tabing-dagat

The children are not able to take a walk on the seashore

Verb	+ particle/s	+ actor	+ time
Nakapamaril	na ba	ang mga lalaki	kung Linggo?

Are the men [already] able to go shooting on Sundays?

More sentences

1. Ang lalaki ay nakapandukot sa palengke
The man was able to go pickpocketing in the market
2. Nakapamalengke ka ba kung Huwebes?
Are you able to go to the market on Thursdays?
3. Parang makapangisda ang mga mangingisda ngayon
It looks like the fishermen can go fishing today

Exercise 8

Fill in the blanks with the correct circumstantial verb form **maka** for **um**, **makapag** for **mag** and **makapang** for **mang**.

1. I wonder if they were able to buy some coke? (bili / past)
_____ kaya sila ng coke?
2. The children managed to play at night. (laro / past)
_____ ang mga bata sa gabi.
3. I happened to borrow a book from the library. (hiram / past)
_____ ako ng libro sa silid aklatan.
4. He can leave early. (alis / present)
_____ siya nang maaga.
5. I want to be able to return tomorrow. (balik / infinitive)
Ibig kong _____ bukas.

Exercise 9

The following sentences are wrong because of the verb tense. Can you correct the mistake?

1. Nakapangisda sila bukas.
2. Makabili ako ng pasalubong mamaya.
3. Hindi kami nakakakain sa party kahapon.
4. Sino ang makakabisita sa iyo noong isang linggo?
5. Makakain na po ba kayo?

Exercise 10 Speaking, listening and understanding

Imagine that you have just returned from a boat trip with your Filipino friends. You go to pay the owner who engages you in friendly conversation. Translate your part of the dialogue into

Tagalog before practising the conversation with the help of the tape. Use the vocabulary box to help you.

- Owner** Maligayang pagdating! Kumusta ang biyahe mo?
You Thank you. It was a very relaxing afternoon. We were able to go fishing too.
Owner Nangisda? Aba, mabuti naman! May nahuli ba naman kayo?
You Yes. We were able to catch a big tuna fish and two lapulapu [red snapper].
Owner O, eh di may maluluto kang panghapunan mo.
You Yes! I hope we will be able to return here next year and catch more fish.
Owner Bukas ang bahay namin sa iyo!
You Here's my payment for the boat hire.
Owner Maraming salamat sa iyo.
You Thank you very much too.

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
pagdating	arrival
nangisda	went fishing
nahuli	caught
makahuli	be able to catch
maluluto	able to be cooked
panghapunan	for supper
makabalik	be able to return
bukas	open
pag-arkila	hire

One-minute phrases

Sa madaling salita (*sah mahdah-leeng sah-lee-tah*) Literally, *in quick words*. Similar in meaning to the English expression 'to cut a long story short'. For example: **Marami pa akong ikukuwento sa iyo, pero sa madaling salita, wala na akong panahon.** *I have a lot more to tell you but to cut a long story short, I have ran out of time.*

Pagka-alis na pagka-alis (*pahg-kah-ah-lees nah pahg-kah-ah-lees*) Literally, *upon leaving, upon leaving*. Meaning immediately

after leaving. For example **Pagka-alis na pagka-alis ng eroplano, umuwi na kami.** *Once the aeroplane left, we went home immediately.*

Mangyari pa (*mahng-yah-ree pah*) Literally, *happening still*. This Tagalog phrase is equivalent in meaning to the English expression 'of course'. For example: **Umalis si Boy nang walang paalam sa magulang niya, mangyari pa, nagalit ang mga ito sa kaniya.** *Boy left without saying goodbye to his parents, of course they were upset with him.*

Masarap maligo (*mah-sah-rahp mah-lee-gaw*) Literally, *delicious to take a bath/to swim* **Masarap** (*delicious*) is a word we would not ordinarily associate in English with anything other than food. The word has a much broader usage in Tagalog, hence it can be applied to an assortment of pleasurable activities. In this case, the meaning is 'It's nice to take a bath'. For example: **Laging masarap maligo sa dagat.** *It's always nice to take a bath (swim) in the sea.*

Lipas na sa moda (*lee-pahs nah sa maw-dah*) Literally, *past the fashion*. Similar to the English phrase 'out of fashion'. For example: **Hindi ba lipas na sa moda ang malaking kuwelyo at bell bottoms?.** *Aren't wide collars and bell bottoms out of fashion now?*

① Cultural tip

A beach picnic is a popular form of relaxation for Filipinos. Why not suggest a trip to the beach with your Filipino friends? Filipino culture places very high value on 'harmony' in relationships. What better way to deepen your friendships and promote harmony than opting for a relaxing outing in a restful environment? There are many bamboo beach houses available for short-term rental and boats for short excursions. Even if you feel confident in your Tagalog, it's a good idea to get your Filipino friends to agree on a price with the boat or beach house owner. Chances are that you would end up paying significantly more. Even if you are paying, let your friends do the talking. They will feel much happier and you will probably save money!

15 SA SIMBAHAN

At church

In this unit you will learn

- more about the passive
- 'in' verbs
- more on particles

☞ Becoming a godparent

☞ Dialogue 1

Beth and Edwin have asked Roy to be a godfather at the baptism of their baby.

- Beth** Maaari bang gawin ka naming ninong sa binyag ng aming anak?
- Roy** Talaga? Aba, oo – isang malaking karangalan ito.
- Edwin** Dalawa kayong ninong at dalawa rin ang ninang.
- Roy** Kailan ba gaganapin ang binyag?
- Beth** Sa Sabado, ika-4 ng Disyembre sa simbahan sa baryo.
- Roy** Anu-ano ang dapat kong gawin?
- Edwin** Madali lang. Tatayo lang kayo sa tabi ng magulang habang nagseseremonya ang pari.
- Roy** Ganoon lang pala. Anong oras sa Sabado?
- Beth** Alas 9:30 nang umaga. Pagkatapos, may salu-salo sa aming bahay.
- Edwin** O, sige hihintayin ka namin kasama ni Jobert. Tumawag ka lang kung meron kang itatanong.

Talasalitaan

maaari	can
gawin	be made
ninong	godfather
ang pari	the priest
binyag	baptism
aming anak	our child
pala	so
ninang	godmother
kailan	when
gaganapin	will be held
pagkatapos	afterwards
anu-ano	what are
dapat	must/should
ko(ng)	I
hihintayin	will wait for
madali lang	just easy
tatayo	will stand
sa tabi	next/beside
kasama	together with/companion
habang	while
nagseseremonya	officiating
ganoon	like that
sa baryo	at the barrio
salu-salo	party
tumawag	call (on the telephone)
kung	if
itatanong	something to ask

Vocabulary

Translation

- Beth** Would you like to be a godfather to our child? (*at the baptism of our child*)
- Roy** Really? Of course - this is a big honour.
- Edwin** There will be two godfathers and also two godmothers.
- Roy** When will the baptism be held?
- Beth** On Saturday December 4 at the barrio chapel.
- Roy** What will I have to do?
- Edwin** (It's) Easy. You will just stand next to the parents while the priest performs the ceremony.

- Roy** So that's it. What time on Saturday?
Beth 9.30 in the morning. Afterwards, a reception follows at our house.
Edwin All right. We'll be waiting for you with Jobert. Please call if you have anything to ask.

Exercise 1 Mga Tanong: (Questions)

Using Dialogue 1 to help you, answer the following questions in Tagalog:

1. Ano ang paanyaya (*invitation*) ni Beth at Edwin kay Roy?
2. Ilan ang magiging (*become*) ninong at ninang?
3. Saan gaganapin (*will be held*) ang binyag at salu-salo?
4. Tinanggap (*accept*) ba ni Roy ang paanyaya?
5. Sino ang kasama (*companion*) ni Roy papunta (*going to*) sa simbahan?

Language skills

1. 'IN' Passive verbs

In Units 12, 13 and 14 we were introduced to the Tagalog active verb types (**um**, **mag**, **mang**). Dialogue 1 introduces us to a number of passive verbs (**gawin**, *to make*, **gaganapin**, *will be held*, **hihintayin**, *will wait for*). Whereas the active verbs we have looked at lay emphasis on the actor ('doer' of the action), passive verb sentences lay emphasis on the object. With just a glance at the comparison table, you will quickly see that both active and passive verbs use different actors (see table). These different actors are necessary in as far as they inform the listener as to where the emphasis of the sentence lies: on the object or on the actor. In Tagalog, active verbs take the **ang** form actors while passive verbs use **ng** form actors. The basic rule of thumb is this: in passive verb sentences, the actor you use is from the **ng** group (**ni**, **nina**, **ko**, **mo**, **niya**, **namin**, **natin**, **nila**, etc.), while in active verb sentences the actor is from the **ang** group (**si**, **sina**, **ako**, **ka**, **ikaw**, **siya**, **kami**, **tayo**, **kayo**, **sila**, etc.) Stick to this rule and you won't get lost.

The first of the Tagalog passive verbs is the **in** verb. This verb type is recognised by the suffix '**in**' added after the verb root. For example: **kain** + **in** = **kainin** (*be eaten*). Like the active verbs, you can expand passive sentences by adding an adverb, a particle, a preposition, or a time element and so on. It is also important to note that some **in** verbs are directional verbs. For example: **Sasabihin ko sa kanila ang kailangan mo**, *I'll tell them what you need*. This sentence has a verb, an actor, a receiver of the action (the **sa**) and a goal (the object).

Passive and active verb actors: a comparison table

Um/mag/mang	Object	In/i/an	Object
A	Any of B	B	Any of A
Si		Ni	
Sina		Nina	
ako		ko	
ka/ikaw		mo	
siya		niya	
kami		namin	
tayo		natin	
ito		nito	
iyang		niyang	
iyon		noon	
ang		ng	

Don't forget: ko + ka = kita

Look at the following sentences to compare active and passive verbs:

From active verb		to passive verb	
um verb	to	in verb	
Verb	bumili	Verb	binili
Actor	ako	Actor	ko
Object	ng magasin	Object	ang magasin
Time element	kahapon	Time element	kahapon

*I bought a magazine
yesterday*

*I bought the magazine
yesterday*

mag verb	to	in verb	
Verb	magluto	Verb	lutuin
Actor	tayo	Actor	natin
Object	ng pansit	Object	ang pansit
Time element	para sa party ni Caroline	Time element	para sa party ni Caroline

Let us cook **some** noodles for Caroline's party

Let us cook **the** noodles for Caroline's party

mang verb	to	in verb	
Verb	naninigarilyo	Verb	sinisigarilyo
Actor	si Ambo	Actor	ni Ambo
Object	ng Marlboro	Object	ang Marlboro
Time element	lagi	Time element	lagi

Ambo always smokes Marlboro

Ambo always smokes **the** Marlboro

In these sentences you can see that the **in** verbs are followed by a definite article.

Exercise 2

Here are some **um**, **mag** and **mang** sentences. Rewrite them as **in** sentences, using the guide to help you:

Example: Bumasa tayo ng nobela. (Um)
Basahin natin ang nobela.

1. Bukas ba kayo bibili ng bagong stereo?
2. Gumagawa siya ng bulaklak na papel.
3. Tumatahi ka ba nito?
4. Tumutugtog siya ng kundiman sa piyano.
5. Naglilinis pa ako ng kuwarto ko.
6. Pumili ka ng sariwang gulay.

Attending a baptism

Dialogue 2

After the baptism, Roy wants to take a few pictures of the group outside the church.

Roy	Kukunan ko ng retrato ang aking inaanak sa binyag.
Beth	Puwede ba kunan mo rin ng retrato ang mga ninong at ninang?
Roy	Aba oo. Kasama rin ang mga magulang ng sanggol.
Edwin	Eto pala si Father Rex. Isama natin siya.
Beth	Father Rex, sumama po kayo sa amin.
Father Rex	O sige. Salamat. Maganda ang binyagang ito.
Edwin	Salamat po, Father.
Father Rex	Walang anuman.

Talasalitaan

Vocabulary

kukunan	will take
retrato	picture
aking inaanak	my godchild
sumama	to join
kunan	to take
aba oo	of course
sanggol	baby
eto pala	so here is
isama	to include
o sige	all right
binyagang ito	this baptism

Translation

Roy	I want to take some pictures of my godchild.
Beth	Can you take a picture of the godparents too?
Roy	Of course. Including the parents of the baby.
Edwin	Here comes Father Rex. Let's ask him to join us.
Beth	Father Rex, Please join us.
Father Rex	All right. Thank you. This is a good baptism.
Edwin	Thank you Father.
Father Rex	You're welcome.

Exercise 3

Using complete Tagalog sentences, what do you say when:

1. You want to take a picture of your friends?
2. You are asking your friend to take your picture?
3. You want to make a nice comment about someone's dress?
4. You want to ask someone to join you?

Language skills

2. Changing the tense of in verbs:

The **in** infinitive is used for requests, commands and suggestions.

kuha	=	stem	<i>get/take</i>	
kuha + in	=	kuhain (becomes kunin)	=	infinitive
ku + kunin	=	kukunin	=	future
k + in + ukuha	=	kinukuha	=	present
k+ in + uha	=	kinuha	=	past
alis = stem		<i>remove</i>		
alis + in	=	alisin	=	infinitive
a+ alis + in	=	aalisin	=	future
in + a + alis	=	inaalis	=	present
in+ alis	=	inalis	=	past

Exercise 4

Supply the appropriate tense forms of the following **in** verbs. Use the examples to guide you:

Infinitive		Future	Present	Past
1. ibig = stem <i>love</i>	=			
2. kain = stem <i>eat</i>	=			
3. linis = stem <i>clean</i>	=			
4. sulat = stem <i>write</i>	=			
5. tapos = stem <i>finish</i>	=			

More on **in** verbs:

As object, focus **in** verbs typically denote actions 'radically' affecting the goal, such as those causing change in its structure. For example:

Infinitive	Stem	
gawin	gawa	<i>to make, do</i>
lutu	luto	<i>to cook</i>
tapusin	tapos	<i>to finish</i>
tadtarin	tadtad	<i>to chop</i>

Sometimes used with a directional, focus **in** verbs may express motion in relation to a goal (in which case there is usually some element of contact with the goal). For example:

Infinitive	Stem	
panhikin	panhik	<i>to go up into</i>
pasukin	pasok	<i>to enter</i>
pukul	pukol	<i>to throw something at</i>
salpukin	salpok	<i>to strike against</i>
sampalin	sampal	<i>to slap one's face</i>

Most cooking terms fall under **in**:

Infinitive	Stem	
saingin	saing	<i>to cook (as in rice)</i>
lagain	laga	<i>to boil</i>
prituhan	prito	<i>to fry (in deep oil)</i>
sangagin	sangag	<i>to fry (with very little oil, as in rice)</i>
putulin	putol	<i>to cut</i>
hiwain	hiwa	<i>to slice</i>
tadtarin	tadtad	<i>to chop</i>

Most cleaning terms fall under **in**:

linisin	linis	<i>to clean</i>
kuskusin	kuskos	<i>to scrub</i>
ayusin	ayos	<i>to arrange/tidy up</i>

Most stative actions (actions describing a state of being) are **in**:

gulatin	gulat	to surprise
takutin	takot	to scare
hiyain	hiya	to embarrass
gutumin	gutom	to make hungry
biguin	bigong	to disappoint

Illnesses can be verbalised under **in**: Here, there is no actor, just a goal:

lagnatin	lagnat	to have a fever
sipunin	sipon	to suffer from cold
malaryahin	malarya	to suffer from malaria

To be infested by insects fall under **in** when verbalised. Here again, there is no actor, just a goal.

anayin	anay	to be infested with termites
langgamin	langgam	to be infested with ants
lamukin	lamok	to be swarmed with mosquitoes
surutin	surot	to be infested with bedbugs

For example:

1. Nilalanggam ang cake.
The cake is swarming with ants.
2. Sinisipon ka ba?
Are you suffering from cold?
3. Minalarya ang mga sundalo.
The soldiers suffered from malaria.
4. Nilalagnat si Mario.
Mario has a fever.

Sentence variations

Verb +	actor +	object:
Hiwain	ninyo	ang sibuyas at kamatis.
<i>You slice the onions and tomatoes</i>		

Qualifier +	actor +	verb +	object:
Huwag	ninyong	kainin	ang pagkain nila
<i>Don't you eat their food!</i>			

Qualifier +	particle +	actor +	object:
Binabago	talaga	ng araw	ang kulay ng ating balat.
<i>Indeed, the sun changes the colour of our skin</i>			

Question marker +	actor +	object (directional):
Sino	ang gumulat	sa kaniya?
<i>Who surprised him/her?</i>		

Qualifier +	actor +	object +	verb:
Hindi	ko	siya	pipilitin
<i>I won't force her</i>			

Note: There are irregular **in** verbs that change when forming the infinitive. For example: **bili**, *buy* becomes **bilhin**, **sunod**, *follow* becomes **sundin**, **kuha**, *get/take* becomes **kunin**, **dala**, *carry* becomes **dalhin**, **sabi**, *say* becomes **sabihin**.

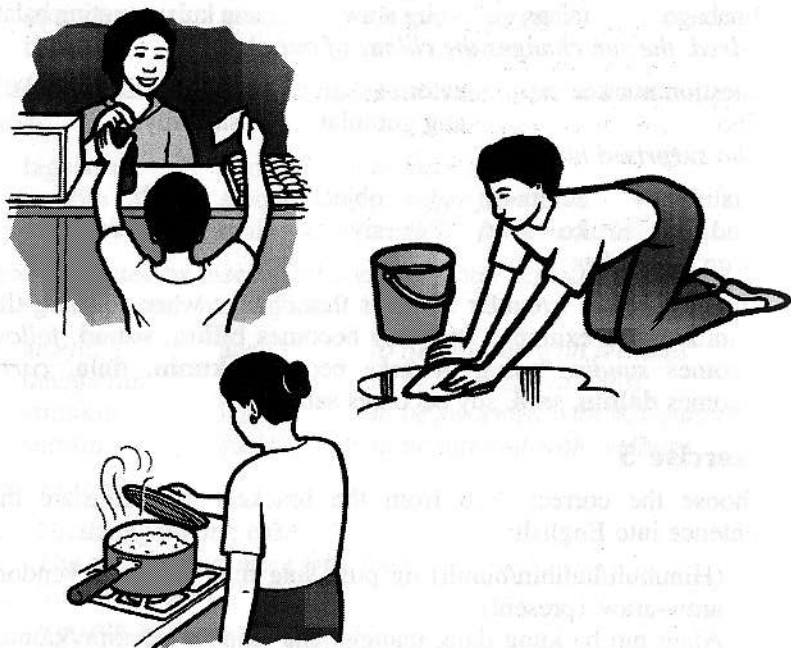
Exercise 5

Choose the correct verb from the brackets and translate the sentence into English:

1. (Hinuhuli/hulihin/hinuli) ng pulis ang mga sidewalk vendors araw-araw. (present)
2. Alam mo ba kung ilang mangga ang (kinain/kakainin/kainin) ni Bosyo kanina? (past)
3. Kailan mo (tinahi/ tatahiin/ tinatahi) ang aking bestida? (future)
4. Huwag mong (sasabihin/ sinabi/ sinasabi) kay Rex ang sagot mo. (future)
5. Kahapon, (nilinis/ lilinisin/ linisin) na niya ang bagong kotse. (past)

Exercise 6

Look at the three pictures. From the accompanying word box, see if you can match up two appropriate **in** verbs to each picture:



linisin	to clean
inumín	to drink
bilhin	to buy
kainin	to eat
sirain	to destroy
sipunin	to have a cold
gulatin	to surprise
lutuín	to cook
lagnatin	to have a fever
kunin	to get
biruin	to tease/joke
kilalanin	to know
sabihin	to tell

Dialogue 3

After the baptism the priest is seen speaking to Roy.

- Pari** Kumusta ka Roy.
Roy Mabuti *po* naman. At kayo *po*?
Pari Mabuti rin naman salamat. Isa ka pala sa mga **ninong** ng **bagong binyag**.
Roy Opo. Tinanong nila ako kung puwede ako at tinanggap ko naman ang paanyaya.
Pari Mabuti. Ang mga magulang mo, **darating** ba?
Roy *Hindi po*.
Pari **Pupunta** ka ba sa salu-salo?
Roy Opo.
Pari O, sige mag-enjoy ka.
Roy Salamat *po*.

Talasalitaan

isa ka sa mga
 pupunta
 salu-salo
 bago(ng) binyag
 tinanong
 puwede ako
 tinanggap
 paanyaya
 magulang mo
 darating
 mag-enjoy

Vocabulary

you're one of the
will go
party
newly baptised
was asked
I'm available
accepted
invitation
your parents
will arrive
to enjoy

Translation

- Priest** How are you, Roy.
Roy I'm fine sir. And you?
Priest I'm fine too, thank you. So you're one of the godfathers of the newly baptised?
Roy Yes I am. They asked if I was available and I accepted the invitation.
Priest Good. Your parents, are they coming?
Roy No sir.

Priest Are you going to (attend) the party?

Roy Yes sir.

Priest All right. You enjoy yourself.

Roy Thank you sir.

Exercise 7

Here are the answers, but can you supply the questions?

- Oo. Ninong din ako.
Question:
- Dalawa kaming ninong.
Question:
- Wala rito ang mga magulang ko.
Question:
- Pupunta siguro ako sa salu-salo.
Question:

Exercise 8

Look at the following pictures and listen to the tape. You will notice that the pictures are out of sequence with the story. After listening to the story, number the pictures in their correct order:



After replaying the tape and listening to the story several times, why not have fun by retelling the story in Tagalog to some of your Filipino friends.

Language skills

3. More on particles

In Unit 14 we looked at the particles (adverbs) **pa** and **na**. A fuller list of common Tagalog particles and their uses follows. The ability to learn and use particles in your spoken Tagalog will not only add 'polish' to your sentences but will no doubt impress your Filipino friends too! Look at the table and study the examples that follow:

Particle	When and how it is used
naman	<i>on the other hand</i> (also used as a form of reply meaning <i>too/as well/ in fact</i>)
po	used out of respect in answering or addressing an elder or superior or person of rank
ba	interrogative particle answerable by yes or no
pala	<i>so!</i>
nga	<i>indeed, truly</i>
raw/daw	<i>according to them/ they say/ apparently/ she/he said etc.</i> (raw is used with a word after a final vowel)
kaya	used idiomatically to express doubt <i>I wonder/ do you think</i>
yata	<i>I think, maybe, it seems</i>
rin/din	<i>also, too, as well</i> (rin is used with a word after a final vowel)
na naman	<i>again</i>

Example sentences

1. Naupo si Phil at tumayo naman si Harry.
Phil sat down and on the other hand, Harry stood up.
2. Umuulan na naman!
It's raining again.
3. Kumusta po kayo?
How are you sir/madam? (very formal)
4. Nagbabakasyon rin kami taun-taon.
We also go on holiday every year.
5. Mandurukot kaya ang taong ito?
I wonder if this man is a pickpocket.
6. Ito pala ang istasyon ng pulisya.
So this is the police station.
7. Ginagamit mo ba ito?
Are you using this?
8. Hindi raw niya kailangan ang pasaporte natin.
Apparently he/she doesn't need our passport.

 **Exercise 9**

Here are some sentences. Fill in the blank space with an appropriate particle, then translate the sentence into English. Use the clues to help you:

Example: Kumakain ka ba ng balut?
Translation: *Do you eat balut?*

1. Hindi _____ sila Pilipino. (so!)
Translation:
2. Magaganda _____ ang mga bulaklak sa hardin ninyo. (indeed)
Translation:
3. Sino _____ ang mga bagong bisita nila? (I wonder)
Translation:
4. Tinatawag ka _____ ng mga kaibigan mo. (I think)
Translation:
5. Narito _____ ang mga kailangan ko? (?)
Translation:

Use of ba

The particle **ba** cannot be translated directly into English. Its purpose is to indicate that a sentence is in fact a question. Use of **ba** is optional, except in question formulas such as **hindi ba**, etc. In the more sophisticated Manila Tagalog, it is often missed out altogether.

As a particle, **ba** is normally found sandwiched between the comment and the subject of a sentence. For example, **Turista** (comment) **ba si Ginoong Abbott** (subject)?, *Is Mr Abbott a tourist?* When more than one particle is used in a sentence, as a permanent rule, **ba** comes after **na** (**na ba**), **pa** (**pa ba**), **rin** (**rin ba**), **raw** (**raw ba**) and **na naman** (**na naman ba**). When a long string of particles is used, **ba** can be found at the end of a sentence, thus **Namili ka rin daw ba?**, *Did they say you also went shopping?*

Occasionally the subject is omitted altogether, such as when the speaker raises his / her voice tone clearly indicating that they want to ask a question. For example, **Malinis na ba ang mesa?**, *Is the table clean already* becomes **Malinis na ba?** (ang mesa), *Is it [the table] clean already?*

An amusing word of warning to the Tagalog learner: Be careful when using the particle **ba** in connection with the second person singular **ka** (informal). In this case, **ka** precedes **ba**, i.e. **ka ba** (instead of **ba ka** which translates into English as *cow!* For example, **Guro ka ba?**, *Are you a teacher?*, not **Guro ba ka?**, which would translate as *teacher cow!*

One-minute phrases

Kunan mo ako (*koo-nahn maw ah-kaw*) Literally, *take/get (something) from me*. Meaning take my picture/photograph!! For example: **Gene, kunan mo naman ako sa camera ko,** *Gene, would you be kind enough to take my picture with my camera?*

Ikaw ang masusunod (*ee-kao ahng mah-saw-saw-nawd*) Literally, *you're the one to be followed*. Meaning as you like it/ You're the boss! For example: **Kung gusto mong umalis tayo nang maaga, ikaw ang masusunod.** *If you want us to leave early, then you're the boss.*

Dahan-dahan ang pagsasalita (*dah-hahn dah-hahn ahng pahg-sah-sah-lee-tah*) Literally, *slow-slow the talking*. Meaning could you speak a little more slowly. For example: **Dahan-dahan lang ang pagsasalita para maintindihan ko ang sinasabi mo**, *Please speak slowly so that I'd be able to understand you.*

Anuman ang mangyari (*ah-noo-mahn ahng mahng-yah-ree*) Literally, *whatever the happening*. Similar in meaning to the English expression 'come what may'. For example: **Darating daw sila anuman ang mangyari**, *They said they would arrive come what may.*

Tumingin-tingin (*too-mee-ngeen tee-ngeen*) Literally, *to have a look/see*. Meaning to have a look around/ to see. For example: **Kapag namalengke ka, tumingin-tingin ka nga kung may sariwang lapulapu**, *If you go to the market, would you have a look if there are fresh lapulapu.*

Cultural Tip

Relationship bonds are high on the agenda in Filipino culture. Filipinos are deeply loyal to their families and are prepared to sacrifice their own comfort and personal happiness in order to improve the lot of their loved ones. Where no blood ties exist, Filipino culture finds other ways to forge connections. One such way is the **kumpare** or **kumare** system. These words can be translated literally as 'co-father' or 'co-mother'. Here, a respected person is invited by a family to become a godparent at the baptism of one of their children. If you are invited to be a godparent remember that it is considered to be an honour. You are then no longer just a visitor or an outsider, but a 'co-mother' or a 'co-father' to the child. You are now 'connected' to the family at a deeper level. Of course, it is good to be aware that such connection may carry certain financial expectations or even obligations. Saying 'yes' to such an invitation may have consequences, but saying 'no' is potentially just as complicated.

16 MAAARI BANG GAWIN MO ITO?

Could I ask a favour of you?

In this unit you will learn how to

- make requests and suggestions
- give a command
- give instructions

Making requests and suggestions

Dialogue 1

At the Abiva residence, Louise Cook is asking Lily to do something for her.

Louise Maaari bang ipakihulog mo ang mga sulat ko?

Lily Aba opo. Ibigay po ninyo sa akin at ihuhulog ko kaagad.

Louise Heto. Labindalawa ang mga iyan. Wala akong selyo. Ibili mo na tuloy ako ng selyo at ipakilagay mo ang mga selyo sa sulat.

Lily Sige po. Ako po ang bahala. Pupunta ako sa post office.

Louise Maraming salamat ha? Heto ang pera.

Lily Wala pong anuman, Ginang Cook.

Talasalitaan

Vocabulary

ipakihulog mo	<i>could you post</i>
tuloy	<i>as well</i>
aba opo	<i>of course (formal)</i>
ibigay	<i>to give</i>
sa akin	<i>to me</i>
ihuhulog	<i>will post</i>
kaagad	<i>immediately</i>
ibili	<i>to buy for</i>
pakilagay	<i>please put</i>
ang bahala	<i>will look after</i>

Translation

Louise Could you kindly post my letters?

Lily Sure ma'am. If you give them to me I'll post them immediately.

Louise Here. There are twelve there. I don't have stamps. If you could also buy some stamps for me and put them on the letters.

Lily All right ma'am. I'll look after them. I'm going to go to the post office.

Louise Thank you very much indeed. Here is the money.

Lily You're welcome, Mrs Cook.

Exercise 1

Listen to the dialogue again and then answer the following questions.

1. Ano ang sinabi ni Louise Cook kay Lily?

Answer:

2. Ilan ang sulat na ihuhulog ni Lily?

Answer:

3. Bakit bibili si Lily ng selyo?

Answer:

4. Saan bibili ng selyo si Lily?

Answer:

Language skills**1. Passive 'i' verbs**

A second passive verb form is known as the **i** type verb. Dialogue 1 gives us a few examples: **ibigay**, to give, **ihuhulog**, will post, **ibili**, to buy for. As with all passive verb forms, it always takes a **ng** form actor (either **ni**, **nina**, **ko**, **mo**, **niya**, **namin**, **natin**, **ninyo**, **nila**, **ninyo**, **niyan**, **noon**, or **ng**), while the object or goal is always an **ang** form word (either **si**, **sina**, **ako**, **ka/ikaw**, **siya**, **kami**, **tayo**, **kayo**, **sila**, **ito**, **iyang**, **iyon**, **ang mga ito**, **ang mga iyang**, **ang mga iyon**, or **ang**). For example: **Ibinalik ni Elvira** (actor) **ang libro** (object), *Elvira returned the book*. The infinitive of the **i** verb is easily recognised by the prefix **i** before the root word. For example: **i** + **hulog** = **ihulog**, to post or to drop, **i** + **tapon** = **itapon**, to throw and so on.

The **i** verb is unique in that it is object focused, meaning that we lay more emphasis on the object rather than on the doer of the action. For example: **Isinara ko ang bintana**, *The window* (object) *was closed by me*. or *I closed the window*. If this same sentence uses an active verb, the focus would then be on the doer of the action: **Nagsara ako ng bintana**, *I closed a window*. Some **i** verbs are also used as beneficiary words, meaning that an action is performed for the benefit of another person. For example: **ibili**, to buy for (someone), **ikuha**, to get for (someone) **igawa**, to make for (someone), **isama**, to take someone along (for someone). In all of these cases, the recipient (or beneficiary) of these verbs is represented with an **ang** form word.

For example: **Ibinili ko si Eileen ng sapatos**, *I bought (a pair of) shoes for Eileen*. **Igagawa ko si Neneng ng manyika**, *I'll make a doll for Neneng*. The **i** verb is also directional, that is, it uses **sa** as a goal. Example: **Ibigay natin ito sa kanila**, *Let us give this to them*. **Ipinasok ni Larry ang mga silya sa loob**, *Larry took the chairs in/inside/indoors*.

Compare the um and i Beneficiary

Bumili ako ng sorbetes para kay Tess	<i>I bought some ice cream for Tess</i>
Ibinili ko ng sorbetes si Tess	<i>I bought Tess some ice cream</i>
Gumawa sila ng saranggola para sa akin	<i>They made a kite for me</i>
Iginawa nila ako ng saranggola	<i>They made me a kite</i>
Sumama ako sa kanila sa sine	<i>I went to the cinema with them</i>
Isinama nila ako sa sine	<i>They took me to the cinema</i>

Compare the mag and i forms

Mag-aakyat siya ng panggatong	<i>He/she will bring/take up some firewood</i>
Iaakyat niya ang panggatong	<i>He/she will bring/take up the firewood</i>
Nagprito ba kayo ng itlog?	<i>Did you fry some eggs?</i>
Iprinito ba ninyo ang itlog?	<i>Did you fry the eggs?</i>

Naglalabas na sila ng mga silya	<i>They are taking out some chairs now</i>
Inilalabas na nila ang mga silya	<i>They are taking out the chairs now</i>

Some example sentences:

1. Ibinigay ni Bernie ang bolpen kay Elizabeth
Bernie gave the pen to Elizabeth
2. Isasama mo ba si Stephen sa sine?
Are you going to take Stephen to the cinema?
3. Isasampay ko muna ang mga damit
I'll hang the clothes first
4. Ano ang inilagay mo sa sopas?
What did you put in the soup?
5. Isasara ko na po ba ang mga bintana?
Shall I close the windows now?
6. Itinahhi ako ni Letty ng magandang blusa
Letty has sewn a lovely blouse for me
7. Igagawa mo ba siya ng laruan?
Are you going to make a toy for him/her?

Changing the tense of the i verb

Prefix	I	
Stem	tapon	<i>throw</i>
Infinitive	I + tapon	= itapon <i>to be thrown</i>
Future	I + ta + tapon	= itatapon <i>will be thrown</i>
Present	I + t + in + a_ tapon	= itinatapon <i>is being thrown</i>
Past	I + t + in + a + pon	= itinapon <i>was thrown</i>

Some familiar i verbs - Listen and repeat

Listen to the correct pronunciation on the tape. Listen carefully to the slight variations in pronunciation of each tense and then try to repeat without the help of the tape.

Infinitive	Translation	Future	Present	Past
ibigay	<i>to give</i>	ibibigay	ibinibigay	ibinigay
ilagay	<i>to put/place</i>	ilalagay	inilalagay	inilagay
itapon	<i>to throw</i>	itatapon	itinatapon	itinapon
itago	<i>to keep in a safe place</i>	itatago	itinatago	itinago
itabi	<i>to keep aside</i>	itatabi	itinatabi	itinabi
ibagsak	<i>to drop with force</i>	ibabagsak	ibinabagsak	ibinagsak
itaas	<i>to take up/raise</i>	itataas	itinataas	itinaas
isabit	<i>to hang on a hook</i>	isasabit	isinabit	isinabit
isampay	<i>to hang on a line</i>	isasampay	isinampay	isinampay
itulak	<i>to push</i>	itutulak	itinutulak	itinulak
isukat	<i>to try something on</i>	isusukat	isinusukat	isinukat
isara	<i>to close</i>	isasara	isinasara	isinara
ipasok	<i>to take inside</i>	ipapasok	ipinapasok	ipinasok
ilabas	<i>to take outside</i>	ilalabas	inilalabas	inilabas
ipasa	<i>to pass</i>	ipapasa	ipinapasa	ipinasa
ibili	<i>to buy for</i>	ibibili	ibinibili	ibinili
ikain	<i>to eat for</i>	ikakain	ikinakain	ikinain
ikuha	<i>to get for</i>	ikukuha	ikinukuha	ikinuha
igawa	<i>to make for</i>	igagawa	iginagawa	iginawa
isama	<i>to take someone with</i>	isasama	isinasama	isinama
itahi	<i>to sew for</i>	itatahi	itinatahi	itinahi
isakay	<i>to take aboard</i>	isakay	isinakay	isinakay

Some i verbs are used in connection with activities of a social nature (beneficiary):

Stem	Meaning	
ikumusta	kumusta	<i>to say hello for</i>
idalo	dalo	<i>to attend for</i>
ihalik	halik	<i>to kiss for</i>
iyakap	yakap	<i>to embrace for</i>
ibalita	balita	<i>to send news for</i>
Ikumusta mo kami sa kanila		<i>Say hello to them from us</i>
Ihalik mo ako sa nanay		<i>Kiss Mother for me</i>

Some **i** verbs denote actions affecting the position of the **ang**, without causing a change in its structure. They often correspond to **mag** verbs.

Stem	Meaning	
iakyat	akyat	<i>to bring/take up</i>
ialok	alok	<i>to offer</i>
itapon	tapon	<i>to throw</i>
iuwi	uwi	<i>to take home</i>

Inialok ni Peter ang kotse niya *Peter offered his car to me*
sa akin

Bakit mo iuwi iyan? *Why are you taking that home?*

In their passive form, **mag** verbs denoting ways of preparing food are represented as *i* verbs:

iluto	luto	<i>to cook</i>
iihaw	ihaw	<i>to broil/grill</i>
iprito	prito	<i>to fry</i>
ipaksiw	paksiw	<i>to make paksiw</i>



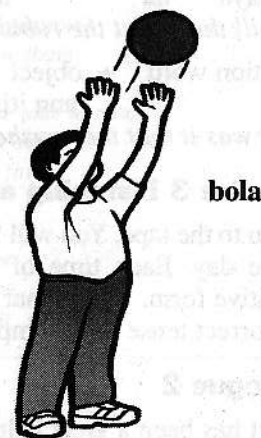
Ipinirito mo ba ang isda?
Iniluto ko na ang bangus

Did you fry the fish?
I have cooked the milkfish
already

Exercise 2

Look at the cartoons. Can you say what actions are being performed? Write your answer in the space provided. A noun has been provided to help you.

Example: Itinatapon ang basura (ang basura)



Sentence variations using **i** form verbs:

Verb + actor + beneficiar + object + adverb
Ikukuha ko siya ng tubig

I will get him/her (a glass of) water.

Igagawa namin sila ng laruan

We will make a toy for them.

Isinasama nila ako sa parke lagi.

They always take me along with them to the park

Ibili mo kami ng sandwich

Buy some sandwiches for us

Pseudo-Verb + particle + verb + actor + receiver of the action + object

Maaari bang ibili mo kami ng sandwich?

Could you buy some sandwiches for us?/ Could you buy us some sandwiches?

verb actor object

Ilalabas ni Tessie ang mga panindang gulay

Tessie will take the vegetable goods outside/outdoors

adverb particle actor verb object

Mamaya na namin itatapon ang basura


We will throw out the rubbish later on

Question word + object + actor + place + time


Ano ang itinulak nila sa kalsada kahapon?

What was it that they pushed on the street yesterday?

Exercise 3 Listening and Speaking

 Listen to the tape. You will hear the speaker mention different times of the day. Each time of day is accompanied by a verb in the infinitive form. Using your skill and knowledge of **i** verbs, provide the correct tense to accompany the time element.

Dialogue 2

 Jobert has been a great help to the Cook family. Bill is speaking to him.

Bill Jobert, masyado **yatang** pinapagod ka **namin**. *Nahihiya kami sa ginagawa mo para sa amin.*

Jobert *Hindi* naman. **Konting** bagay lang ito. **Noong** nasa London ako tinulungan ninyo ako. Malaki ang utang na loob ko sa inyo.

Bill **Ikaw** naman. **Bale** wala iyon. **Kalimutan** mo na iyon.

Jobert **Aba**, isinama ninyo **ako** sa mga lugar na *hindi* ko maaabot kung *hindi* sa inyo. **Ibinili** ninyo **ako** ng mga kailangan ko. **Inihatid** ninyo **ako** sa paliparan.

Bill **Maraming** salamat Jobert sa pag-alaala mo **pero** *hindi* ka dapat mag-**isip** ng ganiyan.

Jobert **Walang** anuman. **Maraming** salamat na *muli*.

Talasalitaan

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
isinama	accompanied
pinapagod ka	tiring you
nahihiya	embarrassed
ginagawa	doing
para sa amin	for us
hindi naman	not so
bagay	thing
noong	when
tinulungan	helped
muli	again
utang na loob	debt of gratitude
bale wala	means nothing
kalimutan	forget
maaabot	won't be able to reach
kung hindi	had not been
ibinili	bought for
kailangan	needs
inihatid	took to
pag-alaala	concern
mag-isip	to worry
ganiyan	like that

Translation

- Bill** Jobert, I think we are tiring you a lot. We are feeling (a little) embarrassed by what you're doing for us.
- Jobert** Not at all. This is only a small thing. When I was in London you helped me. I owe you a lot.
- Bill** Oh, you. That's nothing. Please forget about that.
- Jobert** Well, you took me to places that I would not have reached had it not been for you. You bought me things I needed. You took me to the airport.
- Bill** Thank you Jobert for your concern but you shouldn't think like that.
- Jobert** Don't mention it. Thank you very much again.

Exercise 4

Can you answer the following questions?

1. Bakit nahihya si Bill kay Jobert?
2. Bakit nag-aalaala si Jobert?
3. Magbigay ng dalawang bagay na ginawa nina Bill para kay Jobert sa London.
4. Kung ikaw, mag-aalaala ka rin ba katulad ni Jobert?

Language skills

2. Mag = verb
Walang + verb

May + active verb or mayroong + Active verb	= <i>someone, somebody</i>
May + passive verb or mayroong + Passive verb	= <i>something</i>
Walang + active verb	= <i>no one, nobody</i>
Walang + passive verb	= <i>nothing</i>
Marami + active or Passive	= <i>a lot of/ lots of</i>

We have already met the words **may**, **mayroon** *has/have*, **mayroon** *there is/there are* and **marami** *many*.

These words are used not only to express possession but may also be used as **may** phrases expressing 1) presence; 2) something

indefinite. Simply speaking, a **may** phrase expresses presence when there is no subject in the sentence and **may** (or **mayroon**) is followed by a noun. This is in fact less complicated than it sounds. Look at this example: **May pagkain sa mesa.** *There is food on the table (food is present on the table).*

In indefinite phrases, **may** (or **mayroon**) is followed by a verb. For example: **May bibili ba ng Coke bukas?**, *Will someone buy Coke tomorrow?*, **May bumibili ng coke.** *Someone is buying Coke.* **May naglilinis dito araw-araw,** *Someone cleans here everyday.* **Mayroong* kumatok kagabi,** *Someone knocked on the door last night.* **Maraming* namimili sa palengke kung Sabado,** *Many (people) go to the market on Saturdays.* (* **Note:** as a general rule, **mayroon** and **marami** become **mayroong** and **maraming** when followed by a noun). No doubt you will have noticed that each of these sentences has no subject. When the verb in an indefinite **may** phrase is an active verb (**um**, **mag**, **mang**), then the sentence has no subject. However, if the verb in an indefinite **may** phrase is a passive verb (**in**, **i**, **an**) then there is a subject. For example: **May kinuha ako sa kaniya,** *I took something from him/her.* **Mayroong itinapon si Stephen sa sahig,** *Stephen threw something on the floor.* **Maraming inalis sa trabaho noong bago mag-pasko,** *Many (employees) were made redundant before Christmas.*

You will remember that the opposite to **may** is **wala**. **Wala + ng** not only expresses absence or non-possession of something, but like **may**, **mayroon** and **marami**, it can be used to express the indefinite. As with **may**, **mayroon** and **marami**, if the verb used with **wala** is an active verb (**um**, **mag**, **mang**), then there is no subject. For example: **Walang kumakain ng luto ko,** *No one is eating what I've cooked,* **Walang naglalaro ng tennis ngayon.** *Nobody is playing tennis today.* **Wala bang mamimili bukas?** *Isn't anyone going shopping tomorrow?* Again, if the verb used with **wala** is a passive verb, (**in**, **i** or **an**) then there is a subject. For example: **Walang binili si Roy sa duty free,** *Roy didn't buy anything from the duty free.* **Wala ka bang ibibigay kay Sophie?** *Aren't you giving anything to Sophie?*, **Walang tinawagan si Amy kagabi,** *Amy didn't call anyone (on the telephone) last night.*

Reference table			
Active verb (um, mag, mang)		No Subject +	Time etc.
may	kumakain		kagabi
mayroong	kumakain		kagabi
maraming	kumakain		kagabi
walang	kumakain		kagabi
Passive verb (in, i, an)		Subject +	Time etc.
may	kinain	si Patricia	kanina
mayroong	kinain	si Patricia	kanina
maraming	kinain	si Patricia	kanina
walang	kinain	si Patricia	kanina

Sample sentences:

May sumigaw sa klase kanina

Someone shouted in class a while ago

Maraming nagbabasketball sa kalye hapon-hapon

Many play basketball in the street every afternoon

May tumawag raw sa akin kagabi

Apparently someone called me (on the telephone) last night

Walang kumain ng luto ni Bennie

Nobody ate Bennie's cooking

May nagdarasal sa simbahan sa umaga

Someone prays in church in the morning

May nangyari sa kaniya

Something happened to her/him

May kumakatok yata

I think someone is knocking on the door

May sinabi ka ba sa kaniya?

Did you tell him/her anything?

Walang ginagawa ang mga empleyado dito

The employees here are not doing anything

Maraming binili si Ginang de los Reyes sa tindahan

Mrs. de los Reyes bought a lot of things from the store

Exercise 5:

The following sentences are jumbled up. Can you put them back into their correct order?

1. dito marami(ng) araw-araw bumibili ng libro.
2. sa pinto may kumakatok yata.
3. ako kahapon may kinuha sa kaniya.
4. walang noong Linggo sa akin sa ospital sumama.
5. sa kabila ng tennis na naman may naglalaro.

Language Skills

3. Requests, commands and suggestions

To make a simple request in Tagalog, just use **maaari bang/puwede bang** followed by the infinitive form of an active or a passive verb! What could be simpler? Look at these examples:

Maaari bang maupo kayo? *Would you mind sitting down?*

Puwede po bang huwag *Would you mind not smoking?*

tayong manigarilyo.

Exercise 6

Try making your own command, request or suggestion:

Example: **pumirma.** (Request): Maaari bang pumirma kayo dito?
Sir/madam, could you please sign here?

1. Command: tumayo (*to stand up*)
Sentence:
2. Request: maupo (*to sit down*)
Sentence:
3. Suggestion: matulog (*to sleep*)
Sentence:
4. Request: manigarilyo (*to smoke*)
Sentence:
5. Suggestion: mamasiyal (*to go for a walk*)
Sentence:

Exercise 7

You are on the telephone to your local hardware store. You have decided to help your Filipino friend make some improvements to her house but first of all, you will need a few supplies. Complete the following dialogue, using the vocabulary box to help you:

- Ikaw** Say good morning
Store Magandang umaga. Ano po ang maipaglilingkod ko sa inyo?
Ikaw Ask if they have any cement
Store Marami po kami niyan.
Ikaw Say you would like to reserve ten bags
Store Aba opo. Mayroon pa po ba kayong nais (bilhin)?
Ikaw Ask if they have any marine plywood
Store Wala po. Ordinaryong plywood lamang.
Ikaw Ask if they have any aluminium roofing sheets
Store Opo. Mayroon po. Kararating lang po ng bagong delivery ngayong umaga.
Ikaw Good. Ask him to reserve twelve sheets for you
Store O, eh iyon pong pampako sa pambubong na aluminum?
Ikaw Yes. Two kilos please
Store Mayroon pa po ba kayong kailangan?
Ikaw No, that's all thank you. I will drop by at midday
Store Ayos lang po, sir. Paalam na po.
Ikaw Goodbye

Ask one of your Filipino friends to help you practise this dialogue aloud.

One-minute phrases

Ikumusta mo ako (*ee-koo-moos-tah maw ah-kaw*) Literally, Say hello you me. Similar to its English equivalent ('say hello for me'), this Tagalog expression is used when sending greetings to a third person.

Ipagpaumahan po ninyo (*ee-pahg-pah-oo-mahn-heen paw neen-yaw*) Literally, Please bear with/excuse (formal) you. Meaning 'to make something appear less serious/ to excuse'. This is a very polite and commonly used expression

acknowledging any form of inconvenience caused to another person. For example: **Ipagpaumahan po ninyo ang sagabal na ito sa inyong kalsada**, *We apologise for this obstruction on your street.*

Unti-untiin (*oon-tee oon-tee-teen*) Meaning 'to do something little by little/slowly'. A useful phrase used in the same way as its English equivalent. For example, **Sabi ni Nanay, unti-untiin daw natin ang pagkain ng sorbetes**, *Mother said that we have to eat the ice-cream little by little.*

Labag sa batas (*lah-bahg sah bah-tahs*) Meaning 'against the law'. For example: **Labag sa batas ang magpasok sa ating bansa ng anumang drugs**, *It is against the law to bring into our country any drugs.*

Pagdating na pagdating (*pag-dah-ting nah pag-dah-ting*) Literally, upon arrival, upon arrival. Meaning immediately upon arrival. For example: **Sabihin mo kay Pedro na pumunta sa opisina ko pagdating na pagdating niya**, *Tell Pedro to come straight to my office the moment he arrives.*

① Cultural tip

As a people who consider smooth and harmonious relationships to be one of life's essentials, Filipinos have developed ways and means of engendering favour and good standing with one another. One such way is the **utang na loob** or debt of gratitude system. Very simply, it is understood that any favours received or favours granted do, indeed, have to be returned. To help another person out places that person in your debt, and one day they must find a way of repaying you. Local politicians have been known to use this cultural value to their benefit, particularly around election time. Relationship ties are commonly strengthened by **utang na loob** which underlines the Filipino cultural value of inter-dependence. Don't be surprised to be on the receiving end of a favour. It is culturally understood that favours will strengthen ties with you which may come on useful one day!

17 ISANG KASALAN

A wedding

In this unit you will learn how to

- understand Filipino customs and traditions: a wedding
- use reflexive verbs

Understanding Filipino customs and traditions: a wedding

Dialogue 1

It is Pinky Abiva's wedding day. The bride and groom are talking to their guests.

- Louise** Kay ganda ng damit-pangkasal mo Pinky.
Pinky Salamat Louise. Mahusay ang modista namin.
Roy Maligayang bati, Pinky. Narito na pala ang mga ninong, ninang sa kasal, mga abay sa kasal, mga cord sponsors at mga tagapagdala ng singsing.
Pinky Oo, tinulungan nila akong maghanda para sa araw ng kasal ko.
Louise Maraming matatapos na gawain kung marami ang gagawa, hindi ba?
Roy Naayos na rin ba ang problema tungkol sa retratista?
Pinky Aba, oo. Inayos na ni Jobert.
Louise Ang tungkol sa pulot-gata?
Pinky Hindi pa namin naiisip, kasi marami kaming inasikaso. Sandali lang ha? Maraming dumarating na mga bisita.
Louise Okay lang.

Talasalitaan

kay ganda
 damit-pangkasal
 modista
 narito na
 mga ninong at ninang
 sa kasal
 mga abay sa kasal
 tagapagdala ng singsing
 tinulungan ako
 maghanda
 para sa araw ng kasal ko
 matatapos na gawain
 dumarating
 ang gagawa
 naayos
 problema
 tungkol sa
 retratista
 inayos
 pulot-gata
 hindi pa
 naiisip
 inasikaso
 sandali lang

Vocabulary

how beautiful
 wedding dress
 dressmaker
 here now
 witnesses
 wedding
 wedding assistants
 ring bearer
 helped me
 to prepare
 for my wedding day
 jobs will be finished
 arriving
 will do
 managed to arrange
 problem
 about
 photographer
 fixed/arranged
 honeymoon
 not yet
 able to think about
 dealt with
 wait a moment

Translation

- Louise** Your wedding dress is so beautiful, Pinky.
Pinky Thank you Louise. Our dressmaker is very good.
Roy Congratulations, Pinky. So the witnesses are here now, the cord sponsors and the ring bearers.
Pinky Yes, they (all) helped me prepare for my wedding day.
Louise Things can be done if there are many (hands) to help, isn't that so?
Roy Was the problem concerning the photographer solved?
Pinky Oh, yes, thanks to Jobert. (Jobert helped fix it)
Louise How about your honeymoon?

Pinky We haven't (yet) thought about it, we have so many (other) things to attend to.

Louise That can be sorted out later. (lit., that's all right)

Exercise 1

True or false? If the answer is false, try to give the correct one:

Example: Kasama sa mga abay sa kasal ang pari.

Answer: Mali. Hindi isa sa mga abay sa kasal ang pari. Ang pari ang nagbibigay ng seremonya.

- Maaaring walang ninong at ninang ang ikinakasal.
Sagot:
- Kailangang maghanda maraming buwan bago ikasal.
Sagot:
- Laging puti ang damit-pangkasal ng babaeng ikinakasal.
Sagot:
- Sa Pilipinas, laging may handaan kung may kasalan.
Sagot:

Exercise 2

Improving your vocabulary. Look at the puzzle. Find as many wedding-related words as you can:

N	I	N	O	N	G	S	O	L	S
P	A	I	L	I	R	O	K	O	I
A	M	N	O	R	I	F	I	B	M
G	P	A	R	I	L	M	B	I	B
K	A	N	A	N	G	D	U	S	A
A	R	G	A	L	U	M	L	I	H
I	P	U	L	O	T	G	A	T	A
N	O	S	O	T	I	M	K	A	N
S	I	N	G	S	I	N	G	R	O
R	E	T	R	A	T	I	S	T	A
T	R	A	C	O	R	D	M	H	M

Language skills

1. Passive an verbs

Dialogue 1 introduced us to a third type of passive verb known as the **an** verb. Like the **in** and the **i** passive verb forms, the 'doer' of the action (actor) in the **an** verb form is identified by a **ng** word (**ni, nina, ko, mo, niya, namin, natin, ninyo, nila** etc.). The **an** verb is easily recognised by the addition of **an** (as a suffix) to the root verb. For example: **hugas + an = hugasan, to be washed**. In a passive **an** verb sentence, the **ang** form (**si, sina, ako, ka, siya** etc.) indicates the goal of the sentence while another **ng** word indicates the object. For example: **Bigyan natin ng pagkain ang bata, Let's give the child some food**.

The **an** form verb differs from other verb forms in that: 1) the goal (or **ang**) is the receiver of the action. For example, if we were to say: **Binigyan ko si Alan ng mainit na kape, I gave Alan** (a cup of) *hot coffee*, then Alan is clearly identified as the receiver of the act **binigyan** because he has received the coffee. Any action therefore that the **an** verb suggests is received by the goal. In English, we would express this by using the words from, at, with, to etc. For example: **Tinapunan ko si Lewis ng bola, I threw a ball at Lewis**.

2) The goal (or **ang**) is treated as a 'space'. For example: **Winawalan ni Patricia ang balkonahe, Patricia is sweeping the porch**. For the 'info-holics' among us, it is interesting to note that most **an** verbs are derived from transitive **um** or **mag** verbs. For example, the **um** verb **Bumili siya ng saging sa matandang babae, He/she bought some bananas from the old woman** becomes **binilhan niya ng saging ang matandang babae, from the old woman he bought bananas**, when expressed in the **an** form. Here, the emphasis is on the goal or **matandang babae**. In the same way, **Nagbigay kami ng damit sa pulubi, We gave some clothes to the beggar**, becomes **Binigyan namin ng damit ang pulubi, the beggar was given some clothes by us**, with emphasis on **pulubi** as the goal. When **in** and **i** verb roots are used as **an** verbs, the meaning of the verb changes. Look at the examples.

How to form an verb tenses

Verb root: *punas* + suffix: *an* = *punasan* = *to wipe (to be wiped)* infinitive (can be used in requests, command & suggestions)

pu + *punas* + *an* = *pupunasan* = *will be wiped* = future

p + *in* + *u* + *punas* + *an* = *pinupunasan* = *being wiped* = present

p + *in* + *u* + *nas* + *an* = *pinunasan* = *was wiped* = past

In some instances, **an** verbs change to **han** when forming the infinitive. This depends on whether the accent on the second syllable is hard or soft:

For example:

Verb root: *sama* + suffix: *han* = *samahan* = *to be accompanied* infinitive

sa + *sama* + *han* = *sasamahan* = *will be accompanied* = future

s + *in* + *a* + *sama* + *han* = *sinasamahan* = *being accompanied* = present

s + *in* + *a* + *ma* + *han* = *sinamahan* = *was accompanied* = past

Listen carefully to native Tagalog speakers and you will soon pick up the difference between hard and soft accented words. Here are a few examples:

<i>tira</i> +	<i>an</i>	= <i>tirahan/tirhan</i>
<i>pila</i> +	<i>an</i>	= <i>pilahan</i>
<i>para</i> +	<i>an</i>	= <i>parahan</i>
<i>sara</i> +	<i>an</i>	= <i>sarahan/sarhan</i>
<i>asa</i> +	<i>an</i>	= <i>asahan</i>
<i>bili</i> +	<i>an</i>	= <i>bilihan</i>
<i>basa</i> +	<i>an</i>	= <i>basahan</i>
<i>ganda</i> +	<i>an</i>	= <i>gandahan</i>
<i>dami</i> +	<i>an</i>	= <i>damihan</i>
<i>dumi</i> +	<i>an</i>	= <i>dumihan</i>
<i>pinta</i> +	<i>an</i>	= <i>pintahan</i>
<i>punta</i> +	<i>an</i>	= <i>puntahan</i>

A brief comparison between **in**, **i** and **an** verbs.

in	an
<i>kain</i> (<i>eat</i>)	
<i>Kakainin</i> <i>nila iyan</i>	<i>Kakainan</i> <i>nila iyan</i>
<i>They will eat that</i>	<i>They will eat from that</i>
<i>alis</i> (<i>remove</i>)	
<i>Inalis</i> <i>ni Joe ang plato sa mesa</i>	<i>Inalisan</i> <i>ni Joe ng plato ang mesa</i>
<i>Joe removed the plate from the table</i>	<i>A plate was removed by Joe from the table</i>
<i>punit</i> (<i>tear off</i>)	
<i>Pinupunit</i> <i>ni Sarah ang papel</i>	<i>Pinupunitan</i> <i>ni Sarah ang papel</i>
<i>Sarah is tearing the paper (into pieces)</i>	<i>Sarah is tearing off from the paper</i>

You will remember that the receiver of the action in **i** verbs is always indicated by **sa**. In the **an** verb form, the receiver of the action is indicated by an **ang** form word. Compare the following examples:

I	An
<i>Ibibigay</i> <i>ni Alan kay Lina ang pera</i>	<i>Bibigyan</i> <i>ni Alan si Lina ng pera</i>
<i>Alan will give Lina the money</i>	<i>Alan will give Lina some money</i>
<i>Itatapon</i> <i>ko ang sirang silya sa basurahan</i>	<i>Tatapanan</i> <i>ko ng sirang silya ang basurahan</i>
<i>I will throw the broken chair into the bin</i>	<i>I will throw a broken chair in the bin</i>
<i>Isinara</i> <i>ni Mario ang pinto</i>	<i>Sinarhan</i> <i>ni Mario ang pintuan.</i>
<i>Mario shut the door</i>	<i>Mario closed the door</i>

An verb sentence variations:

Verb +	actor +	object/goal
<i>Dinumihan</i>	<i>ni Charlotte</i>	<i>ang kaniyang damit.</i>
<i>Charlotte soiled her clothes</i>		

Verb +	particle +	actor +	Receiver of the action/goal
<i>Sinulatan</i>	<i>ba</i>	<i>ni Louisa</i>	<i>ang kaibigan niya?</i>
<i>Did Louisa write to his/her friend?</i>			

Qualifier + actor + particle + verb + object + goal
 Hindi mo raw binigyan + ng pera si Viv.
Apparently, you didn't give Viv (any) money.

Question word + receiver of the action + actor + time
 Sino ang nginitian ni Tim kanina?
Who did Tim smile at a while ago?

Pseudo-verb + verb + actor + Object + Receiver/goal
 Gustong bigyan ni Lucy ng bibingka ang bata.
Lucy would like to give the child some rice cakes.

Exercise 3

Using the examples to guide you, change the following sentences into **an** form sentences:

- Kakainin ko ang pansit sa plato.
Answer:
- Tumutulong ako sa kaniya.
Answer:
- Maglalagay kami ng rosas na halaman dito.
Answer:
- Gusto kong ibigay kay Larry ito.
Answer:
- Ilagay ba natin ito doon?
Answer:
- Huwag mong aalisin ang libro sa mesa.
Answer:

Exercise 4

Fill in the blank spaces with the correct verb form:

- Bukas _____ (tulong) namin sila. (future)
- Kailan ninyo _____ (laki) ang inyong kusina? (past)
- _____ (sukli) ka na ba ng tsuper? (past)
- Si Wills at si Ruth ang _____ (sama) niya bukas. (future)
- Mahusay sumayaw ang _____ (bigay) nila ng premyo sa disco.(past)
- _____ (halik) ng bata ang lolo niya. (present)
- _____ (sarap) ng tagapagluto ang handa sa parti. (future)
- Ayokong _____ (palit) ang aking maleta. (infinitive)

Exercise 5:

When arranged in the correct sequence, the following sentences will tell a story. Arrange the sentences into the correct order and then translate the story into English. Use the vocabulary box to help you.

Sa kasalan

Napagod sa pagsayaw ng Tinikling ang pamilya Cook subali't nasyahan sila.

Habang kumakain ang ilan sa mga bisita, tumugtog ang maliit na banda.

Isa sa mga tugtugin ay Tinikling.

Tumulong sa paghahain at pagsisilbi ang mga kaibigan ni Pinky.

May tugtugin at ang mga panauhin ay sumayaw.

Tuwang-tuwa ang lahat dahil sa marunong mag-Tinikling si Bill at si Louise.

Maraming kumuha ng retrato sa bagong kasal paglabas nila ng simbahan.

Dumating ang bagong kasal kasunod ang mga panauhin.

Isa-isang nagpaalam ang mga panauhin.

Nagbigay din ng speech ang 'best man'.

Inihanda ng mga tagapagluto ang pagkain at inumin dahil sa darating na ang mga panauhin.

Maraming sasakyan ang umalis sa simbahan papunta sa bahay ng bagong kasal.

Ang mga nagluluto sa kusina ay abala.

Paglabas nila sa simbahan, sinabugan ng bigas ang bagong kasal.

Inanyayahan ng mga panauhin na sumayaw ng Tinikling si Bill, Louise at Roy. Maraming pagkain at marami ring inumin.

Sa dulang, nagbigay ng maikling speech ang mga bagong kasal.

Talasalitaan

napagod
pagsayaw
subali't
bagong-kasal
paglabas
tumugtog
banda
inihanda
tugtugin
tumulong
paghahain
pagsisilbi
panauhin
sumayaw
tuwang-tuwa
lahat
sinabugan
marunong
kumuha
nagpaalam
nagbigay
tagapagluto
sasakyan
naglutulo
inanyayahan
dulang

Vocabulary

got tired
dancing
but
newly wed
upon leaving
played (a musical instrument)
band
prepared
music
helped
offering
serving
guests
danced
happy
everybody
sprinkled with/showered with
know
took
said goodbye
gave
cook
cars etc.
cooking
invited
table

Exercise 6 Listening

Here are some commonly used **an** verbs. Listen to the correct pronunciation on the tape. After listening to the pronunciation a few times, try to repeat what you heard without the help of the tape:

Infinitive	Meaning	Verb root
awitan	to sing	awit
ayusan	to arrange	ayos
asahan	to rely upon	asa
alalayan	to assist/guide	alalay
basahan	to read to	basa

bigyan	to give to	bigay
bihisan	to clothe	bihis
damitan	to clothe	damit
damihan	to make many	dami
dumihan	to soil / dirty	dumi
gandahan	to make beautiful	ganda
halikan	to kiss	halik
habaan	to lengthen	haba
sundan	to follow	sunod
tularan	to copy/imitate	tulad
puntahan	to go to	punta
pintahan	to paint	pinta

Language skills**2. Expressing the circumstantial in passive verbs**

Ma, Mai, Ma-an To be able to, to happen to, to come to, to manage to

The three passive verbs **in**, **i** and **an** form the circumstantial as follows:

- by adding the prefix **ma** to **in** verb roots. For example: **ma** + **kain** = **makain** (to be able to be eaten)
- by adding the prefix **mai** to **i** verb roots. For example: **mai** + **tapon** = **maitapon** (to be able to be thrown)
- by adding the prefix **ma** and suffix **an** to **an** verb roots. For example: **ma** + **hugas** + **an** = **mahugasan** (to be able to be washed).

As in active verbs, some actions are brought about purely by circumstance, by accident or by occurrences beyond the actor's control.

Here is a guide on how to use the **ma**, **mai** and **ma-an** prefixes with the passive **in**, **I** and **an** verbs.

In verbs

Ma = (prefix) + **kain** (verb root)
ma + **kain** = **makain** = infinitive
 to be able to be eaten
 to happen to be eaten
 to manage to be eaten
 to come to be eaten

ma + ka + kain = makakain = *will be able etc. to be eaten* = future

na + ka + kain = nakakain = *able etc. to be eaten* = present

na + kain = nakain = *was able etc. to be eaten* = past

I verbs

Mai = (prefix) + **bigay** (verb root)

Mai + bigay = maibigay = infinitive

to be able to be given

to happen to be given

to manage to be given

to come to be given

mai + bi + bigay = maibibigay = *will be able etc. to be given* = future

nai + bi + bigay = naibibigay = *able etc. to be given* = present

nai + bigay = naibigay = *was able etc. to be given* = past

An verbs

Ma (prefix) + **hugas** (verb root) + **an** (suffix)

Ma + hugas + an = mahugasan = infinitive

to be able to be washed

to happen to be washed

to manage to be washed

to come to be washed

ma + hu + hugas + an = mahuhugasan = *will be able etc. to be washed* = future

na + hu + hugas + an = nahuhugasan = *able etc. to be washed* = present

na + hugas + an = nahugasan = *was able etc. to be washed* = past

Some examples of the circumstantial in passive verbs

In verbs

mabili *to be able etc. to be bought*

makain *to be able etc. to be eaten*

madala *to be able etc. to be brought*

malinis *to be able etc. to be cleaned*

maluto *to be able etc. to be cooked*

masulat *to be able etc. to be written*

I verbs

maitapon *to be able etc. to be thrown*

maibigay *to be able etc. to be given*

maisama *to be able etc. to be taken with*

maituro *to be able etc. to be taught*

maigawa *to be able etc. to be bought for*

maisakay *to be able etc. to be given a lift*

An verbs

mahugasan *to be able etc. to be washed*

malinisan *to be able etc. to be cleaned*

mahalikan *to be able etc. to be kissed*

masulatan *to be able etc. to be written to*

masamahan *to be able etc. to be accompanied*

mabayaran *to be able etc. to be paid*

Exercise 7

Read each of the following sentences carefully. Using the alternative tense given in the brackets, rewrite each sentence. Don't forget to adjust the time-element, if any is given.

Example: Gusto kong malinisan ang mesa. (present)

Answer: Nalilininisan ko ang mesa.

- Nasulatan mo na ba si Sophie? (present)
Answer:
- Naitatapon ni Harry ang basura lagi. (future)
Answer:
- May nabuksan siyang kabinet kanina. (present)
Answer:
- Hindi nasamahan ni Caroline si Phil sa bayan kagabi. (future)
Answer:
- Sino ang naisasakay mo sa kotse araw-araw? (past)
Answer:

Talking about customs

Dialogue 3

At the party following the marriage ceremony, Bill Cook witnesses some traditional Filipino wedding customs for the first time. He strikes up a conversation with Peter, Pinky's uncle.

Peter Kumusta kayo, si Peter ako. Tiyo ni Pinky. Sana nagustuhan ninyo ang aming handaan.

Bill Aba oo. Masaya ang kasalang ito. Ngayon lang ako nakakita ng pera na ikinakabit sa damit ng bagong kasal.

Peter Isa iyan sa mga tradisyong Pilipino.

Bill Napansin ko rin na nagmamano ang bagong kasal sa mga lolo at lola at ang lola ay bumubulong sa babae at ang lolo naman ay bumubulong sa lalaki.

Peter Oo nga. Hindi lang iyon. Mamaya, may ibibigay ang matatanda sa kanila. Nakabalot ito sa panyo. Kadalasan ito'y pera upang gawing puhunan ng bagong mag-asawa.

Bill Magandang kaugalian iyan. Bakit naman tumatakbo ang bagong kasal na parang nag-uunahan sila?

Peter Ah kasi, may kasabihan ang mga Pilipino na kung sino sa dalawang bagong kasal ang unang umakyat sa bahay, siya ang masusunod.

Bill Ganoon ba?

Talasalitaan

tiyo
sana
nagustuhan
handaan
ibibigay
ngayon lang
nakakita
ikinasal
kinakabitan
tradisyon(g)

Vocabulary

uncle
I hope
liked
reception
will be given
just now
was able to see
married
being attached
tradition

napansin	noticed
nagmamano	kissing the hand
bagong kasal	newly wed
masusunod	will be followed
lolo at lola	grandpa and grandma
bumubulong	whispering
babae at lalaki	man and woman
oo nga	indeed
matatanda	the old ones
nakabalot	wrapped
kadalasan	often times
puhunan	capital
tumatakbo	running
nag-uunahan	beating each other
kasabihan	saying
umakyat	climb up

Translation

Peter How are you, I'm Peter, Pinky's uncle. I hope you like our party.

Bill Oh, yes. This wedding celebration is good. This was my first time to see (paper) money being pinned to the clothes of the newly weds.

Peter That's a Filipino tradition.

Bill I also noticed that the newly weds kissed the hands of the (their) grandparents and that the grandmother whispered (something) to the girl (while) the grandfather whispered (something) to the boy.

Pete Indeed. That's not all. Later on, the old people will give (something) to them wrapped in a handkerchief. Usually this is money to be used by the newly weds as capital.

Bill That's an interesting custom. Why are the newly weds chasing one another?

Peter Oh, that's because we have a Filipino saying that whoever (between them) manages to climb up (the stairs) to the house first will be the 'boss'.

Bill Really?

Exercise 8

Answer in complete Tagalog sentences:

1. Ano ang unang tradisyon na binanggit (mentioned) ng tiyo ni Pinky?
2. Sino ang humahalik sa bagong kasal na babae?
3. Bakit binibigyan ng nakabalot na pera ang bagong kasal?
4. Ano ang dahilan (reason) kung bakit tumatakbo ang mag-asawa?

Language skills

3. Sarili ko/aking sarili etc. Reflexive Mismo Intensive

'I myself will do the painting.' 'Letty will feed herself.' 'Liam overworks himself.' All of these examples indicate an action done to or on behalf of the self. The subject is the beneficiary of the action. These are reflexive expressions. The Tagalog word used to express the reflexive is **sarili** (*self, own*). The Tagalog reflexive is used either in connection with a **ng** form personal pronoun (**ko, mo, niya, namin, natin, ninyo** and **nila**) or a **sa** form personal pronoun (**akin, iyo, kaniya, amin, atin, inyo** or **kanila**) plus a **ng** ending. The **sa** form personal pronouns then become: **aking, iyong, kaniyang, aming, ating, inyong** and **kanilang**. Both **ng** and **sa** form personal pronouns can be used interchangeably. There is no hard and fast rule suggesting when **sa** or **ng** can or cannot be used. Look at the following examples given in both forms: **sarili ko/aking sarili = myself**, **sarili mo / iyong sarili, yourself** etc. Here are some example sentences: **Sinaktan niya ang sarili niya, He hurt himself. Huwag mong saktan ang sarili mo, Don't hurt yourself.** However, the word **sarili** may also be used on its own. For example: **Sarili ko ito. This is my own. Sarili ni Steve ang bahay na ito, This house is Steve's own.** When a reflexive phrase is used as a describing word, a **ng** word may be used. For example: **Tumitingin si Mamerta ng sarili niyang retrato, Mamerta is looking at a picture of herself.**

Another way of expressing the reflexive in Tagalog is through the word **mismo**. **Mismo** is a stronger word than **sarili** and so serves to

further stress the personal pronoun that accompanies it. **Mismo** takes a **ng** ending when following a pronoun. For example: **Mismong ako, I myself, mismong sila, they themselves, mismong kami, we ourselves** and so on. When a personal pronoun precedes **mismo**, then **ng** is not used. For example: **Ako mismo, I myself. Siya mismo, he himself. Sila mismo, they themselves** and so on. **Mismo** can also be used with a **sa** form word. For example: **Mismong sa Cubao siya nakatira, It's in Cubao itself that he/she lives.**

Some example sentences:

1. Kinuha niya mismo ang pera sa bangko
He took the money himself from the bank
2. Ako mismo ang sumalubong kay Paul sa paliparan
*I myself went to meet Paul at the airport
(or I went to meet Paul at the airport myself)*
3. Sinaktan niya ang sarili niya
He hurt himself
4. Siya mismo ang tumingin sa akin
It was he himself who examined me

Exercise 9

Supply **mismong** + noun/ pronoun or a pronoun + **mismo** in the blank space: Don't forget the linker **ng** if one is necessary.

1. Sumulat _____ sa akin. (he/she)
2. _____ ang bumili ng pagkain para sa party. (we)
3. Nilinisan _____ ang kotse namin. (they)
4. _____ ba _____ ang nagdala ng mga maleta? (you)
5. _____ ang pumunta sa kasal ni Pinky. (Fred and friends)

Exercise 10

Look at the pictures below while listening to your tape. Can you match the verb with the correct picture?





One-minute phrases

Saan ang punta mo? (*sah-ahn ahng poon-tah moo?*) Meaning where are you going? A very common question in Tagalog. It is not meant to be taken literally, requiring an explanation of where you are going. Rather, it is just another way of saying 'hello' or acknowledging you. It is just another way of making small talk.

Diyan lang (*dyan lahng*) Literally, just there. This phrase is usually used as a polite answer to the question: **Saan ang punta mo?**, *Where are you going?* As **Saan ang punta mo?** it is only a form of saying 'hello' it commonly elicits a simple reply such as **D'yan lang**, *just there*.

Wala nang oras (*wah-lah nahng aw-rahs*) Literally, *no more time*. Meaning *we've run out of time/time is short*. This short phrase can also mean: **Wala nang panahon**, *time has run out*. For example: **Wala nang oras ang mga bisita upang matulog**, *The guests have no time left to go to sleep*.

Maghintayan tayo (*mahg-heen-tah-yahn tah-yaw*) Meaning let's wait for one another. When two people agree to meet one another at an agreed location. For example: **Maghintayan tayo sa harap ng McDonald's sa Kalye Lorenzo**, *Let's wait for one another in front of [the] McDonald's in Lorenzo Street*.

Nag-uurong-sulong (*nahg-oo-oo-lawng soo-lawng*) Literally, *moving backward, moving forward*. Meaning 'hesitating'/'cannot make one's mind up'. For example: **Nag-uurong-sulong si Maria kung pupunta siya sa Palawan bukas**, *Maria cannot make her mind up/ is hesitating as to whether she will go to Palawan tomorrow*.

① Cultural Tip

Filipino weddings are formal occasions and so require formal attire. If invited to be a sponsor at a wedding, remember that it is an honour which carries responsibilities beyond the wedding day itself. The bride and groom look to their sponsors as dependable figures in whom they can rely for advice and other forms of concrete support throughout their married lives. Although Filipino weddings are formal, they are also very festive occasions steeped in many fascinating traditions. Relax, enjoy the experience and remember to make yourself at home!

18 SA ISANG PISTANG BAYAN

At a town fiesta

In this unit you will learn how to

- celebrate the Filipino fiesta
- use the gerund
- handle a water buffalo!

6 Celebrating the Filipino fiesta

Dialogue 1

Bill, Louise and Roy have been invited to a barrio fiesta.

Bill Napakaraming tao sa pistang ito. Maraming dekorasyong palawit sa kalye, sarisaring bandera at talagang makulay ang buong lugar.

Louise Oo nga. Apat raw ang banda at maraming paputok mamayang gabi kapag nagkoronasyon ng reyna ng pistang bayan.

Roy Nagpunta ako sa kabayanan at maraming mga may puwesto. Karamihan ay mga tindang damit at laruan.

Louise Sang-ayon sa meyor mayroon daw reyna ng pistang bayan. Siya ang nanalo sa 'popularity contest.' Mayaman siguro.

Roy Sa parke ay may tsubibo at mga labanan sa basketbol. Meron ding iba't ibang palaro para sa mga bata katulad ng pag-akyat sa kawayan, pagsungkit ng laso, pagsakay sa kalabaw, pagtakbo sa sako, pagkain ng murang niyog at iba pa. Gusto kong manood.

Louise Manood din tayo ng parada. May karosa at ililigid daw ang reyna at ang kaniyang mga abay. Gusto kong makita ang mga kasuotan.

Bill Tayo ay kumbidado sa bahay ng kapitan kasi naghanda raw sila para sa atin. Meron daw litsong baboy.

Roy O sige, pumunta tayo. Gusto kong makakita ng naglilitson.

Bill Oo nga.

Talasalitaan

napakarami(ng)
pista(ng)
dekorasyon(g)
palawit
sarisari(ng)
talagang makulay
buong lugar
kawayan
pagsungkit
paputok
mamayang gabi
kapag
nagkoronasyon
nagpunta
kabayanan
puwesto
karamihan
tinda(ng) damit
ililigid
sang-ayon
reyna
nanalo
mayaman
para sa atin
pistang bayan
parke
tsubibo
labanan
palaro
katulad ng
pag-akyat
pagsakay
pagtakbo

Vocabulary

so many
feast day
decoration
bunting
assorted
really colourful
whole place
bamboo
hooking with a pole
fireworks
tonight
when/during
crowned
went
town
stalls
many of
clothes for sale
will be driven around
according to
queen
won
rich
for us
town fiesta
park
ferris wheel
contest
games
like
climbing
riding
running

sako	sack
pagkain	eating
murang niyog	young coconut
manood	watch
parada	parade
karosa	procession cart
kaniya(ng)	her
mga abay	consorts
kumbidado	invited
kapitan	captain
naghanda	prepared food
pumunta	go

Translation

- Bill** The (town) fiesta is packed with people. The streets are decorated with different kinds of flags and the whole place is really colourful.
- Louise** I agree. I heard that there are four bands and there will be plenty of fireworks tonight during the coronation (of the fiesta queen).
- Roy** I went to the town centre and there are many stalls. Most (of them) are of clothes and toys.
- Louise** According to the mayor there will be a fiesta 'queen'. So she won the popularity contest! Perhaps she's rich.
- Roy** There is a ferris wheel at the park and a basketball contest. There are also children's games like bamboo climbing, hooking the ribbon, riding the water buffalo, sack racing and eating young coconut. I'd like to go and watch.
- Louise** Let's also watch the parade. There is a decorated cart and the 'queen' and her consorts will be driven around (the town). I'd like to see their costumes.
- Bill** We have been invited to the Barrio Captain's house. They have made some preparations (for us). Apparently they are preparing *lechon*.*
- Roy** Okay, let's go. I'd like to be able to see how to cook lechon.
- Bill** I agree.

**Lechon*: a traditional Filipino delicacy

Cooking lechon: A pole is pushed through a freshly slaughtered and cleaned suckling pig. The pig is then roasted on a spit over an open fire. The process takes between four and five hours during which the carcass is regularly turned and periodically daubed with oil to give it a crispy skin.

Exercise 1 Mga tanong: (Questions)

1. Anong uri ng pagdiriwang ang pinuntahan nina Bill?
2. Kailan kokoronahan ang 'reyna'?
3. Anu-ano ang mga tinda sa kabayanan?
4. Sa palagay mo, ano ang mahalaga sa isang popularity contest?
5. Magbigay ng tatlong palaro para sa mga bata.
6. Bakit isasakay sa karosa ang reyna at mga abay?
7. Sino ang nag-imbata sa pamilyang Cook?

Language skills

1. Pag + verb root Ka + verb root + an Ang + verb

No doubt you are familiar with stories from your childhood where frogs were transformed into handsome princes (or was it the other way round?) at the wave of a magic wand. The Tagalog language cannot endow you with magical powers but it too has its own form of magic wand with the ability of transforming verbs into nouns. This process is known as nominalisation, and the resulting word a gerund. This process of transforming verbs into nouns may at first sound rather complex, but is in fact quite simple. Notwithstanding a few exceptions in English, a gerund is basically a nominalised verb ending in 'ing' (i.e. cooking, singing, dancing etc.). In Tagalog, the prefix **pag** is added to a verb stem to produce a gerund. The gerund is commonly used in response to the question word 'how', expressing the manner in which a word is performed. For example: **pag + kanta = pagkanta (singing)**. **Gusto ko ang**

pagkanta mo, *I like your singing*, **pag + sayaw = pagsayaw** (*dancing*). **Ang pagsayaw ang paborito kong libangan**, *Dancing is my favourite pastime*.

Another method of forming a noun from a verb stem is by using the prefix **ka** together with the suffix **an**. **Ka** and **an** sandwich the verb resulting in a nominalised verb. For example: **Ka + galing + an = kagalingan**, *goodness*, **ka + ibig + an = kaibigan**, 'friend' etc. Occasionally, the suffix **an** may become **han** if this makes the word easier to pronounce. For example: **ka + ligaya + han = kaligayahan**, *happiness*. **Ka + ganda + han = kagandahan**, *beauty*. When a verb stem ends with the letter 'd', this letter becomes an 'r' when forming a gerund with **ka + an**. For example: **tamad**, *lazy* = **ka + tamad + an = katamaran**, *laziness*. More examples follow.

Another way of transforming a verb into a noun in Tagalog is simply by placing the word **ang** before the verb (in any tense)! For example: 1) **ang nagsasalita** (the person talking) or *speaker*. **Sino ang nagsasalita?**, *Who is the speaker?*; **ang maglalaba ko** (the person washing clothes for me) *my laundry person*, **Narito na ang maglalaba ko**, *My laundry person is already here*.

Further example sentences:

1. Kami ang mag-aayos ng mga gamit mo
We will be the ones to tidy up your things
2. Maraming kaibigan si Larry
Larry has many friends
3. Kumusta ang pagtulog mo?
How's your sleeping? [how did you sleep?]
4. Gusto ng mga guro ang pagtula ni Doming
The teachers liked Doming's poem recitation
5. Kilala mo ba ang nagsasalita?
Do you know the person talking?
6. Ayaw ni Nanay ang pagsama ni Stephen sa barkada niya
Mother doesn't like Stephen going out [with his gang]
7. Gabi na ang kaniyang pagsimba
His/her churchgoing is/was quite late already
8. Ano ang ipinagbili mo?
What (goods) did you sell?

Exercise 2

Give the **ka + an** form of the following words (remember the rule about verb stems ending with the letter 'd'):

1. palad (*palm*)
Answer:
2. tamad (*lazy*)
Answer:
3. wala (*none*)
Answer:
4. yaman (*rich*)
Answer:
5. bahay (*house*)
Answer:
6. mali (*wrong*)
Answer:

Some commonly nominalised verbs

Pag prefix:

pagkain	<i>eating</i>
pag-alis	<i>leaving</i>
pagtawa	<i>laughing</i>
pagsalita	<i>talking/speaking</i>
paglapit	<i>coming nearer</i>
paglayo	<i>going away</i>
pag-ibig	<i>love</i>

Ka prefix + an suffix:

kahinaan	<i>weakness</i>
kabaitan	<i>kindness</i>
kabutihan	<i>goodness</i>
karapatan	<i>right</i>
karunungan	<i>knowledge</i>
kasinungalingan	<i>lies</i>
katindihan	<i>intensity</i>
kalimitan	<i>frequency</i>
kalalakihan	<i>menfolk</i>
kababaihan	<i>womanhood</i>
katauhan	<i>personality</i>
katarungan	<i>justice</i>
kakayahan	<i>ability</i>

Exercise 3

Fill in the blanks with an appropriate noun from the two preceding lists.

- _____ ay lakas.
- Puro _____ daw ang sinasabi ng mga politiko.
- Dalawa ang pila. Isa sa mga _____ at isa sa mga _____.
- Lahat tayo ay may _____ sa mundong ito.
- Ano ang _____ mo sa trabahong ito?

Exercise 4 Listening and recognising

Listen to the conversation on the tape. You will hear a number of nominalised **pag** and **ka + an** words used. Can you pick out the words used from those listed here?

karapatan	pagngiti
kaligayahan	kasabihan
paglabas	kasunduan
pagpunta	kalimitan
pag-alis	kasalanan
pagsama	pagtawa
kaayusan	pagsulat
kasamaan	pagtalima
pagkain	pagpasok

Dialogue 2

The Cook family continue to enjoy their day out at the barrio Fiesta. Bill is in conversation with one of the guests at the Barrio Captain's house.

Rudy Kumusta *po* kayo? Si Rudy *po* ako. Sana nag-eeenjoy kayo sa aming **pistang bayan**.

Bill Oo. Nagtataka lang ako. Parang gumagastos ang mga tao kapag may **pistang bayan**. Kahit saan ako tumingin, may pagkain at may inumin.

Rudy Ganoon *nga po*. Nag-iipon ng pera ang mga tao sa loob ng isang taon upang **makapaghanda** sa pista.

Bill Hindi yata tama iyan kasi magpapagod ka sa trabaho sa loob ng isang taon pagkatapos gagastusin mo ng

minsanan. Biglang mawawala ang inipon mong pera dahil lang sa pista.

Rudy Totoo iyan subali't kaugalian na ng mga Pilipino iyan. Kapag naubos na ang pera, bahala na!

Bill Ganoon ba?

Rudy Opo. Kadalasan pa *nga* ang iba nangungutang para **makapaghanda** lang.

Bill Mahirap din pala ang kaugaliang ito, ano?

Rudy Talaga – pero sinasabi lang namin – 'bahala na!'

Tulalitaan

pagkatapos
gagastusin
nag-eeenjoy
bigla(ng)
pistang bayan
kahit saan
tumingin
may pagkain
totoo
ganoon nga
nag-iipon ng pera
kapag
sa loob ng
isang taon
upang
makapaghanda
magpapagod
sa trabaho
minsanan
mawawala
ang inipon
dahil lang
subali't
kaugalian
naubos
bahala na
kung minsan
nangungutang
sinasabi lang

Vocabulary

afterwards
will be spent
enjoying
suddenly
town fiesta
anywhere
look
there is food
true
really like that
saving money
if/when
in(side)
one year
in order to
be able to prepare
to become tired
at work
in one go
will disappear
the savings
just because of
but
custom
finished
come what may
sometime
borrow money
just say

Translation

Rudy How are you sir? I'm Rudy. I hope you're enjoying our town fiesta.

Bill Yes (I am). I'm just wondering. It looks as though people like to spend money when there is a fiesta. Everywhere I look there is food and drink.

Rudy It's really like that. People save money all year in order to enjoy the fiesta.

Bill I'm not sure that's a good idea because people work very hard at work all year just to spend (their earnings) in one go. Their savings suddenly disappear just because of the fiesta.

Rudy That's true but that's already a Filipino custom. When the money happens to run out, leave it to destiny!

Bill Is that so?

Rudy Yes. Often times others even borrow money just to prepare.

Bill This custom is rather difficult, isn't it?

Rudy Indeed – but we just say '*bahala na*'. (see cultural tip)

Exercise 5

Which of the following statements are true? If the statement is false, can you give the correct answer in Tagalog?

1. Ayaw gumastos ng mga tao kapag may pistang bayan.
2. Nag-iipon ang mga tao ng pera upang bumili ng kalabaw.
3. Unti-unti nilang ginagastos ang perang inipon nila.
4. Mabuting kaugalian ang magdiwang ng pista.
5. Mabuti para sa lahat ng tao ang pista.

Exercise 6: Listening & Speaking

On your way to a fiesta, you meet some friends on the road. You stop to have a chat before continuing. Use the suggestions to help you fill out your part of the dialogue. Use the tape to practise the dialogue:

Nonoy Kaibigan, kumusta ba? Dadalo ka ba sa pista?

Ikaw (Say yes, we are going to the fiesta)

Nonoy Marami nang tao doon. Mahilig ka bang sumayaw?

Ikaw (Tell him you like dancing very much)

Nonoy Mabuti!! Maganda ang tugtog at may pagkain din.

Ikaw (Ask him where the food and drinks are being sold)

Nonoy Doon, malapit sa Munisipyo.

Ikaw (Thank him and invite him to join you)

Nonoy Hindi na, salamat. Busog na ako.

Magkita na lang tayo mamaya, sa sayawan.

Ikaw (Tell him that you will look for him)

Nonoy O, sigé. Paalam na kaibigan!

Ikaw (Goodbye)

Language skills**2. Maki, Makipag, Makipang****Participational verb forms in active verbs**

Tagalog reserves a special group of verb forms to express actions done collectively or requiring the participation of others. These verb forms are known as participational or social verbs. Social verbs are characterised by the prefix **maki** for **um** and **ma** verbs, by **makipag** for **mag** verbs, and finally by **makipang** for **mang** verbs. Since participational verbs are actor focused (i.e., with the emphasis on the 'doer' of the action), it follows logically that they only take active verbs. For example: **Makiupo tayo doon**, *Let's share the seat over there*. **Nakikipaglaro ka ba sa mga bagong kapitbahay?**, *Do you play with the new neighbours?* **Kahapon, nakipamaril sina John**, *Yesterday, John went shooting* (with others). In some cases, when the 'doer' of the action takes part in an activity previously initiated by another person, this is expressed by means of the **sa** form. For example: **Nag-swimming sila sa ilog**; (prior action) **nakipagswimming ako sa kanila**, *They went swimming in the river; I went swimming with them*. **Kumakain sila ng pansit; nakikain ako sa kanila**. *They were eating noodles; I ate with them*.

How to form participational verbs**Maki (source um verbs)**

Maki (prefix) + bili (verb root) *buy*
 maki + bili = makibili *to buy with* = infinitive
 maki + ki + bili = makikibili *will buy with* = future
 naki + ki + bili = nakikibili *buying with* = present
 naki + bili = nakibili *bought with* = past

Makipag (source mag verbs)

Makipag (prefix) + laro (verb root) *to play with* = infinitive
 maki + ki + pag + laro = makikipaglaro *will play with* = future
 naki + ki + pag + laro = nakikipaglaro *playing with* = present
 naki + pag + laro = nakipaglaro *played with* = past

Makipang (source mang verbs)

Makipang becomes makipam (prefix) + balita (drop b) = alita
 makipam + alita = makipamalita *to share news with* = infinitive
 makiki + pa + ma + lita = makikipamalita *will share news with*
 = future
 nakiki + pa + ma + lita = nakikipamalita *sharing news with*
 = present
 naki + pa + ma + lita = nakipamalita *shared news with* = past

Sentence variations

Verb + actor + social counterpart
 Nakikipag-away si Joselito kay Toto
Joselito is quarrelling/ fighting with Toto.

Pseudo-verb + verb + actor + social counterpart
 Ayaw makipag-usap ni Will kay Gladys.
Will doesn't want to talk to Gladys.

Question word + verb + Social counterpart + Time
 Sino ang makikipagsayaw sa akin mamaya?
Who will dance with me later on?

Exercise 7

Translate the following into Tagalog:

1. Auntie Marge will be eating with them tonight. (kumain)
2. Where did you ask for a seat? (maupo)
3. Are you going shopping with Auntie Dot? (mamili)
4. Jose is getting into a fight again. (mag-away)
5. I'm still talking with Janet. (mag-usap)

A few participational verbs indicate a request to use other people's facilities:

makikain	<i>to ask to share some food with</i>
makiinom	<i>to request a drink</i>
makisindi	<i>to request a light</i>
makitulog	<i>to request to share sleeping facilities of</i>
makihiga	<i>to request to share resting facilities of</i>
makisuyo	<i>to request to do something for</i>
makipagluto	<i>to request to use cooking facilities of</i>
makitawag	<i>to request to use the telephone of</i>
makisakay	<i>to request to use other people's transport</i>
makiangkas	<i>to request a lift</i>

Sentences in **maki** (remember that requests and suggestions use the infinitive form):

1. Maaari po ba kaming makiinom?
Could we ask for a drink?
2. Puwede bang makiupo si Kim dito?
Could Kim sit here?
3. Puwede bang makipamasyal kami sa inyo?
Could we take a stroll with you?
4. Maaari bang makisakay kami hanggang sa bayan?
Could we kindly have a lift to the town?
5. Puwede bang huwag kang manigarilyo dito?
Could you not smoke here?
6. Makisindi ka sa lalaking iyon.
Ask for a light from that man.

Some reciprocal social verbs:

makipag-away	to fight with
makipagtalo	to argue with
makipaglaban	to fight with
makipag-usap	to converse with
makipagkamay	to shake hands with
makipaghiwalay	to separate from

Example sentences:

1. Nakikipag-away na naman si Matthew
Matthew is fighting again
2. Nakipagtalo si Sue sa opisyal
Sue argued with the official
3. Gusto kong makipag-usap sa iyo nang masinsinan
I want to talk to you seriously
4. Nakipagkamay si Lennard sa kaniyang kalaban
Lennard shook hands with his opponent
5. Ayaw makipaghiwalay ni Anto sa asawa niya
Anto doesn't like to separate from his wife

Exercise 8

Change the following sentences into either a request or suggestion (remember to change the actor or the time element):

Example: Makikitawag ako sa telepono bukas.

Request form: Maaari bang makitawag ako sa telepono bukas?

1. Nakipag-usap kami kay Ginoong Reyes.
2. Nakitulog ako sa kanila.
3. Nakikipag-away kayo sa mga bata.
4. Makikisakay kami kina Baby.
5. Nakikipagluto ang mga bisita dito.

Handling a water buffalo!

Dialogue 3

Bill, Louise and Roy are visiting a farm in the barrio. Roy is learning how to handle the carabao (water buffalo).

Roy Ganito ba ang paghawak sa renda ng kalabaw? *Baka suwagin ako nito.*

Klko Puwede na sa unang beses. *Hindi, mabait iyan. Hindi ka susuwagin niyan. Hawakan mo nang maluwap. Ganiyan nga. Tapos medyo kausapin mo siya. Sabihin mo rin sa kaniya 'Tsk...Tsk...Tsk' kung gusto mo siyang lumakad.*

Roy Ganoon lang pala. Uulitin ko. Ganito ba? 'Tsk...Tsk...Tsk...'

Klko Oo, ganiyan. Magaling ka palang humawak ng kalabaw. Kung gusto mo, sumakay ka.

Roy May kaunti akong karanasan noong nagtrabaho ako sa isang sabsaban ng kabayo sa Inglatera.

Klko Ganoon ba, kaya pala madali kang matuto!

Roy *Hindi* ba higit na mahirap ang humawak ng kabayo.

Klko *Hindi* naman.

Roy Sasabihin ko sa mga kaibigan ko na nakahawak ako ng kalabaw. Puwede mo ba akong kunan ng retrato?

Klko Bakit *hindi*?

Roy Salamat. Teka, kukunin ko lang ang kamera ko sa bahay.

Klko O, siges.

Talasalitaan

ganito
ang paghawak
renda
baka
suwagin
nito
higit
sa unang beses

Vocabulary

like this
how to hold
reins
might
gore (bull)
this (ng form)
more
for a first time

ang paghawak	handling
hawakan	hold
niyan	that (ng form)
karanasan	experience
nagtrabaho	worked
sabsaban	stable
kabayo	horse
kaya pala	no wonder
madali(ng)	easily
matuto	to learn
mahirap	difficult
sasabihin	will tell
nang maluwig	loosely
ganiyan	like that
medyo	sort of
kung gusto mo(ng)	if you want
lumakad	to walk/ move
kausapin	talk to
sabihin	tell/ say
sa kaniya	to him/ her
uulitin	will repeat
magaling	good at/ clever
nakahawak	managed to handle
kunan	take
bakit hindi	why not
teka	just a moment
kukumin	will get/ fetch
sumakay	ride

Translation

Roy Kiko, is this how to hold the reins of the carabao? He won't try to swipe me, will he?

Kiko Not bad for a first timer. No, he's a good-natured carabao. He won't charge you. (Just) Hold him loosely. Yes, just like that. Talk to him too. Just say "Tsk... Tsk... Tsk" if you want him to move.

Roy Ah! So it's that easy. Let me try: Like this? "Tsk...Tsk...Tsk..."

Kiko Yes! Just like that. You're very good at handling a carabao. If you like, you can even ride him.

Roy I've got a little bit of experience from when I used to work at a stable back in England.

Kiko Is that so? No wonder you are learning so quickly!

Exercise 9

Answer the following questions:

1. Ano ang ginagawa ni Roy?
2. Ano ang dapat (should) niyang gawin (do) upang (so that) hindi siya suwagin ng kalabaw?
3. Maari bang sumakay si Roy sa kalabaw?
4. Ano ang dahilan (reason) at magaling si Roy sumakay ng kalabaw?

Language skills

3. Ganito Like this

Ganiyan Like that

Ganoon Like that (over there)

In our dialogue, Roy Cook was learning how to handle a water buffalo or carabao. He asked Kiko to comment on how well he was doing. You may have noticed the words: **ganito**, *like this*, **ganiyan**, *like that*, **ganoon**, *like that (over there)*. These words are commonly used in Tagalog in connection with the demonstration of an action. On most occasions, **ganito**, **ganiyan** and **ganoon** are used together with a gerund. For example: **Ganito ba ang paghiwa ng sibuyas?**, *Is this how onions are cut?* **Ganiyan ang pagpinta ng dingding**, *That's (the way) to paint the wall.* **Ganoon ang sinabi ni Dave**, *Dave said something like that.* The words **ganito**, **ganiyan** and **ganoon** may also be used in situations where two objects are compared. When this happens, then the stem of the adjective is prefixed by the letters **ka**. For example: **ka + layo** (from **malayo** far = **kalayo**) **Ganito ba kahaba ang tali ng kahon?**, *Is the string of the box as long as this?* **Ganiyan kaganda ang bulaklak na rosas**, *The rose is as beautiful as that.* **Ganoon kalaki ang mapa ng Cebu**, *The map of Cebu is as big as that.*

Sentence variations in the use of ganito, ganiyan, and ganoon.

Qualifier + ganiyan + gerund + object
 Hindi ganiyan ang pagsulat ng abakada
That's not how to write the ABC / Writing the ABC is not like that

Ganito + particle + comparison + subject/topic
 Ganito pala kalayo ang baryo ninyo
So your barrio is as far as this

Qualifier ganoon comparison subject/topic
 Walang ganoon kasarap ang luto ni Aling Puring
Nothing like that is as tasty as Aling Puring's cooking

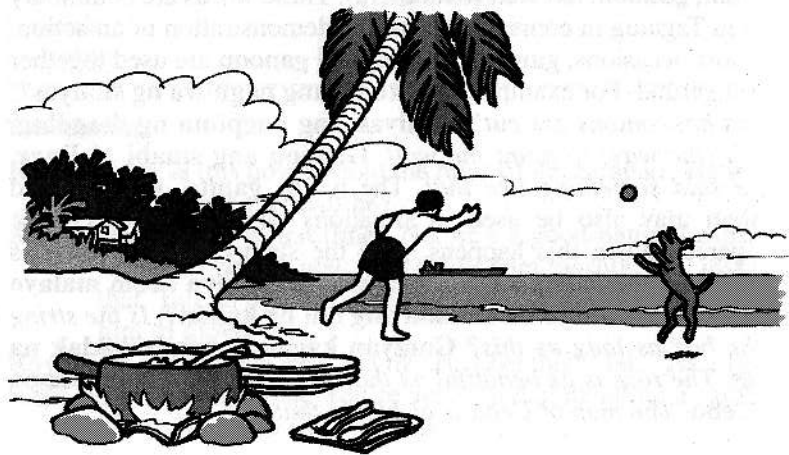
Exercise 10

Reorganise the following into coherent Tagalog sentences:

1. sa amin kabait ganoon si Ginoong Cruz.
2. ba ng silyang rattan ganito ang paggawa?
3. ang pagsara paano ng kahong ito?
4. ang pagluto hindi ng adobo ba ganito?
5. sa akin mo ang pagtugtog sabihin ng himig (piece) na ito.

Exercise 11

Look at the picture. Which of the words best describes the articles listed beneath it? Use **ganito**, **ganiyan** or **ganoon** as your answer.



apoy	_____
aso	_____
bata	_____
kaldero	_____
barko	_____
kutsara	_____
bola	_____
ulap	_____
tinidor	_____
punong niyog	_____
bahay	_____
pinggan	_____

One-minute phrases

Saka na lang (*sah-kah nah lahng*) Literally, *later already just*. Meaning later on. This phrase is commonly used to indicate that something has been postponed. For example: **Saka na lang tayo mamasyal**, *Why don't we just take [our] stroll later on*.

Baka sakali (*bah-kah sah-kah-lee*) Literally, *might perhaps*. This Tagalog phrase is similar in meaning to the English expression 'just in case'. It denotes the need to be prepared. For example, **Maghanda tayo at baka sakaling dumating ang mga bisita**, *Let us make some preparations in case the visitors arrive*.

At sa wakas (*aht sah wah-kahs*) Literally, *and at the end*. Similar to the English exclamation 'At last!'. For example: **At sa wakas, dumating din ang lolo at lola**, *At last, grandfather and grandmother [have finally] arrived!*

Ako ang bahala (*ah-kaw ahng bah-hah-lah*) Meaning, *I will take responsibility*. This Tagalog phrase is similar in meaning to the English expression 'Don't worry, leave it all to me'.

Masyadong magulo (*mahs-yah-dawng mah-goo-law*) Meaning, *very messy/ entangled*. This expression is used to express lack of clarity in another person's words or explanations. Sometimes it is used in connection with a troublemaker. For example: **Masyadong magulo ang usapan ng mga politiko sa Congress**, *The conversation of the politicians in Congress is rather messy*.

i Cultural Tip

Certain Filipino traits may sometimes be open to misinterpretation by the foreigner. One such trait is the common Filipino attitude of *bahala na* * (literally, *it's up to God*). At first glance, this could be understood as an attitude of fatalism or resignation in the face of difficulties or decisions. The Filipino could be accused of giving up too quickly. While this may be valid interpretation in some circumstances, it is not always necessarily the case. Filipino society is an intricate web of interdependent relationships which carry mutual obligations. Within these relationships, when expectations are not fulfilled or realised, the frustration experienced may result in the *bahala na* attitude surfacing. Rather than confront the source of the frustration, the Filipino shrugs his or her shoulders and says 'just let it be'. Avoidance may seem to be wiser move than open or direct confrontation of circumstances beyond his or her control. (* **Bathala** is an ancient Filipino name for god, pre-dating the Christian era.)

19

ANG BUHAY SA BARYO

Life in the barrio

In this unit you will learn how to

- live in the barrio
- help on the farm
- use causative verbs

Living in the barrio

Dialogue 1

Bill, Louise and Roy Cook are enjoying their stay with Kiko and his family.

Louise Tingnan mo ang mga **punong-kahoy**. Nagpapaganda ang mga ito sa paligid ng **bahay**.

Bill Oo nga. Ganoon din ang mga iba't ibang halaman. Meron silang sampagita, rosal at malaking puno ng ilangilang. Nagpapabango ang mga ito sa kapaligiran.

Roy Alam ba ninyo na may maliit na palaisdaan si **Kiko**? Nagpapalaki siya ng bangus. Sumunod kayo sa akin, ituturo ko sa inyo.

Louise Madali lang tayo kasi nagpaluto ng mga kakanin si **Kiko** at ang asawa niya. Nagpa-akyat din sila ng murang niyog para sa inumin.

Bill Anu-anong mga kakanin?

Louise Bibobilo, bibingka, *kutsinta* at diladila.

Roy Masarap ang bibobilo lalo na kung may pansit.

Bill Talaga! Ito ang buhay.

Talasalitaan

tingnan
 mga punong-kahoy
 nagpapaganda
 paligid
 kakanin
 nagpapa-akyat
 mura(ng) niyog
 iba't iba(ng)
 halaman
 Sampagita
 rosal
 ilangilang
 nagpapabango
 kapaligiran
 alam
 palaisdaan
 nagpapalaki
 bangus
 sumunod sa akin
 ituturo
 madali
 lang
 nagpaluto
 anu-ano(ng)
 kakanin
 bilobilo
 bibingka
 kutsinta
 dila-dila

Vocabulary

look
fruit trees
making (something) pretty
around
rice cakes
asking someone to climb
young coconut
different kinds
plants
sampagita (the national flower)
gardenia
ilangilang
making (something) fragrant
surroundings
know
fish pond
making (something) grow
milkfish
follow me
will show/point
easy
only
caused someone to cook
what (plural)
rice cakes (local delicacies)
a delicacy (marble-shaped)
a delicacy (see page 112)
a delicacy
a delicacy (tongue-shaped)

Translation

Louise Look at the fruit trees. They make a beautiful sight around the house.

Bill Oh yes. It's the same with the different types of plants. They even have sampaguita, rosal and a very large ilang-ilang tree. They make the surrounding (area) smell fragrant.

Roy Did you know that Kiko also has a small fish pond? He is trying to raise milkfish. Why not come along with me and I'll show you (the fishpond).

Louise We have to be quick because Kiko and his wife have cooked some delicacies (for us). He's also asked someone to pick some young coconuts for us to drink.

Bill What kind of rice cakes are they?

Louise Bilobilo, bibingka, kutsinta and dila-dila.

Roy Bilobilo is delicious, especially with noodles.

Bill I agree! This is the life!

Exercise 1

Using Dialogue 1, answer the following questions in Tagalog:

1. Ano ang nagpapaganda sa paligid ng bahay?
2. Magbigay ng mababangong halaman na alam mo.
3. Ano ang ginawa ni Kiko upang magpalaki ng isda?
4. Bakit kailangang magmadali ang pamilya Cook?
5. Ipaliwanag kung bakit sinabi ni Bill 'Ito ang buhay'!



Language skills:

1. Magpa + Active To cause, to let, to have, to permit to ask, to make etc.

'Tessie is *letting* the corn dry'. 'I will *allow* Elvira to cook tonight'. 'Bob will *let* the tomatoes grow in his garden.' 'I'll *ask* Lagring to sew a dress for me.' 'Why don't you *make* Erwin clean your car?' 'Amado *permitted* me to walk'. All of the italicised words in these sentences are examples of indirect action verbs, also known as causatives. Tagalog uses causative verbs to point to an action performed by another person. In active verb sentences the causative is preceded by an **ang** form word. For example, **Nagpadala si Samantha ng regalo sa akin**, *Samantha sent some gifts to me*. **Nagpagawa sina Kim at Sue ng garahe**, *Kim and Sue had a garage built*. **Magpapasama ako kina Rosie at Aida sa ospital**, *I'll ask Rosie and Aida to accompany me to the hospital*. Notice that the **ang** form does not indicate the identity of the person actually performing the action, but rather, it indicates the identity of the one causing, letting, having, asking, making or permitting the action to be performed. The action is therefore said to be indirect or 'caused' by the other.

Dialogue 1 offers us a few examples: **nagpapaganda** (from **ganda**, *beautiful*) meaning 'making something beautiful', **nagpapabango** (from **bango**, *fragrant*) meaning 'making something fragrant', **nagpaluto** (from **luto**, *cook*) had someone cook something, **nagpapa-akyat** (from **akyat**, *climb*) having someone climb (in this case, a tree). With active verbs, the causative is easily recognised by the prefix **magpa** followed by the verb. In **magpa** causatives, the causer is identified in the **ang** form (**si**, **sina**, **ako**, **ka**, **siya**, **kami**, **tayo**, **kayo**, **silang** etc.) while the caused (i.e., the person caused/asked/led to perform the action) is identified in the **sa** form (**kay**, **kina**, **sa akin**, **sa iyo**, **sa kaniya**, **sa amin**, **sa atin**, **sa inyo**, **sa kanila** etc.) The object (which may be optional) is the **ng** form.

In order to avoid confusion, it is worth noting that some **mag** form verbs beginning with the letters **pa** may be mistakenly identified as causatives, even though they don't carry a causative meaning.

These verbs are commonly known as dead **pa** verbs. For example: **paalam** (*goodbye*), **magpaalam**, *to say goodbye*. **Nagpaalam ka ba kay Jayne?**; *Did you say goodbye to Jayne?*, **parusa** (*punishment*) **magparusa**, *to punish*. **Sino ang nagparusa sa magnanakaw?**, *Who punished the burglar?*, **palabas** (*show*) **magpalabas**, *to give a show*. **Nagpapalabas na sila sa oras na ito**, *They have already started the show at this time*, **pakana** (*plan*) **magpakana**, *to plan*. **Nagpapakana na ang meyor ng programa para sa pista**, *The mayor is already planning the programme for the fiesta*.

Three important rules in the **magpa** causative form:

1. The causer is in the **ang** form.
2. The caused is in the **sa** form.
3. The object (optional) is in the **ng** form.

Some example sentences

Nagpapabili ako (causer) **kay Stewart** (caused) **ng kamatis at sibuyas** (object) **sa palengke** (place) **I had Stewart buy some tomatoes and onions for me**.

Changing the tense of the Magpa verb:

magpa (prefix) + **um** verb root:

Magpa + bili = **magpabili** *to have* etc. *someone buy* = infinitive
Magpa + pa + bili = **magpapabili** *will have* etc. *someone buy* = future
Nagpa + pa + bili = **nagpapabili** *having* etc. *someone to buy* = present
Nagpa + bili = **nagpabili** *had* etc. *someone to buy* = past

magpa (prefix) + **mag** verb root:

Magpa + luto = **magpaluto** *to cause* etc. *to cook* = infinitive
Magpa + pa + luto = **magpapaluto** *will cause* etc. *to cook* = future
Nagpa + pa + luto = **nagpapaluto** *causing* etc. *to cook* = present
Nagpa + luto = **nagpaluto** *caused* etc. *to cook* = past

Some sentence variations in magpa causative:

Verb + causer + caused + object + time etc.
Magpapaluto ako kay Jamie ng pansit bukas.
I will ask Jamie to cook Filipino noodles tomorrow

Verb + particle + causer + caused
 Nagpapaganda raw ang make-up sa mukha ng babae.
It is said that make-up makes a woman's face beautiful

Question word causer + verb + object + caused
 Bakit kayo nagpapabili ng pagkain sa kanila?
Why are you asking them to buy food?


Verb + actor + time
 Nagpalabas sila kagabi
They put on a show last night

Exercise 2

Can you change the following into **magpa** sentences?

1. Kumukuha ako ng libro sa kanila.
2. Maglalabas ba tayo ng silya?
3. Nagpasok ba si Henry ng mga maleta kanina?
4. Saan ka bumibili ng gulay at prutas?
5. Bumasa siya ng aklat sa klase.

Exercise 3 *Listening, speaking and understanding*

 Your friend Edgar has invited you to attend his birthday party. It is the first time you have attended a Filipino birthday party and you are keen to watch and see what happens. Listen to the tape. Imagine that it is you who are speaking.

1. How many **magpa** causative verbs can you recognise?
2. Your friend arrives late and wants to know what has been happening. Listen again to the tape and respond to each of your friend's questions.

Helping on the farm

Dialogue 2

The Cook family are giving their hosts a hand on the farm.

Bill Anong oras sa umaga ninyo pinakakain ang inyong baboy? **Ako** na lang ang magpapakain, **Kiko**.

Kiko O sige, bahala ka. Pinakakain ko sila sa mga alas siyete nang umaga. Kasabay ng aming almusal. **Ako** kadalasan ang nagpapakain sa kanila.

Bill Gusto mo bang pakainin ko rin ang mga manok?

Roy **Ako** na lang ang magpapakain sa mga manok.

Kiko Kumain muna tayo ng almusal. Pinagluto ko na si **Misis** ng ating aalmusalin.

Bill Okey lang.

Talasalitaan

ang mga manok
 sa umaga
 pinakakain
 magpapakain
 pinagluto
 aalmusalin
 kasabay
 aming almusal
 kadalasan
 nagpapakain
 gusto mo ba(ng)
 pakainin
 magpapakain

Vocabulary

the chickens
in the morning
give food/feed
will feed
asked to cook
what someone's having for breakfast
at the same time
our breakfast
often
give them food
would you like
to serve/feed
will cause to eat

Translation

Bill What time in the morning do you have to feed your pigs? Could I feed them?

Kiko Well all right, it's up to you. I feed them at around 7.00 in the morning, at [about] the same time [as] we have our breakfast. Usually I feed them myself.

Bill Would you like me feed the chickens too?

Roy Could I feed the chickens?

Kiko Let's eat our breakfast first. I've already asked my wife to prepare our breakfast.

Bill That's OK by me.

Exercise 4

Answer the following questions:

1. Ano ang gustong gawin ni Bill?
2. Sino ang madalas nagpapakain sa mga baboy?
3. Ano ang gustong pakainin ni Roy?
4. Bakit kailangan muna nilang kumain ng almusal?

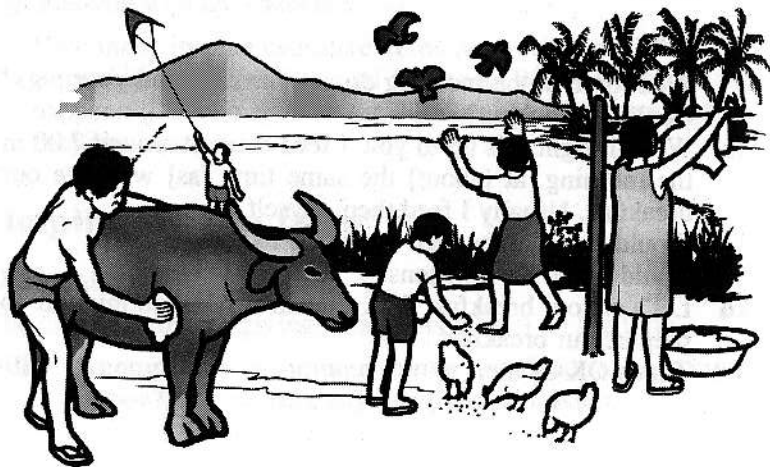
Exercise 5

Following the English as closely as possible, translate the following into Tagalog:

1. ... will have someone write a letter...
2. ... had someone clean the car...
3. ... asking someone to sew a dress...
4. ... having someone to cut [my] hair...
5. ... making yourself beautiful...

Exercise 6

Look at the picture of a typical rural Filipino. Using **magpa** and **pa-in**, **pag-in** and **pang-in** words, create a present tense sentence to describe each of the actions you can see. For example: **Nagpapaligo si Mang Kiko ng kalabaw sa ilog.** 'Mang Kiko is washing the carabao in the river.' Use the word stems provided to help you.



ligo	lipad	kain	alis	tuyo
------	-------	------	------	------

Language skills

2. Pa-in (ma/um verb roots), papag-in (mag verb roots), pang-in (mang verb roots)

Having managed to digest the basics of **magpa** causative verbs (causer = **ang** form, caused = **sa** form), you will be delighted to hear that there are other variations and forms of causative verbs, too! Look at the simple explanation that follows. You will soon notice that in these causative variations, the person permitting or causing the action is identified in the **ng** form (**ni, nina, ko, mo, niya, namin, natin, ninyo, nila**) while the person caused to act (the 'doer' of the action) is in the **ang** form (**si sina, ako, ka/ikaw, siya, kami, tayo, kayo, sila**). Note also that these variations are used in connection with active verbs.

Other causative forms

Ma and um verbs

Prefix **pa** + verb root + suffix **in**.

For example **pa + tulug + in = patulugin**, to cause someone to sleep
 Patutulugin(verb) ni Tessie (causer) ang bata (caused)
Tessie will put the child to sleep

Mag verbs

Prefix **papag** + verb root + suffix **in**.

For example **papag + lutu + in = papaglutu** to have someone cook
 Pinapagluto (verb) kami (caused) ng guro (causer) sa klase namin
Our teacher had us cook in our class

Mang verbs

Prefix **papang** + verb root + suffix **in**.

For example **papang + ibig + in = papangibigin** to cause/permit to pay court to
 Pinapangibig (verb)ng Lola (causer) si Ian (caused) kay Karen
Lola is permitting Ian to pay court to Karen

Four important rules to remember in the **pa-in**, **papag-in**, **papang-in** causative form:

1. The causer is the **ng** form.
2. The caused is the **ang** form.
3. The object (which can be optional) is another **ng** form.
4. There may be a receiver of the action which is a **sa** form.

Example sentences

pa-in Pinabili (verb) ng guro (causer) ang mga estudyante (caused) ng aklat (object) *The teacher asked/had/caused the student to buy a book.*

papag-in Papaglabahin (verb) natin (causer) sila (caused) mamaya (time). *We will have/make them wash clothes later.*

papang-in Papamamalantsahin (verb) mo (causer) ba (particle) si Dorothy (caused)? *Will you have/ask Dorothy to iron clothes?*

Changing the tense of the pa-in, papag-in, papang-in verb:

Pa (prefix) + verb root + **in** (suffix) Origin: **ma/um** verbs
 pa + higa + in = pahigain *to make* etc. *someone lie down* = infinitive
 pa + hi + higa + in = pahihigain *will make* etc. *someone lie down* = future

p + in + a + hi + higa pinahihiga *making* etc. *someone lie down* = present

p + in + a + higa = pinahiga *made* etc. *someone lie down* = past

Papag (prefix) + verb root + **in** (suffix) Origin: **mag** verbs
 Papag + linis + in = papaglinisin *to make* etc. *someone to clean* = infinitive

Papag + li + linis + in = papaglilinisin *will make* etc. *someone to clean* = future

P+ in+a +pa+pag+linis = pinapapaglinis *making* etc. *someone to clean* = present

P + in + a + pag + linis = pinapaglinis *made* etc. *someone to clean* = past

Papang (prefix) + verb root + **in** (suffix) Origin: **mang** verbs
 Papang+isda+in = papangisdain *to permit* etc. *someone to fish* = infinitive

Papangi+ngisda+in = papangingisdain *will permit* etc. *someone to fish* = future

P+in+a+pa+pang+isda = pinapapangisda *permitting* etc. *someone to fish* = present

P+in+a+pang+isda = pinapangisda *permitted* etc. *someone to fish* = past


Some sentence variations in pa-in, papag-in, papang-in causative

Verb	+	causer	+	caused	+	object
Pabilhin		ni Tony		si Mario		ng aklat
<i>Tony will ask Mario to buy a book</i>						


Question marker	+	caused	+	causer	+	object	+	time
Sino		ang pinaglaba		ni Rene		ng kumot		kahapon?
<i>Whom did Rene ask to wash the bedsheets yesterday?</i>								

Verb	+	causer	+	caused	+	place
Pinapapangisda		ng gobyerno		ang mga mangingisda		sa lugar na ito.
<i>The government allows the fishermen to fish in this area</i>						

Exercise 7 Listening, speaking and understanding

 Listen to the tape. You will hear a number of statements, each read out three times. Two of the statements use the incorrect verb form while one of the statements uses correct verb form (**pa-in**, **papag-in**, **papang-in**). Which of the statements is correct? Repeat the correct verb form aloud, then translate into English.

Dialogue 3

 Roy and Bill are giving Kiko more help on the farm.

Bill Kiko, tutulongan ka namin sa pagtatanim. Narito rin si Roy.

Kiko Salamat. Ipalalagay ko kay Roy ang damo sa sako.

Bill Gusto mo bang ipatapon ko ang mga damo?

Kiko Mabuti. Ipapipitas ko rin sa kaniya ang mga hinog na guyabano. At saka, maaari bang palagyan ko kay Roy ng tubig ang mga banga? Kailangan ang tubig para sa inumin ng mga hayop.

Bill Sige lang. Mabuti at makatutulong siya dito. Pinagamasan mo ba ang iyong palayan? Mukhang malinis ito.

Kiko Oo. Oo nga pala, uminom muna tayo ng sabaw ng murang niyog.

Bill Mabuting ideya. O, heto na si Roy.

Talasalitaan

tutulungan
pagtatanim
narito
ipalalagay
makatutulong
ipatapon
damo
mukhang malinis
ipapipitas
hinog
guyabano
at saka
maaari
palagyan
banga
hayop
pinagamasan
palayan
oo nga pala
sabaw
mura(ng)
niyog
ideya

Vocabulary

will help
planting
here
will cause to put
will be able to help
to cause to throw
grass
looks quite clean
will have something picked
ripe
sour sap
and
can/possible
to ask to be put
earthen pot
animal
had it cleaned
rice field
by the way
thin soup
young
coconut
idea

Translation

Bill Kiko, we're going to help you with the planting. Roy is coming as well.

Kiko Thank you. I'm going to ask Roy to put the grass in the sacks.

Bill Shall I get Roy to throw the grass away?

Kiko Yes, that's a good idea. I will have him pick the ripe guyabanos too. Can I ask Roy to put some water into the earthen pots? The animals need water to drink.

Bill All right. (It's) Good that he'll be able to help here. Did you have the field cleaned up? It looks quite clean.

Kiko Yes. By the way, let's have some coconut juice to drink.

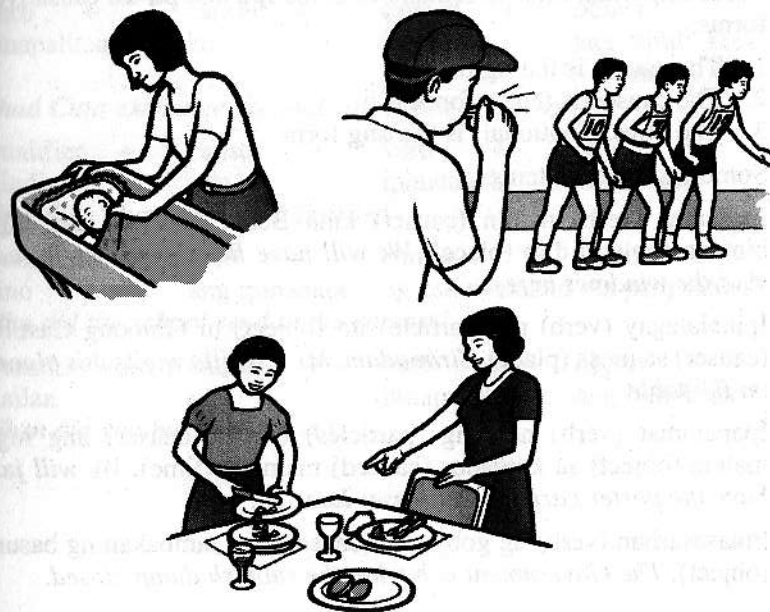
Bill Good idea. Thank you. Here comes Roy.

Exercise 8 Sagutin

1. Ano ang ipalalagay ni Kiko sa sako?
2. Sino ang magtatapon ng damo?
3. Bakit kailangang pitasin na ang guyabano?
4. Bakit sila naglalagay ng tubig sa banga?
5. Saan kinukuha ang sabaw ng niyog?

Exercise 9

Here are some familiar daily activities. Can you identify the causative verb?



Languages skills

3. Ipa (in and i verbs), pa-an (an verbs) To cause, to let, to let, to make, to allow to have, to permit

The causative in passive verb sentences is easily recognised by the prefix **ipa** for **in** and **i** verbs, and the prefix / suffix **pa-an** for **an** verbs. The **ipa** and **pa-an** causatives both take the **ng** form when identifying the causer while using the **sa** form to identify the person caused to perform the action. In **ipa** and **pa-an** sentences, the object is identified by the **ang** form. Let's look at some example sentences:

ipa + tapon = ipatapon, to cause to be thrown
Ipatatapon ni Ginang Cruz kay Henry ang mga lumang kahon
Mrs Cruz will have Henry throw out the old boxes

ipa + bili = ipabili, to cause to be bought
Ipabibili ko kay Abner ang mga kailangan ko sa pagtuturo
I will have Abner buy my teaching materials

Three important rules to remember in the **ipa** and **pa-an** causatives forms:

1. The causer is the **ng** form.
2. The caused is the **sa** form.
3. The object (optional) is the **ang** form.

Some example sentences:

Ipasasara (verb) namin (causer) kina Bebot (caused) ang mga bintana (object) dito (place). *We will have Bebot and her friends shut the windows here.*

Ipinalalagay (verb) po (particle) ito (object) ni Ginoong Castillo (causer) sa mesa (place). *Sir/madam, Mr. Castillo wants this placed on the table.*

Ipapabuhat (verb) na lang (particles) namin (causer) ang mga maleta (object) sa kargador (caused) mamaya (time). *We will just have the porter carry the suitcases later on.*

Pinasasarhan (verb) ng gobyerno (causer) ang tambakan ng basura (object). *The Government is having the rubbish dump closed.*

Gusto (pseudo-verb) mo (causer) ba[ng] (particle) palagyan (verb) ng asukal (object) ang kape (receiver of the action)? *Would you like some sugar (to be put) in the coffee?*

*Note: The **an** verb takes a **ng** object as well as actor.

Changing the tense of the Ipa and Pa-an causatives:

Ipa (prefix) + (**in** and **i** verb root)

ipa + tapon = ipatapon to cause etc. to be thrown = infinitive

ipa + ta + tapon ipatatapon will cause etc. to be thrown = future

ipi + na + ta + tapon ipinatatapon causing etc. to be thrown = present

ipi + na + tapon inpinatapon was caused etc. to be thrown = past

Pa (prefix) + (verb root) + **an** (suffix)

pa + hugas + an pahugasan to cause etc. to be washed = infinitive

pa + hu + hugas + an pahuhugasan will cause etc. to be washed = future

pina + hu + hugas + an pinahuhugasan causing etc. to be washed = present

pina + hugas + an pinahugasan caused etc. to be washed = past

Some sentence variations in the ipa and pa-an causative forms

Verb	+	causer	+	caused	+	object
Pinapalitan		ko		kay Citta		ang binili kong pantalon

I had Citta exchange the (pair of) trousers I bought

Qualifier	+	causer	+	verb	+	object
Hindi		nila		ipinatapos		ang bakod

They didn't have the fence finished

Question word	+	verb	+	causer		place
Sino		ang ipinadala		ng eskuwelahan		sa paligsahan?

Who did the school send to the contest?

Question word	+	causer	+	verb	+	object
Kailan		mo		pinaputulan		ang buhok mo?

When did you have a haircut?

Example sentences:

1. Pinalakihan ni Ely ang kanyang kusina
Ely had her kitchen made bigger
2. Pasasamahan kita kay Manny
I'll ask Manny to accompany you
3. Pinatawagan niya sa akin si Citta
He/she had me call Citta
4. Ipatutulak namin sa mga lalaki ang malaking mesa
We'll have the men push the big table
5. Ipinasara ng Ate ang mga bintana kay Al
Ate had the windows closed by Al

Exercise 10

Choose the appropriate causative verb form from the brackets, then translate the sentence:

1. Bukas, (ipinalagay, ipalalagay, ipinalalagay) ko kay Sarah ang mga halaman sa paso. (future)
2. Kailangan bang (ipapasok, ipasok, ipinasok) na ngayon ang mga damit sa sampayan? (infinitive)
3. Kailan natin (ipamimigay, ipamigay, ipinamimigay) ang mga lumang damit? (future)
4. Noong isang taon (ipinaayos, ipaaayos, ipinaayos) ni Binibining Zapanta ang kaniyang bahay. (past)
5. Ayaw nilang (papintahan, pinapintahan, papipintahan) ang kanilang bahay. (infinitive)

One-minute phrases

Hindi na bale (*heen-dee nah bah-leh*) Meaning 'It doesn't matter/never mind'. For example: **Hindi na bale kung hindi sila dumating sa miting**, *It doesn't matter if they don't/didn't arrive at the meeting.*

Pang-araw-araw (*pahng ah-rao ah-rao*) Meaning 'For daily use'. For example: **Pang-araw-araw ko ang lumang jeans na ito**, *I wear this old pair of jeans daily.*

Tamang-tama lang (*tah-mahng tah-mah lahng*) Literally, just enough only. Meaning something fits perfectly (like a glove). For example: **Tamang-tama lang sa iyo ang bagong sapatos mo**, *Your new pair of shoes fit you perfectly well.*

Mahirap na lang magsalita (*mah-hee-rahp nah lahng mahg-sah-lee-tah*) Literally, (it's) difficult already just to speak/talk. This is a common Tagalog phrase used to suggest that it may be difficult or inappropriate to offer comment. For example: **Mahirap na lang magsalita pero kailangang pagsabihan mo ang anak mo**, *It's rather difficult to make any comments but you should talk to your child.*

Gawan ng paraan (*gah-wahn nahng pah-rah-ahn*) Similar in meaning to the English expression 'I'll do anything I can to make sure it works'. For example: **Gagawan ko ng paraan upang makabili ka ng uniporme mo**, *I'll do everything I can to make sure you can buy your uniform.*

① Cultural tip

The **barrio** or **barangay** is the traditional Filipino village or settlement and lies at the very heart of the cultural, political and religious life of the Philippines. A quick glance around almost every **barrio** will reveal the existence of a small chapel and a meeting hall. There is a strong sense of 'togetherness' (**pakikisama**) among **barrio** folk. The people draw much of their identity from this sense of 'togetherness'. This attitude becomes a pattern of living wherever the Filipino finds him/herself.

20 PAALAM

Goodbye

In this unit you will learn how to

- make comparisons
- express embarrassment
- do last-minute shopping
- say your last goodbyes

Expressing embarrassment

Dialogue 1

Bill, Louise and Roy Cook have enjoyed their stay with Kiko and his family in the barrio. They are preparing to leave.

- Roy** Tingnan ninyo! Binigyan ako ni Kiko ng regalo.
Louise Anong ibinigay niya sa iyo? Gaano kalaki?
Roy Isang kalabaw na inukit sa kahoy. Huwag kayong mag-alala. *Hindi ito mas malaki sa maleta ko.*
Bill Napakaganda nito. *Mahiya ka naman. Wala tayong ibinigay na pasalubong sa kanila kundi mga pagkain lang. Malaking abala rin ang naibigay natin sa kanila.*
Louise Nakakahiya naman. Nagpasalamat ka ba?
Roy Opo. *Nahihiya nga ako nang ibigay niya ito sa akin pero magdaramdam daw sila kapag hindi ko tinanggap ang regalo.*
Bill Ganoon ba?

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
binigyan	was given
abala	disturbance
ibinigay	handed/gave
gaano kalaki	how big
huwag	don't
mag-alala	worry
hindi mas malaki	not as big as
ng maleta ko	of my suitcase
magdaramdam	will feel bad
inukit	carved
kahoy	wood / wooden
napakaganda	how beautiful
mahiya ka naman	are you without shame, don't you feel a little ashamed?
ibinigay	gave
nakakahiya	embarrassing
nagpasalamat	gave thanks
nang ibigay	when (it) was given
kundi	instead
tinanggap	received

Translation

- Roy** Look! Kiko gave me a (parting) gift.
Louise What did he give you? How big is it?
Roy A wooden carving of a water buffalo. Don't worry. It's not too big for my suitcase.
Bill It's really beautiful. Don't you feel a little ashamed? We didn't bring any gifts for them other than a little foodstuff. We were a bit of a disturbance to them, too.
Louise Shame on you. Did you at least thank them?
Roy Yes, I did. Actually I was embarrassed when (the gift) was handed to me but (he) said he'd feel bad if I declined it.
Bill Is that so?

Exercise 1

Answer the following questions in complete Tagalog sentences:

1. Ano ang regalo ni Kiko sa pamilya Cook?
2. Ano ang mangyayari kapag hindi tinanggap ni Roy ang regalo?
3. Anong uri ng regalo ang ibinigay ng mga Cook kina Kiko?
4. Bakit nag-alala ang mga Cook?

Language skills

1. Kasing/sing As... as

'As old as the hills', 'as white as snow', 'as sweet as honey', 'as strong as an ox'. These short sentences are examples of comparatives, expressed in English by means of an as... as construction. Tagalog expresses comparatives by the prefix **(ka)sing** before the root of a **ma**-adjective. The actor is expressed by a **ng** phrase (**ni, nina, ko, mo, niya, namin, natin, nila** etc.) and the complement (to which the comparison is being made) is in the **ang** form (namely **si, sina, ako, ka, siya, kami, tayo, kayo, sila** etc.). For example: **Kasinghaba/singhaba ng kalye namin ang kalye ninyo**, *Your street is as long as our street.* **Kasinlaki ng Pilipinas ang Inglatera**, *England is as big as the Philippines.* Some speakers use **kasing** only and other speakers use both **sing** and **kasing** interchangeably in ordinary conversation. Both are correct.

It is worth remembering that certain adjectives can stand alone and are known as unaffixed adjectives. Any unaffixed adjective that corresponds to a noun (i.e. **tulog** (noun) *sleep*, **tulog** (adjective) *asleep*) do not occur with **(ka)sing**; whereas most other unaffixed adjectives (i.e. **pula**, *red*, **tanga**, *dumb*) do occur with **(ka)sing**. Here are some examples of the **(ka)sing** construction: **(Ka)singtangkad ni Samantha si Sally**, *Sally is as tall as Samantha.* **Kasingyaman ni Ginoong Ramos si Ginoong Cruz**. *Mr Cruz is as rich as Mr Ramos.* The prefix **(ka)sing** changes to **(ka)sim** when the preceding adjective root begins with **b** and **p**. However, when **(ka)sing** is followed by an adjective beginning with the letters **d** or **t**, then it becomes **kasin**. For example: **(ka)singbait to kasimbait**, *as kind as*; **(ka)singpula to**

(ka)simpula, *as red as*; **(ka)singdami**, *as many as*; **to (ka)sindami**, **(ka)singtamad to (ka)sintamad** and so on.

Comparison of inequality is expressed in English by simply using the negative of the 'as... as' formula. For example: Bobby is not as noisy as Fred. This is not as sweet as that (one). In Tagalog, the same basic rules used in comparison of equality apply to comparison of inequality. For example: **Hindi kasingganda ng sampagita ang gumamela**, *(The) gumamela (flower) is not as beautiful as sampagita.* **Hindi kasinsariwa nito iyan**, *That is not as fresh as this (one).*

It is also possible to verbalise both the comparison of equality and the comparison of inequality through the simple addition of the prefix **mag**. If this happens, then the prefix **mag** is understood to mean 'equally' or 'equal in'. For example: **mag + (ka)sing**. The resulting formation expresses a quality shared equally by exactly two people, things, places, etc. For example: **Mag(ka)singtalino sina Jonathan at Manny**, *Jonathan and Manny are equal in intelligence.* **Magkasintaas si Joe at si Anne**, *Anne and Joe are equally tall.* Look at the example sentences that follow. Practice reading them aloud in order to familiarise yourself with the word order.

Example sentences:

1. **Kasimbango ng rosang camia**
(The) camia (flower) is as fragrant as rosang
2. **Kasimbaho ng bagoong ang tuyong isda**
Dried fish is as smelly as fish sauce
3. **Kasinlinis ng mesa ang silya**
The chair is as clean as the table
4. **Magkasintangkad sina Erwin at Ardin**
Erwin and Ardin are equally tall
5. **Magkasinlayo ang Australia at New Zealand buhat sa Inglatera**
Australia and New Zealand are equally far from England
6. **Hindi magkasinlapit ang Maynila at Makati buhat sa Paliparang Ninoy Aquino**
Manila and Makati are not equally close to Ninoy Aquino airport

Exercise 2

Look at the following adjectives together with their (ka)sing prefixes. Build a Tagalog sentence around each adjective ((ka)sing + adjective) and then translate into English.

Example: (ka)sintanda: as old as

Kasintanda ni Joanna si Amy *Amy is as old as Joanna*

1. (ka) simbait: as kind as
2. (ka) simputi: as white as
3. (ka) sintaas: as high as (as tall as)
4. (ka) sinluwang: as wide as
5. (ka) singkipot: as narrow as
6. hindi (ka) singganda: not as pretty as
7. mag(ka)simbuti: equally good

Doing last minute shopping

Dialogue 2

Bill, Louise and Roy Cook have to do some last minute shopping for their pasalubong (gifts).

Louise Kailangan kong bumili pa ng mga pampasalubong. Alam kong nakabili na ako noon pero may nakalimutan yata ako.

Bill Naiintindihan ko. Heto na ang Priscilla's Gift Shop. Kung mga pamigay lang ang bibilhin natin, napakarami nating mapagpipilian dito.

Roy O, sige gusto ko ring humanap ng laruang jeepney. Ibibigay ko ito kay Stewart.

Louise Aba, maganda ito – kawayang tumutunog sa hangin para kina Viv at Tim. Ito namang mga nilalang handbag ay pangshopping nina Consuelo at Clarita.

Bill Marami yata tayong pamimilihin kaya credit card na lang ang ipambayad natin sa halip na cash.

Louise Sang-ayon ako.

Roy Kung gayon bibili ako ng barong Tagalog na pang-okasyon ko.

Bill Ako rin!

Louise Kayo lang ba? Bibili ako ng ternong saya na yari sa jusi. *Wala akong ganitong uri ng terno.*

Bill Sige, walang problema. Dalian lang natin ang pamimili kasi mag-iimpake pa tayo.

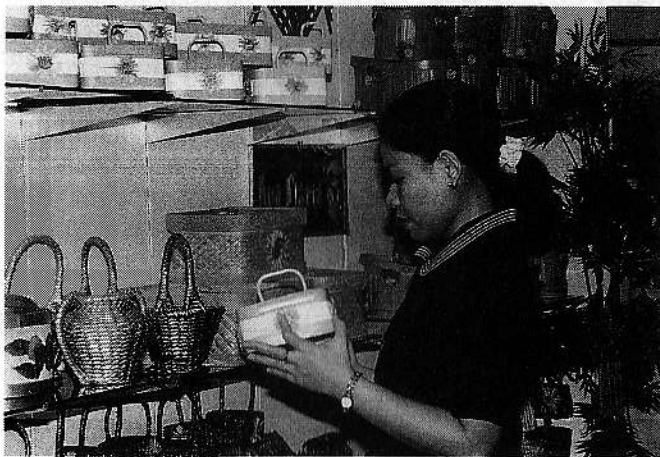
Roy Oo nga pala!

Talasalitaan

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
tumutunog	<i>making a musical sound</i>
nakabili	<i>was able to buy</i>
noon	<i>then/before</i>
may nakalimutan	<i>forgot something</i>
naiintindihan	<i>understand</i>
pamimilihin	<i>things to buy</i>
kaya	<i>that's why</i>
pamigay	<i>to give around</i>
sa halip na	<i>instead of</i>
bibilhin	<i>will buy</i>
napakarami	<i>so many</i>
mapagpipilian	<i>to choose from</i>
pang-okasyon	<i>for certain occasions</i>
humanap	<i>to find</i>
ibibigay	<i>will be given</i>
yari sa	<i>made of</i>
daliin	<i>be quick</i>
terno	<i>evening gown</i>
nilala(ng)	<i>woven</i>
pangshopping	<i>for shopping</i>
ipambayad	<i>to pay with</i>
sang-ayon	<i>agree</i>
kung gayon	<i>if that is so</i>
oo nga pala	<i>oh that reminds me</i>
mag-iimpake	<i>will get packing</i>
ternong saya	<i>a lady's terno</i>
pamimili	<i>shopping</i>
ganito(ng) uri	<i>this kind</i>
jusi	<i>pineapple fibre cloth</i>

Translation

- Louise** I need to buy some more gifts to give away. I know that I've already bought (some), but I think I've forgotten a few things.
- Bill** I understand. Look, here's Priscilla's Gift Shop. If we want to buy a few things to hand out, (then) there's an enormous choice here.
- Roy** All right. I also want to look for a toy Jeepney. I'm giving it to my friend Stewart.
- Louise** This is nice – a bamboo wind chime for Viv and Tim. These woven handbags are for Consuelo and Clarita.
- Bill** I think we'll be buying a lot of things so why don't we pay by credit card instead of cash.
- Louise** That's a good idea.
- Roy** In that case, then I'm going to buy myself a barong Tagalog to wear on special occasions.
- Bill** I will too.
- Louise** And you think it's only for you (two). I think I'll buy a long evening gown made of jusi for myself. I haven't got anything like this yet.
- Bill** OK. That's not a problem, but we'll have to hurry up with our shopping because we still have the rest of the packing to do.
- Roy** Oh, that reminds me... (good that you reminded me)



Exercise 3

Mga tanong: Sagutin sa Tagalog na pangungusap. Answer in Tagalog sentences. Use the glossary to help you.

1. Ano ang kailangang gawin ni Louise?
2. Saan sila pumunta upang mamili ng pampasalubong?
3. Para kanino ang tumutunog na hangin?
4. Ano ang maaaring ibigay ni Louise kina Consuelo?
5. Sabihin kung paano sila magbabayad ng kanilang pinamili.
6. Bakit kailangan nilang magmadali?

Language skills

2. Making nouns pang

By now you will have begun to grasp something of the versatility of the Tagalog language. One further 'trick' Tagalog has up its sleeve is the ability to form nouns from verbs, simply by adding the prefix **pang** to the verb root. For example **ligo**, **lakad**, **tulog**, **pasok**, **pasyal** etc. can be made into nouns meaning 'used for' simply by adding the prefix **pang**: pang + ligo = panligo, 'used for bathing', pang + lakad = panlakad, 'used for going out'. You will notice that words that begin with l, d and t turn the **pang** into **pan**, for example pang + tulog = pantulog; while words beginning with p makes **pang** into **pam**. Example: pang + pasok = pampasok + tulog = pantulog 'used for going to sleep', pang + pasok = pampasok, 'used for going to work or school', pang + pasyal = pamasyal, 'used to go out in'. Look at these example sentences: **Pantulog ba ang damit na iyan?**, *Is that clothing used for sleeping in?* **Pamputol ng kahoy ito**, *This is for cutting firewood with.* **May pandagdag ka ba sa pera ko?**, *Do you have anything to add to my money?*

By adding the letter **i** to the **pang** prefix, the resulting word is transformed back into a verb, but it is different in meaning from the original verb. The new verb then carries the meaning 'to use for' and is consequently known as an instrumental verb. Here are some examples: I + pang + laba, 'wash clothes' = ipanlaba, 'to use for washing clothes'. **Ipanlaba natin ang sabong ito sa blusa mo**,

Let's use this soap to wash your blouse with. I + pang + tali 'string' = ipantali. **Ipinantali ni Divin ang lubid sa malaking kahon, Divin used the string/rope to tie around the big box.**

Changing the tense of an **ipang** verb:

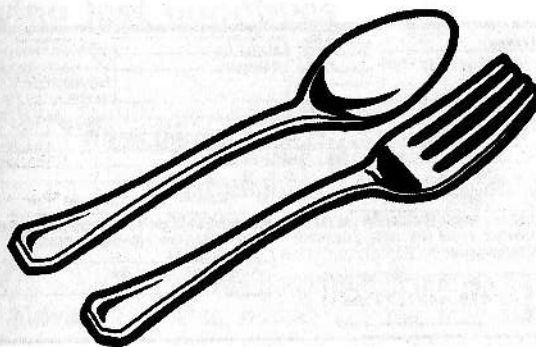
ipang + linis <i>clean</i> =	ipanlinis	<i>to clean with</i>	infinitive
ipan+li+linis =	ipanlilinis	<i>will clean with</i>	future
ip+inan+li+linis =	ipinanlilinis	<i>cleaning with</i>	present
ip+inan+linis =	ipinanlinis	<i>used to clean with</i>	past

Some commonly used nominalised words:

1. pantulak = *to push with*
2. pangkain = *to eat with*
3. pantulog = *to sleep with*
4. panlakad = *to walk with*
5. panlaro = *to play with*
6. pananggalang = *for protection*
7. panlaban = *to fight against with*
8. panulat = *a writing instrument*
9. panigarilyo = *money to buy cigarettes with*
10. panlasa = *taste*

Exercise 4

Here are some everyday things we might see around the house. What are they used for? Use the glossary to help you to find the correct **pang** noun for each:



Exercise 5

Give the Tagalog 'pang' nouns for the following (the italicised word will give you a clue).

Example: a hammer to *break* with

Answer: **pandurog**

1. a *scratcher*
2. something you *cut* with
3. to *wash clothes* with
4. to *write* with
5. to use *to go strolling* in

Exercise 6

Having found the correct **pang** words for Exercise 5, can you make a sentence out of them?

Example: **Pambiyak ng niyog ang malaking kutsilyo, The big knife is for cutting the coconut with**

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____

Philippine Airlines NAME OF PASSENGER MANGULAD/CEL A SURNAME (LAST NAME) MANGULAD/CEL A		TICKET NUMBER 0140 CLASS Y CARRIER PR FLIGHT 812 CLASS Y DATE 03JAN		ORIGINAL TICKET 0140 CLASS Y CARRIER PR FLIGHT 812 CLASS Y DATE 03JAN		DATE AND PLACE OF ISSUE 283910/01JAN 59 PHILIPPINE AIR MANILA/RIAD AIRPT ILOILO CITY PH	
NAME OF PASSENGER MANGULAD/CEL A SURNAME (LAST NAME) MANGULAD/CEL A		TICKET NUMBER 0140 CLASS Y CARRIER PR FLIGHT 812 CLASS Y DATE 03JAN		ORIGINAL TICKET 0140 CLASS Y CARRIER PR FLIGHT 812 CLASS Y DATE 03JAN		DATE AND PLACE OF ISSUE 283910/01JAN 59 PHILIPPINE AIR MANILA/RIAD AIRPT ILOILO CITY PH	
NAME OF PASSENGER MANGULAD/CEL A SURNAME (LAST NAME) MANGULAD/CEL A		TICKET NUMBER 0140 CLASS Y CARRIER PR FLIGHT 812 CLASS Y DATE 03JAN		ORIGINAL TICKET 0140 CLASS Y CARRIER PR FLIGHT 812 CLASS Y DATE 03JAN		DATE AND PLACE OF ISSUE 283910/01JAN 59 PHILIPPINE AIR MANILA/RIAD AIRPT ILOILO CITY PH	

BOARDING PASS		BOARDING PASS	
MANGULAD/CEL A		MANGULAD/CEL A	
MNL 034		MNL 034	
PR 812 Y 03JAN		PR 812 Y 03JAN	
3E		3E	
21H		21H	
Philippine Airlines		Philippine Airlines	



Saying last goodbyes

Dialogue 3

The Cook family are saying goodbye to the Abiva family at the airport.

Bill

Maraming, maraming salamats sa pagtanggap ninyo sa amin. Pasensiya na kayo sa nagawa naming pang-aabala sa inyong tahanan at sa inyong katahimikan lalo na kay Jobert.

Tita Abiva

Aba, huwag kayong mag-alaala. Nasisiyahan nga kami at dito kayo tumigil. Higit sana kayong magpasensiya sa aming pagkukulang. Mas lalo kaming humihingi ng pasensiya.

Louise

Lubusan kaming nasiyahan at sana ay huwag kayong madadala sa amin. Nagbigay kami sa inyo ng kaguluhan.

Tita

Kami nga ang mas nag-aalala na baka hindi kayo nakatulong nang mabuti. Alam kong mas tahimik sa Inglatera kaysa dito. O, tinatawag na yata ang flight ninyo.

Mr Abiva

Huwag kayong mag-aatubiling bumalik sa amin sa susunod ninyong pagbabakasyon. Sumulat lang kayo.

Bill

Gagawin namin iyon. Pasensiya na kayo sa aming munting regalang ito.

Tita

Aba, nag-abala pa kayo. Maraming salamats. Isang napakagandang kuwadro para sa larawan ng aking pamilya!

Mr Abiva

Kay ganda! O, siges maraming salamats na muli. Susulat kayong lagi at kung maaari tumawag kayo sa akin.

Jobert

Roy

Maraming salamats po sa inyo Ginoo at Ginang Abiva, nag-enjoy ako dito at maraming salamats Jobert, okey ka talaga.

Jobert

Huwag kang mag-alaala, Roy. Katulad mo, nag-enjoy ako.

Louise and Bill

Maraming salamats. Aalis na kami.

Tita

Walang anuman. O siges. Paalam.
(The Cooks and the Abivas kiss)

Talasalitaan

pagtanggap
 pasensiya na
 nagawa
 pang-aabala
 tahanan
 katahimikan
 lalo na kay
 sa susunod
 pagbabakasyon
 nasisiyahan
 tumigil
 higit
 magpasensiya
 pagkukulang
 mas lalo
 humihingi
 lubusan
 kay ganda
 huwag
 madadala
 nagbigay
 kaguluhan
 mas nag-aalala
 baka hindi
 nakatulog
 mag-aalaala
 paalam
 tahimik
 kaysa
 tinatawag
 mag-aatubili(ng)
 bumalik
 munti(ng) regalo
 nag-abala
 napakaganda(ng)
 kuwadro
 larawan ng
 muli
 susulat
 lagi
 kung maaari
 tumawag
 nag-enjoy
 nang mabuti
 alam mo ba

Vocabulary

receiving
 accept our apologies
 what's been done
 disturbance
 home
 peace
 especially
 next time
 vacationing
 pleased
 stopped
 more
 to accept our
 shortcomings
 more
 asking
 earnestly
 how pretty
 don't
 be turned off
 gave
 chaos
 more bothered
 might not
 managed to sleep
 be worried
 goodbye
 quiet
 than
 calling
 hesitate
 return
 small gift
 bothered
 very pretty
 frame
 picture of
 again
 will write
 always
 if possible
 call
 enjoyed
 soundly
 do you know

Translation

Bill

Thank you so much for letting us stay. We apologise if we have been an intrusion in your home and to your peace, especially Jobert's.

Tita Abiva

Please don't worry. In fact we were very pleased that you stayed with us. We hope you have been able to bear with our shortcomings. We're the ones who have to apologise.

Louise

We are really happy and hope that we didn't put you off coming again. We must have caused you a lot of inconvenience.

Tita Abiva

In fact, we're more worried that you might not have been able to sleep properly. I know that it's much quieter in England than it is here. Listen, I think they are calling your flight number.

Mr Abiva

Please don't hesitate to come back to our home the next time you come for your holidays. Please write.

Bill

We most certainly will. Please accept our small (parting) gift.

Tita

You should not have bothered. Thank you so much. What a lovely frame for my family's picture.

Mr Abiva

How beautiful! OK, thank you so much again.

Jobert

Please write regularly and if possible, give me a call.

Roy

Thank you so much, Mr. & Mrs Abiva. I enjoyed myself here and thank you very much Jobert, you're really ok!

Jobert


Don't worry Roy. I enjoyed it as much as you did.

Louise and Bill

Thank you so much. We've got to go now.

Tita


Don't mention it. OK. Goodbye.
 (The Cooks and the Abivas kiss)

 **Exercise 7**

Bigyan ng tamang sagot:

1. Nang humingi ng paumanhin si Bill, ano ang sagot ni Tita Abiva?
2. Bakit nag-aalala si Tita Abiva na hindi nakatulog ang mag-anak?
3. Anong regalo ang tinanggap ni Tita Abiva buhat sa mag-anak?
4. Ano ang hiniling ni Jobert kay Roy?

 **Exercise 8**

 The Cook family don't want to miss their flight back to London and so are carefully monitoring the flight announcements. Listen carefully to the announcements on the tape and write down the correct flight numbers and departure times. What are the correct gate numbers for each flight? Are there any delays?

Ninoy Aquino International Airport Manila Departures board					
Destination	Flight No.	Arrivals	Departures	Delays	Gate No.
Hong Kong					
Singapore					
Los Angeles					
Sydney					
Tokyo					
London					
Dubai					
Kualar Lumpur					

 **Language skills**

3. Mas, lalong, kaysa sa

Richard is tall, Justin is taller, but Chris is the tallest. You will notice from this example that there are three levels or degrees of

comparison in English adjectives: tall, taller, tallest. These different levels are known as the positive, comparative and superlative degrees. Take for example the adjective good. The word good is in its positive degree. When comparing two adjectives, the adjective 'good' (positive degree) becomes the word 'better' in the comparative degree, and finally 'best' in the superlative degree. In Tagalog, **mas**, **lalong** or **kaysa** + the **sa** form are used in the comparative degree, while in the superlative degree, the prefix **pinaka** is used. Look at the examples that follow:

malaki	<i>big</i> =	positive degree
mas/lalong malaki kaysa sa	<i>bigger</i> =	comparative degree
pinakamalaki	<i>biggest</i> =	superlative degree

Mas malaki ang problema ni John kaysa kay Tony
John's problem is bigger than Tony's

maliit	<i>small</i> =	positive degree
higit na maliit	<i>smaller</i> =	comparative degree
pinakamaliit	<i>smallest</i> =	superlative degree

Pinakamaliit si Louella sa magkakapatid
Louella is the smallest among the siblings

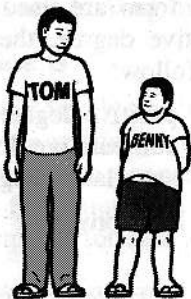
Further examples:

1. Higit na malaki ang sombrero ko kaysa sa sombrero mo
My hat is bigger than your hat
2. Mas mahaba ang nilakad namin kaysa sa nilakad ninyo
Our walk was longer than your walk
3. Maganda ang hardin mo pero mas maganda ang hardin ni Patricia
Your garden is pretty but Patricia's garden is prettier
4. Higit na malayo ang Pilipinas kaysa sa India buhat sa Inglatera
The Philippines is farther than India from England
5. Masarap ang luto mo pero mas masarap ang luto ko kaysa sa luto mo
Your cooking is good but my cooking is better than yours

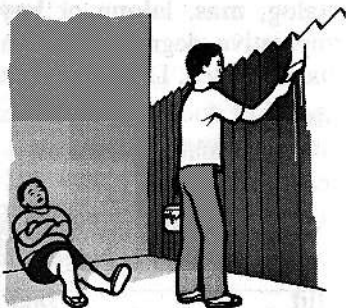
Exercise 9

Look at the pictures and use the adjectives provided to produce a statement about each picture using the comparative degree:

Tom is taller than Benny _____



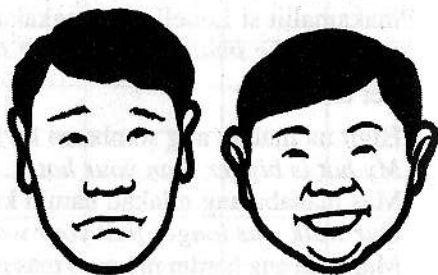
matangkad



masipag



mataba



masaya

Exercise 10

Pretend that you are Bill or Louise Cook and have just returned from your wonderful holiday in the Philippines. Write to your friends the Abivas to thank the family for their kindness. This is your chance to impress by them writing your thank you letter in Tagalog. Don't forget to use polite words and as many different types of Tagalog verbs as you can remember. Close your letter by inviting them to England to stay with you!

One-minute phrases

Alis d'yan (*ah-leees jahn*) Literally, *alis* means *leave* and *d'yan/diyan*, *there*, hence: *go away from there* or, more colloquially, *get lost!!!, beat it!!!*

Buwena mano (*bwehnah mah-naw*) Literally, **buwena** means *good* from the Spanish word *buena* and *mano*, *hand*. It is believed that the first shopper cannot be turned down by the storekeeper as he/she will bring luck for the rest of the day.

Labas-masok (*lah-bahs mah-sawk*) Literally, **labas** means *out/outside* and **masok** or **pasok** means *enter*. A person who comes and goes. **Labas-masok ang mga tao sa opisina ng meyor**, *The people come and go into the mayor's office.*

Walang tawad (*wah-lahng tah-wahd*) Literally, *no discount, no bargain/last price*. This is usually what vendors say to you when you start to haggle in the markets. You can still try to ask for a discount but they usually get annoyed if you insist. If the price can be haggled they usually encourage you otherwise.

Hindi kasya (*heen-dee kahs-yah*) Meaning it doesn't fit. An expression commonly used when you are trying something on. **Hindi kasya sa akin ang sombrero mo kasi maliit ito sa akin**, *Your hat doesn't fit me because it's too small for me.*

Cultural tip

The high value Filipinos place on harmonious relationships may at first seem rather quaint to the visiting westerner. This is hardly surprising when on closer inspection, the westerner tends to value having 'a mind of his/her own' and a strong sense of autonomy. Filipino social behaviour on the other hand is expected to promote the sense of community and togetherness (**pakikisama**). One of the principal means of ensuring socially acceptable behaviour is through **hiya** or 'shame'. Filipinos report the experience of feeling 'ashamed' (**mahiya**) when they receive negative feedback from others through their body

language, voice tone or verbal messages. **Hiya** is therefore a key form of social control, determining how people feel about themselves (self-esteem) as well as their social standing. A person with a strong sense of his or her own **hiya** learns how to negotiate a way through potentially sensitive or embarrassing situations. Compromise is always a key factor, ensuring that others involved do not lose face and feel **mahiya**. The Filipino will avoid at all costs making another person feel **mahiya**. To do so not only damages that person's social standing but also gains them a potential enemy. It is extremely important for the foreigner to understand this. The golden rule is very simple: Never put anyone to shame in public, even in a joking way. Others may laugh, but only out of politeness. Filipinos often laugh and smile in order to cover their sense of discomfort or embarrassment. If you have a problem with someone, look for an appropriate time and place to speak to the person alone and in private. Even if you are upset, always make sure you speak in a low voice. Be prepared to compromise in order to help the other person save face and minimise their sense of **hiya**, even if they are clearly in the wrong. This will always act in your favour, indicating to others a sensitivity on your part to the intricacies of the Filipino social relationship system. If you are ever in doubt, smile, keep your mouth shut and ask your Filipino friends for advice.

KEY TO THE EXERCISES

Unit 1

Exercise 2 1. siya 2. kami 3. ako 4. ka 5. sila 6. kayo 7. tayo 8. kayo

9. sila 10. siya. **Exercise 3** 1. hapon 2. umaga 3. tanghali 4. gabi

Exercise 4 1. umaga 2. gabi 3. tanghali 4. hapon **Exercise 5** a3, b6, c4, d1, e5, f4 **Exercise 6** a. kayo b. ka c. ka d. ka

Unit 2

Exercise 1 May tuwalya ba kayo? May sabon ba kayo? May telepono ba kayo? May menu ba kayo? May telebisyon ba kayo? **Exercise 3**

1. Doktor sila 2. Turista ako 3. Matatangkad/ matangkad sila 4. Maganda siya 5. Amerikano ka/kayo **Exercise 5** 1. May payong ba kayo? May

payong ka ba? Oo. Mayroon 2. May sasakyan ba? Oo. Mayroon 3. May pinggan ba sa mesa? Oo. Mayroon 4. May kutsilyo ba? Oo. Mayroon

5. May baso ba kayo? Oo. Mayroon **Exercise 6** 1. May libro 2. May barko 3. May mesa 4. Walang pera 5. May basura 6. May sombrero

7. Wala (ng) pasahero 8. May sanggol **Exercise 7** 1. Sino ang pagod? 2. Sino ang Reyna? 3. Anong oras na? 4. Anong kulay ng bandila?

Unit 3

Exercise 1 a. Magandang hapon sa inyong lahat b. Ito ang lola ko c. Ito ang tatay ko, _____ d. At si _____, ang kapatid ko e. Ito ang lolo ko f. Ito si _____, ang kapatid ko g. at katapusan, ang nanay ko

Exercise 2 a. Tatay b. Hipag c. Lola at Lolo d. pamangkin e. Nanay f. Bayaw g. Kuya at Ate **Exercise 3** 1. mapa 2. payong 3. posporo

4. shampoo **Exercise 4** 1. Kailangan ko ng tee-shirt 2. Gusto kong bumili ng tiket 3. May 'street guide' ba kayo? 4. Nagtitinda ba kayo ng tinapay? **Exercise 5** 1. Mainit ang panahon 2. Marumi ang kalye 3.

Malinis ang kotse 4. Maganda ang bahay 5. Doktor ang lalaki

Exercise 6 a. Maraming salamat b. Maraming salamat po or Maraming salamat sa inyo c. Maraming Salamat or Salamat d. Maraming salamat po or Maraming salamat sa inyo e. Maraming salamat
Exercise 7 1. Hindi ito barko 2. Hindi malinis ang mesa 3. Hindi estudyante si Amy 4. Hindi tumatakbo ang Jeepney. **Exercise 8** 1. Wala. Walang sasakyan sa bus stop 2. Wala. Wala kaming yelo. 3 Wala. Walang katulong si Ginoong Reyes.

Unit 4

Exercise 1 1. kumaliwa 2. kumanan 3. diretso 4. kanan 5. tumawid kayo 6. kaliwa **Exercise 3** 1. Nasaan ang simbahan? Reply: Nasa Sto. Domingo ang simbahan 2. Nasaan ang Jeepney stop? Reply: Nasa Guzman Street ang paradahan ng Jeepney. 3. Nasaan ang palengke? Reply: Nasa Cubao ang palengke 4. Nasaan ang bangko? Reply: Nasa Makati ang bangko **Exercise 4** 1. Gusto kong bumili ng selyo para sa pakete ko 2. Gusto kong bumili ng selyo papunta sa Amerika 3. Magkakano ang Air Letter? 4. Nasaan ang timbangan? 5. Pakitimbang mo nga ang pakete ko or Maaari bang timbangin mo ang pakete ko? **Exercise 6** Listening: kahon, bolpen, sulat, selyo, pakete, timbangan **Exercise 7** 1. bata, payat, puti ang blusa, mahabang itim na buhok, nakasalamin, nakapantalón 2. babaeng hindi masyadong matanda, itim ang palda at jacket, itim ang sapatos at handbag 3. matabang babae, pandak, hindi itim ang blusa, itim ang palda, nakarelos at singsing 4. Matandang babae, putting buhok, mahabang itim na bestida, nakakuwintas **Exercise 8** 1. Malaking masipag na hayop 2. magandang matalinong dalagita 3. malaking puting simbahan 4. makulay na mabilis na Jeepney.

Unit 5

Exercise 1 1. Disinuwebe 2. Animnapu't apat 3. Nubenta y nuwebe 4. Dalawampu't pito 5. siyento kinse 6. apat na raan at walumpu **Exercise 3** 1. Labinlimang piso 2. Sampung piso 3. Pitumpung piso 4. Isandaang piso 5. Isanlibong piso; total = 1195 (isanlibo isandaang't siyamnapu't lima) **Exercise 4** 1. Alas dose beinte 2. Menos kinse para alas tres 3. Alas siyete 4. Ala-una diyos 5. alas kuwatro medya 6. Alas saís **Exercise 5** Examples: Magkakano ang mangga, magkano ang lanzones? Magkano ang bayabas? **Exercise 6** 1. True 2. True 3. True

4. False 5. True **Exercise 7** Gusto kong magpapalit ng dolyar 2. Magkano ang palit? 3. Ang palit ay 40 pesos 4. Nagpapalit din ba kayo ng Australian dollars? **Exercise 8** 1. Limandaan 2. mil singko sientos

Unit 6

Exercise 2 1. Saan sila nakatira 2. Saan kayo matutulog 3. Saan nag-aaral sina Lucy? 4. Saan po kayo bumibili ng sorbetes? 5. Saan kakain ng almusal si Adam? **Exercise 3** 1. ka 2. bahay 3. mapa 4. Nakikita 5. kasama **Exercise 4** 1. Hindi. Masyadong malapit ito 2. Sa Sikatuna Village 3. Sa Kalye Roxas 4. Walang kasama si Roy 5. Nasa Kalye Vito ito. **Exercise 5** Magbabakasyon, masyadong mainit, masyadong malayo, buhat sa, masyadong mataas. Kapitan ng eroplano, ang dating **Exercise 6** 1. Dadaan ba ito sa Sikatuna Village? 2. sa Kalye Maningning 3. Magkano + Sikatuna? Heto ang bayad. May sukli ka ba?

Unit 7

Exercise 1 1. Nasa likuran 2. Nasa harapan 3. Nasa harapan katabi ni Toto 4. Nasa likuran 5. Nasa harapan 6)Nasa harapan katabi ni Tita **Exercise 2** Kaibigan ko si Margaret 2. Kapatid niya siya John 3. Bisita nila si Ann 4. Kaklase ko sila. **Exercise 4** 1. ng 2. namin 3. ni 4. ng 5. ko 6. ng 7. niya. **Exercise 5** 1. Bahay ni Pedro ito 2. Pagkain ng aso ito. 3. Kampana ng simbahan ito. **Exercise 6** 1. kaibigan 2. Matangkad 3. magkakapatid 4. pinakamatanda 5. pinakabunso 6. anak ninyo 7. anak ko. 8. ilan 9. ang may-asawa. Ang anak niya. 10. apo **Exercise 7** 1.d 2.e 3.b 4.a 5.c **Exercise 8** 1. ang piknik natin 2. mas matanda sa dalawa 3. tatlong taon 4. mas bata 5. hindi mo ba alam 6. kapatid siya ng aking nanay 7. ng malamig na inumin 8. ang piknik na ito **Exercise 9** 1. Siya ay anak mo 2. Ako ay may tiket 3. Ang tubig ay malamig 4. Ngayon ay mainit 5. Ang handa mo ay masarap.

Unit 8

Exercise 1 1. Apat kami. 2. May mesa ba kayo para sa apat (na tao)? 3. Gusto ko ng malamig na tubig. 4. Gusto ko ng San Miguel beer. 5. May malaking mesa ba kayo? **Exercise 2** 1. False 2. True 3. True 4. False 5. False 6. True **Exercise 3** 1. mga aklat 2. mga babae 3. mga bahay **Exercise 4** 1. May mga bisita na sa bahay 2. Mga estudyante ba

kayo? 3. Hindi sila mga Pilipino

4. Kailangan ko ang mga silya at mesa. 5. Mga sariwang prutas ang mga ito **Exercise 5** 1. Oo. Suka nga para sa bangus 2. Oo. Maaari bang bigyan mo ako ng asin? 3. Gusto ko ng sarsa 4. May toyo ba kayo?

Exercise 6 1. mga dalawang kilong 2. mga tatlong yarda. 3. Mga alados 4. Mga siyam 5. mga walong tao **Exercise 7** Customer

1. adobong manok sa gata, kanin at malamig na guwabano 2. pansit, guinataan, malamig na buko juice 3. lechon, kanin, pansit at malamig na Coke.

Unit 9

Exercise 1 1.f 2.d 3.e 4.a 5.c 6.b **Exercise 2** 1. Para sa kape ang gatas 2. Para sa bintana ang kurtina 3. Para sa sulat 4. Para sa ulan 5. Para sa pagtulog ang kama 6. Para sa biyahe ang maleta 7. Para sa tubig. **Exercise 3** 1. Magandang umaga 2. ngipin ko 3. gamot 4. Okey lang. Maraming salamat 5. Magkano iyan 6. ang bayad 7. Walang anuman **Exercise 4** 1. buhok 2. ulo 3. mata 4. panga 5. tiyan 6. kamay 7. daliri 8. binti 9. paa 10. talampakan **Exercise 5** Tama. 2. Mali. Nasa harapan ang dibdib. 3. Tama. 4. Mali. Nasa paa ang talampakan. 5. Mali. Nasa bibig ang labi. 6. Tama **Exercise 6** 1. Ang sakit ng ulo ko. 2. Hatsing! May sipon ako. 3. Masakit ang paa ko.

Unit 10

Exercise 1 1.b 2.c 3.c 4.b **Exercise 2** 1. Sa akin ang maletang ito 2. sa bata ba ang bisikleta/ 3. Sa kanila ang bagong Jeepney 4. Hindi sa iyo iyan 5. Kay Beth ang tsinelas. 6. Kina Philip ba ito? **Exercise 3** 1. dilaw 2. puti 3. pula 4. asul 5. kulay pilak 6. biyoleta 7. itim 8. berde 9. ginto **Exercise 4** 1. Hindi. Kay Amy ang itim na tote bag 2. Hindi. Kay Paul ang itim na tote bag 3. Hindi. Kay Stephen ang duffel bag 4. Kay Dad ang denim tote bag 5. Oo. Kay Lucy ang dilaw na plastic bag. **Exercise 5** 1. Kanino ang mga iyon? 2. Kaninong bahay ito? 3. Kaninong guro si Cora? 4. Kanino iyan? 5. Kanino ang mga gulay na ito? 6. Kanino ang mga berdeng mangga? 7. Kanino ang maleta? 8. Kaninong anak si Joanna? 9. Kaninong maleta ito? 10. Kaninong kamera iyan? **Exercise 6** 1. bata, 2. beach, 3. turista, 4. bata, 5. turista, 6. beach, 7. bata, 8. turista, 9. beach, 10. bata, 11. beach, 12. turista, 13. bata, 14. beach, 15. bata, 16. turista, 17. beach, 18. turista **Exercise 7** 1. sa tindahan 2. sa paliparan 3. sa dagat 4. sa tindahan ng laruan 5. sa palengke 6. sa palaruan 7. sa kalye **Exercise 8** 1. sa hapon

2. Sa Linggo 3. sa gabi 4. sa tanghali 5. sa hapon 6. sa umaga 7. sa isang linggo

Unit 11

Exercise 2 1. gusto 2. kailangan 3. ayaw 4. dapat 5. ibig

Exercise 3 1. Hindi masyadong mahaba 2. Hindi 3. Sa tabi

4. Huhugasan muna ng barbero ang buhok ni Bill 5. Gusto rin ni Bill ng masabe **Exercise 4** 1. ang bagong kotse 2. ng katulong 3. ng aking tulong 4. magpagupit 5. ng malamig na kape **Exercise 5** 1. Kailangan

(Do you want a pencil?) 2. Ibig (Baby wants to buy some bananas from the market) 3. kailangan (Why do you need a blackboard?) 4. gusto Who do you want to go with you to the cinema? 5. Ibig (Do you like a cold Pepsi?) **Exercise 6** 1. Mahaba ang inyong buhok 2. Bagay sa inyo ang mahabang buhok 3. Kailangan kong hugasan ang inyong buhok.

Exercise 7 1. Maikli sa harapan, medyo mahaba sa likuran 2. putulin nang kaunti ang tagiliran, medyo kulot, medyo kingki 3. pakiputulan ang hulihan, huwag masyadong maikli, hanggang batok lang.

Exercise 8 1. Magandang umaga naman 2. gusto kong magpagupit 3. Maaari bang ngayon na ako magpagupit? 4. Hindi na salamat. Gupit lang 5. Gusto ko maikli ang gupit 6. Gupit na lang muna 7. Maraming salamat

Exercise 9 1. sa matatanda 2. sa iyo 3. sa kaniya 4. sa akin 5. sa atin 6. sa kaniya

Unit 12

Exercise 1 1. kailangan 2. pantalon at kamisadentro 3. maluwig 4. sarisaring kulay 5. maganda 6. pumili 7. sombrero **Exercise 2** 1. bibili ako ng laruan bukas 2. Kumakain kami ng gulay araw-araw 3. Gumawa tayo ng laruan 4.) Humihiram si Ely ng libro sa akin 5. Iinom kami ng malamig na beer sa kantina ngayon. **Exercise 4** 1. gusto ko ng berdeng palda 2. Ayaw ko ng mahabang palda 3. Kailangan ko ito sa Lunes 4. Nasa bahay ang palda ko. **Exercise 5** 1. lumalaki 2. gumaganda 3. luminis 4. lumayo **Exercise 6** lumalaki, lumiwanag, luminaw, sumarap **Exercise 7** 1. Kanina sumikat ang araw 2. sa amin noong isang linggo 3. tag-init 4. umuulan 5. Madilim ang langit. **Exercise 8** 1. Bumabaha sa Maynila. 2. Hindi. Sa Kanluran ito lumulubog 3. Sumisikat ang araw sa Pilipinas mga alas 6:00 nang umaga 4. May ingay kung kumukulog at kumikidlat 5. Hindi. Sumisikat ang buwan sa gabi. **Exercise 9** Kumikidlat 2. umulan 3. bumaha

Exercise 10 1. maulap, maaaring umulan sa Hilagang Luzon
2. Mainit 3. Mainit ang araw

Unit 13

Exercise 1 1. False 2. True 3. False 4. True 5. True 6. False 7. False
8. True 9. True 10. False **Exercise 2** 1. Hindi ko gustong bumili ng
tiket 2. Hindi puwede bukas nang umaga. 3. Hindi humihinto ang bus
nang mga alas 7:30 4. Malayo ang Banaue buhat sa Maynila 5. Hindi
mabuti ang alas 4.30 nang umaga. **Exercise 3** 1. Huwebes
2. Septyembre 3. Nobyembre 4. Linggo 6. Miyerkoles 6. Hunyo
7. Sabado **Exercise 4** 1. Sa ika-30 ng Agosto ang kaarawan niya 2. Sa
Lunes ang simula ng pasukan 3. Dadalaw kami sa iyo sa Sabado, ika-
sampu ng Mayo. 4. Noong Martes, ika-14 ng Hunyo ang komperensiya
5. Pupunta kami sa zoo sa Linggo, ika-3 ng Septyembre 6. Sa Sabado ka
ba aalis? 7. Sino ang darating sa Huwebes, ika 5 ng Enero? **Exercise 5**
1. magluto 2. maglaba 3. maglaro **Exercise 6** 1. Maglaro tayo 2.
Naglinis na ako ng kotse 3. Naghuhugas ng pinggan si Maria 4.
Magdasal tayo 5. Magluluto sina Lina. **Exercise 7** 1. Mga sampung
oras 2. Hindi 3. Tarlac 4. Lima **Exercise 8** 1. Alas 7.45 ang dating ng
bus galing sa Baguio. 2. Umalis ito sa Baguio kaninang alas 9.00 ng
umaga. 3. Hihinto ito sa Ilocos, Pangasinan, Tarlac, Pampanga at
Bulacan **Exercise 9** 1. 81 pesos
2. Mali. Ang numero ng tiket ay: anim, dalawa, dalawa, tatlo, talo, anim
3. wala. 4. 10-60 5. Hindi. 6. Hindi **Exercise 10** 1. maligo
2. nakikinig 3. naupo 4. mahiga 5. natulog **Exercise 11** 1. Anong oras
hihinto ang bus sa Pampanga? 2. Saan pa kayo hihinto? 3. Mayroon bang
kubeta doon? 4. Gusto kong pumunta sa kubeta **Exercise 12**
1. Magandang umaga 2. Oo. Pero hindi ko sigurado kung anong oras ito
babalik sa Maynila 3. Bukas nang hapon ang balik naming 4. Alas tres.
Okay lang 5. Isang biyahe lang. Para sa tatlong adults 6. Heto ang bayad
namin 7. Maraming salamat din. **Exercise 13** 1. nakapaglalaro
2. makakaalis 3. makakabili 4. makapagluto 5. nakatulog

Unit 14

Exercise 1 1. Kasi maganda ang panahon 2. Mamamasyal muna
3. Mga mangingisda 4. Oo. Sa palagay ko, mura ang pag-arkila ng
bangka 5. Hindi. Pagbalik na nila. **Exercise 2** 1. Mamimitas ako ng

prutas bukas 2. Mangingisda sila sa Miyerkoles 3. Maraming
mandurukot sa palengke 4. Mamamasyal ako mamayang gabi 5. Mamili
tayo! **Exercise 3** 1. mamimitas 2. mangisda 3. namimili
4. nandurukot 5. nanahi **Exercise 4** 1.a 2.a 3.a **Exercise 5** 1.
Malapit na ang pasko 2. Hindi pa ako nakakakain 3. Sa Sabado na ba ang
binyag ng anak mo? 4. alam mo ba ang sagot sa tanong? 5. Kumakain pa
ba sila? **Exercise 6** 1. Si Bill 2. Malalaking isda 3. Nakapangisda
sila 4. Oo. Nasyahan sila 5. Lumangoy sila. **Exercise 7** 1.
Namamangka ang pamilya Cook. 2. Lumalangoy ang pamilya Cook.
Exercise 8 1. Nakabili 2. nakakapaglaro 3. nakahiram 4. nakakaalis
5. makabalik. **Exercise 9** 1. Makapangisda 2. Makakabili 3.
nakakain 4. nakabisita 5. Nakakain **Exercise 10** 1. Salamat.
Nakapamahinga kami. Nakapangisda rin kami 2. Oo. Nakapangisda kami
ng tulingan at dalawang Lapulapu 3. Oo! Sana makabalik kami sa
susunod na taon at makahuli nang maraming isda 4. Heto ang bayad
namin sa bangka 5. Maraming salamat din.

Unit 15

Exercise 1 1. Tinanong nila si Roy kung ibig niyang maging ninong.
2. Apat 3. Sa kapilya sa bukid 4. Oo 5. si Jobert. **Exercise 2** 1. Bukas
ba ninyo bibilhin ang bagong stereo? 2. Ginagawa niya ang bulaklak na
papel 3. Tinatahi mo ba ito? 4. Tinutugtog niya ang kundiman sa piyano
5. Nililinis ko pa ang kuwarto ko 6. Piliin mo ang sariwang gulay.
Exercise 3 1. Maaari bang kunan kita ng retrato? 2. Maaari bang
kunan mo ako ng retrato? 3. Gusto ko ang damit mo, maganda ito/ Ang
ganda ng damit mo! 4. sumama ka sa amin. **Exercise 4** 1. iibigin,
iniibig, inibig 2. kakainin, kinakain, kinain 3. lilinisin, nililinis, nilinis
4. susulatin, sinusulat, sinulat 5. tatapusin, tinatapos, tinapos
Exercise 5 1. hinuhuli 2. kinain 3. tatahiin 4. sasabihin 5. nilinis
Exercise 6 1. kinukuha, binili 2. nililinis, kinukuskos 3. niluluto,
sinasaing **Exercise 7** 1. Ninong ka rin ba? 2. Ilan kayong ninong?
3. Narito ba ang mga magulang mo? 4. Pupunta ka ba sa salu-salo?
Exercise 8 1.4 2.2 3.1 4.3 **Exercise 9** 1. pala 2. nga 3. kaya
4. yata 5. ba

Unit 16

Exercise 1 1. Maaari bang ipakihulog mo ang mga sulat ko?
2. Labindalawa 3. Sapagka't walang selyo si Louise 4. sa Post Office.

Exercise 2 1. ibinibigay 2. itinatapon 3. isinusukat **Exercise 3** 1. ibibigay 2. isasama 3. ipinirito 4. isinulat 5. iniluluto 6. inihulog 7. itatapon 8. inilagay **Exercise 4** 1. Kasi maraming naitulong si Jobert sa pamilya Cook 2. Dahil sa malaki ang itinulong ng pamilya kay Jobert sa London 3. Dinala nila si Jobert sa iba't ibang lugar, ibinili nila sa Jobert ng kailangan niya 4. Aba, oo. **Exercise 5** 1. Maraming bumibili ng libro dito araw-araw 2. May kumakatok yata sa pinto 3. May kinuha ako kahapon sa kaniya 4. Walang sumama sa akin sa ospital noong Linggo 5. May naglalaro na naman ng tennis sa kabila. **Exercise 6** 1. Tumayo ka! 2. Maupo po kayo. 3. Matulog na tayo. 4. Maari po bang huwag kayong manigarilyo? 5. Mamasiyal tayo. **Exercise 7** 1. Magandang umaga 2. May semento ba kayo 3. Puwede bang ipagreserba mo ako ng sampung sako? 4. May Marine plywood ba kayo? 5. Aluminum roofing sheets, mayroon ba kayo? 6. Mabuti. Puwede bang ipagreserba mo ako ng labindalawang sheets? 7. Oo. Dalawang kilo nga 8. Wala na. Iyan lang. Pupunta ako riyang nang mga tanghali 9. Paalam.

Unit 17

Exercise 1 1. Mali 2. Tama 3. Mali 4. Tama. **Exercise 2** ninong, simbahan, pulot-gata, ninang, retratista, singsing, pagkain **Exercise 3** 1. Kakainan ko ng pansit ang plato 2. Tinutulungan ko siya 3. Lalagyan namin ng rosas ang halaman dito 4. Gusto kong bigyan si Larry nito 5. Lalagyan ba natin nito doon? 6. Huwag mong aalisan ng libro ang mesa **Exercise 4** 1. tutulungan 2. nilakihan 3. sinuklian 4. sasamahan 5. binigyan 6. hinalikan 7. sarapan 8. palitan **Exercise 5** 1. Paglabas... 2. Maraming kumuha.... 3. Maraming sasakyan... 4. Dumating ang bagong.... 5. Inihanda ng mga tagapagluto.... 6. Maraming pagkain 7. Ang mga nagluluto 8. Tumulong sa paghahain 9. Habang kumakain 10. May tugtugin... 11. Isa sa mga tugtugin 12. Inanyayahan ng mga panauhin 13. Tuwang-tuwa 14. Napagod sa pagsayaw 15)Sa dulang, nagbigay ng... 16. Nagbigay din 17. Isa-isang nagpaalam **Exercise 7** 1. Nasusulatan mo na ba si Sophie? 2. Maitatapon ni Harry ang basura lagi 3. May binubuksan siyang kabinet ngayon 4. Hindi masasamahan ni Caroline si Phil sa bayan mamayang gabi 5. Sino ang naisakay mo sa kotse kagabi? **Exercise 8** 1. Ang paghalik sa kamay ng mga lolo at lola. 2. Ang lola 3. Upang maging puhunan 4. Ang unang makarating sa bahay ang boss **Exercise 9** 1. siya mismo 2. Mismong kami 3. nila mismo 4. ikaw, mismo 5.

Mismong sina Fred **Exercise 10** 1. natutulog 2. nakikipag-usap sa kaibigan 3. naliligo 4. naglalaba 5. namamasiyal 6. umiinom

Unit 18

Exercise 1 1. pista 2. mamayang gabi 3. mga damit at mga laruan 4. dapat mayaman siya 5. pag-akyat sa kawayan, pagsungkit ng laso, pagsakay sa kalabaw 6. upang ilibot sa bayan 7. ang tenyente **Exercise 2** 1. kapalaran 2. katamaran 3. kawalan 4. kayamanan 5. kabahayan 6. kamalian **Exercise 3** karunungan 2. kasinungalingan 3. kalalakihan, kababaihan 4. karapatan 5. kakayahan **Exercise 5** 1. False (gusto) 2. False (upang maghanda 3. False. (ginagastos kaagad) 4. False. (Hindi mabuti) 5. False. (Hindi mabuti para sa lahat. **Exercise 6** 1. Oo, pupunta kami sa pista 2. Mahilig akong sumayaw 3. Saan makakabili ng pagkain at inumin? 4. Salamat, sumama ka sa amin. 5. O sige, hahanapin ka namin mamaya 6. Paalam. **Exercise 7** 1. Makikikain si Auntie Marge sa kanila mamaya. 2. Kanino ka nakiupo? 3. Makikipamilya ka ba kina auntie dot? 4. Nakikipag-away na naman si Jose 5. Nakikipag-usap pa ako kay Janet. **Exercise 8** 1. Maaari bang makipag-usap kami kay Ginoong Reyes? 2. Puwede bang makitulog ako sa kanila? 3. Huwag sana kayong makipag-away sa mga bata 4. Maaari bang makisakay kami kina Baby? 5. Puwede bang makipagluto ang mga bisita dito? **Exercise 9** 1. Nag-aaral siyang humawak ng kalabaw 2. Medyo kausapin ang kalabaw 3. Oo. Maaari siyang sumakay sa kalabaw 4. Nagtrabaho siya sa isang sabsaban ng kabayo sa Inglatera. **Exercise 10** 1. Ganoon kabait si ginoong Cruz sa amin 2. Ganito ba ang paggawa ng silyang rattan? 3. Paano ang pagsara ng kahong ito? 4. Hindi ba ganito ang pagluto ng adobo? 5. Sabihin mo sa akin ang pagtugtog ng himig na ito. **Exercise 11** 1. ganito 2. ganiyan 3. ganiyan 4. ganito 5. ganoon 6. ganito 7. ganiyan 8. ganoon 9. ganito 10. ganiyan 11. ganoon 12. ganito

Unit 19

Exercise 1 1. mga punong-kahoy 2. rosal, sampaguita, rosas, camia 3. Gumawa siya ng palaisdaan 4. Nagpaluto ng kakanin si Kiko 5. Maganda ang buhay sa bukid: may mga punong-kahoy, masarap ang pagkain, may mga bulaklak etc. **Exercise 2** 1. Nagpapakuha ako ng libro sa kanila 2. Magpapalabas ba tayo ng silya? 3. Nagpapasok ba si Henry ng mga maleta kanina? 4. Saan ka nagpapabili ng gulay at

prutas? 5. Nagpabasa siya ng aklat sa klase. **Exercise 3** 1) Seven 2) a) Medyo huli na ako OR Alas _____ ako nakarating. b) Oo, natrapik ako. c) Nasa kusina ang Nanay ko. d) Hindi lahat. Nagpaluto ako ng ibang putahe. w) Oo. d) May kilala akong masarap magluto. Chef siya.

Exercise 4 1. Gusto niyang magpakain ng mga baboy 2. Si Kiko 3. Mga manok 4. Kasi pinagluto na ni Kiko ang Misis niya ng almusal.

Exercise 5 1. pasusulatin 2. pinaglinis ng kotse 3. pagtatahiin ng bestida 4. nagpapagupit 5. nagpapaganda **Exercise 6** 1. Nagpapaligo si Mang Kiko ng kalabaw sa ilog 2. Nagpapakain ng manok si Roy 3. Nagsasampay ng damit ang asawa ni Mang Kiko 4. Pinaalis ng batang babae ang mga ibon 5. Nagpapalipad ng saringgola ang batang lalaki. **Exercise 7** 3. Pinagbuti ni Elvie ang kaniyang trabaho kagabi

1. Pasasamahin ko si Michael kay Jim sa bayan sa isang linggo 2. Pinamili namin si Lisa kahapon 1. Pinapag-aral ni Lina si Georgina kanina. 2. Pinasulat daw ni Patricia si Larry noong isang buwan.

Exercise 8 1. damo 2. si roy 3. hinog na ang guyabano 4. para inumin ng mga hayop 5. sa loob ng murang niyog. **Exercise 9** 1. pinatutulog 2. pinatatakbo 3. pinaglilinis **Exercise 10** 1. ipalalagay 2. ipasok 3. ipamimigay 4. ipinaayos 5. papintahan

Unit 20

Exercise 1 1. Isang kalabaw na inukit sa kahoy 2. magdaramdam si Kiko 3. mga pagkain lang 4. Malaking abala ang ibinigay nila kay Kiko

Exercise 2 1. Kasimbait ni Remy si Bing. (Remy is as kind as Bing) 2. Kasimputi ng camia ang rosas. (Camia is as white as rosas) 3. Kasintaas ng St. Paul's Cathedral ang BT Tower (The BT Tower is as tall as St. Paul's Cathedral) 4. Kasinluwang ng pantalon ko ang pantalon mo (My trousers are as wide as your trousers) 5. Kasingkipot nito iyan. (This is as tight as that) 6. Hindi kasingganda ang hardin ko ng hardin mo (My garden is not as pretty as yours) 7. Magkasimbuti ang gulay at prutas (Vegetables and fruits are equally good) **Exercise 3** 1. Kailangan niyang bumili ng pampasalubong 2. sa Priscilla's Gift Shop 3. para kay Viv at Tim 4. nilalang handbag 5. sa pamamagitan ng credit card

6. mag-iimpake pa sila. **Exercise 4** 1. panlakad 2. pambayad 3. pangkain **Exercise 5** 1. pangkamot 2. pamputol 3. panlaba 4. panulat 5. pamasiyal **Exercise 6** 1. Pangkamot ng likod ang patpat 2. Pamputol ng kahoy ang itak 3. Panlaba ang sabon 4. Panulat ang lapis

5. Pamasiyal ang gomang sapatos. **Exercise 7** 1. Aba, huwag kayong mag-alaala 2. Mas tahimik sa Inglatera 3. Magandang kuwadro para sa kaniyang pamilya 4. sumulat lagi si roy o kaya'y tumawag.

Exercise 9 1. Mas matangkad si Tom kaysa kay Benny 2. Higit na masipag si Benny kaysa kay Tom. 3. Mas mataba si Benny kaysa kay Tom. 4. Mas masaya si Benny kaysa kay Tom

Exercise 10 Self-assessment (Ask your Filipino friends to help)

VERB LIST

Stem	Meaning	-um-	mag+	mang+	+in	+i+	+an
abang	to wait for	x	x	mang-abang	x	x	abangan
abay	to accompany	umabay	x	x	x	x	abayán
abot	to arrive, reach	umabot	x	x	x	x	abutan
ako	to claim	umako	x	mang-ako	akuin	x	x
aksaya	to waste (time)	umaksaya	x	mag-aksaya	aksayabin	x	akyatán
akyat	to climb	umakyat	x	x	akyatín	x	x
alala	to remember	umalaala	x	x	alalahanin	x	x
alam	to know	x	x	x	alamin	x	x
alay	to offer/dedicate	x	mag-alay	mang-alay	x	ialay	alayan
alibadbad	to be nauseous	x	x	x	alibadburin	x	alibadbaran
alis	to leave	umalis	x	x	x	x	x
alis	to remove	x	mag-alis	x	alisin	x	alisan
alsa	to raise/rise/strike	umalsa	x	x	x	x	x
ambag	to contribute	umambag	x	mag-ambag	x	iambag	ambagan
anak	to treat as one's own child	x	mag-anak	x	anakin	x	x
anak	to have a baby	x	x	manganak	x	x	x
aral	to study	x	mag-aral	x	x	x	x
araw-araw	to do something daily	x	x	x	araw-arawin	x	x
awit	to sing	umawit	x	x	awitin	x	awitan
ayos	to tidy up	umayos	x	x	ayusin	x	ayusan
baba	to descend/go down	bumaba	x	x	babain	x	babaan
bago	to change	bumago	x	x	baguhin	x	x
bagsak	to drop/fall	bumagsak	x	magbagsak	x	ibagsak	bagsakan
bagyo	to be hit by typhoon	bumagyo	x	x	bagyuhin	x	x
bahin	to sneeze	bumahin	x	x	x	x	bahinan
balik	to come back	bumalik	x	x	x	x	x

VERB TABLES

balik	to return something	x	magbalik	x	x	ibalik	x
bangon	to get up (from lying down)	bumangon	magbangon	x	x	ibangon	x
bantay	to guard	x	magbantay	x	x	x	bantayan
baon	to bring provision	x	magbaon	x	baumin	x	x
baon	to bury	bumaon	magbaon	x	x	ibaon	x
basa	to read	bumasa	magbasa	x	basahin	x	basahan
basa	to wet	x	magbasa	x	basain	x	x
basag	to break (as in glass)	bumasag	magbasag	mambasag	basagin	x	x
bastos	to be bad mannered/ rude	bumastos	x	mambastos	bastusin	x	x
bata	to become young	bumata	x	x	x	x	x
bata	to suffer	x	magbata	x	batahin	x	x
batid	to know	x	x	x	batirin	x	x
bili	to buy	bumili	x	x	bilhin	ibili	bilhan
bili	to sell	x	magbili	x	x	x	x
bola	to fool someone	x	x	mambola	bolahin	x	x
bubo	to spill	x	magbubo	x	x	ibubo	bubuan
bukas	to open	by itself	bumukas	x	x	x	x
bukas	to open something	x	magbukas	x	x	ibukas	buksan
bukid	to farm	x	magbukid	x	bukirin	x	x
buhay	to give life	bumuhay	magbuhay	x	buhayin	x	x
buhay	to live	x	x	mamuhay	x	x	x
bunga	to bear fruit	bumunga	magbunga	x	x	ibunga	x
busog	to make full (appetite)	bumusog	x	x	busugin	x	x
buwis	to pay tax	x	magbuwis	x	x	x	buwisan
kaibigan	to befriend	kumaibigan	x	x	kaibiginin	x	x
kailangan	to need	kumailangan	x	mangailangan	kailanganin	x	kainan
kain	to eat	kumain	magkain	mangain	kainin	ikain	kagatan
kagat	to bite	kumagat	x	mangagat	kagatin	ikagat	x

kaliwa	<i>to turn left</i>	kumaliwa	mangaliwa	kaliwain	x	x
kamay	<i>to use the hand</i>	x	x	kamayin	x	x
kanta	<i>to sing</i>	kumanta	x	kantahin	x	kantahan
kapit-bahay	<i>to visit neighbours</i>	x	mangapit-bahay	x	x	x
kilala	<i>to know</i>	kumilala	mangilala	x	x	x
kilos	<i>to move</i>	kumilos	x	x	ikilos	x
kita	<i>to earn</i>	kumita	x	kitain	x	x
kuba	<i>to meet up</i>	x	x	kitain	x	x
kulang	<i>to get/ take</i>	kumuha	manguha	kunin	x	kunan
kulay	<i>to lack</i>	x	x	kulangin	x	x
	<i>to colour</i>	x	x	x	ikulay	kulayan
dala	<i>to carry</i>	x	x	dalhin	x	x
dala	<i>to bring to someone</i>	x	x	x	x	dalhan
dalangin	<i>to catch fish with a net</i>	x	mandala	dalahin	x	x
dalaw	<i>to pray</i>	dumalangin	manalangin	dalangin	x	dalanginan
dali	<i>to visit</i>	x	x	dalawin	x	idalangan
dama	<i>to make quick</i>	x	x	dalin	x	idalaw
daman	<i>to feel</i>	dumama	x	darnahin	x	x
daman	<i>to make many</i>	x	manamit	darnahin	x	x
dapat	<i>to wear clothes</i>	x	x	damitin	x	damitan
dumi	<i>to be a must/ ought to</i>	dumumi	x	x	x	x
dusa	<i>to dirty</i>	x	x	x	x	x
	<i>to suffer</i>	x	x	x	x	x
eskandalo	<i>to create a scandal</i>	x	mageskandalo	eskandaltuhin	x	x
eskoba	<i>to brush clothes</i>	x	mageskoba	eskubahin	x	eskubahan
gabi	<i>to be overtaken by night</i>	gumabi	x	gabihin	x	x

galing	<i>to come from</i>	x	manggaling	x	x	x
galing	<i>to become well</i>	x	x	x	x	x
galit	<i>to be angry</i>	x	manggalit	galitin	x	x
gamit	<i>to use</i>	x	manggamot	gamutin	x	gamitan
gamot	<i>to treat/ cure</i>	x	x	gamutin	x	x
gana	<i>to have appetite</i>	x	x	gamutin	x	gahaman
ganda	<i>to make beautiful</i>	x	x	x	x	gandahan
gata	<i>to cook in coconut milk</i>	x	maggata	x	igata	gataan
gawi	<i>to turn towards</i>	x	x	x	igawi	gawian
gibik	<i>to shout for help</i>	x	x	x	x	gibikan
giling	<i>to grind</i>	x	x	gilingin	x	x
gising	<i>to wake up</i>	x	manggisising	gisingin	x	x
gusto	<i>to like</i>	x	x	gustubin	x	x
gutom	<i>to feel hungry</i>	x	manggutom	gutumin	x	x
hakot	<i>to load baggage</i>	humakot	x	hakutin	x	hakutan
hagilap	<i>to search for/ look for</i>	humagilap	manghagilap	hagilapin	x	hagilap
hagis	<i>to throw</i>	humagis	manghagis	x	ihagis	hagisan
hangan	<i>to blow (as in wind)</i>	humangin	x	x	x	hanginan
hapo	<i>to suffer from tiredness</i>	x	x	hapuin	x	x
hasik	<i>to plant seed</i>	x	x	x	ibhasik	hasikan
hayag	<i>to reveal</i>	x	x	x	ibhayag	hayaan
higa	<i>to lie down (a ma verb)</i>	mahiga	x	x	ihiga	x
hila	<i>to pull</i>	humila	manghila	hilabin	x	hundan
hindi	<i>to say no/ turn down</i>	humindi	x	hintayin	x	x
hintay	<i>to wait</i>	x	x	x	x	x

hinto	to stop	huminto	x	x	hipuan	hintuan
hipo	to touch	humipo	x	x	hipuan	hipuan
hiram	to borrow	humiram	x	x	hiramin	hiraman
hifhit	to smoke (ie cigarette etc.)	humihit	x	x	hihutin	x
hiyaw	to shout	humiyaw	x	x	x	hiyawan
hubad	to undress	x	x	x	hubarin	hubaran
hugas	to wash	x	x	x	x	hugasan
hulog	to drop	x	x	x	x	hulugan
iba	to change	x	x	ibahin	x	x
ibig	to love/like	unibig	x	ibigin	x	x
idlip	to have a short nap	unidlip	x	x	x	x
igib	to fetch water	unigib	x	x	x	x
imik	to talk/speak	unimik	x	x	x	imikan
isip	to think	unisip	x	isipin	x	x
init	to become hot	uninit	x	initin	x	x
inom	to drink	uninom	x	inumun	x	inumun
isda	to go fishing	x	x	x	x	x
itim	to become dark	umitim	x	x	x	x
laba	to wash clothes	x	x	x	labhan	labhan
labas	to go outside	lumabas	x	labasin	x	labasan
lakad	to walk	lumakad	x	lakarin	x	lakaran
lagay	to place/put	maglagay	x	x	lagayan	lagayan
laglag	to fall/fall	maglaglag	x	x	laglagan	laglagan
lala	to become seriously ill	lumala	x	x	x	x
lamok	to be infested with mosquitoes	x	x	lamukin	x	x
lapit	to come close/near	lumapit	x	x	lapitan	lapitan
laro	to play	x	x	laruin	x	x
lasap	to taste/ experience	lumasap	x	lasapin	x	x
lasing	to get drunk	lumasing	x	lasingin	x	x

lawig	to take a long time	lumawig	x	x	lawigan	lawigan
layag	to sail	lumayag	x	x	layan	layan
layo	to distance oneself	lumayo	x	x	x	x
libak	to mock, humiliate	lumibak	x	libakin	x	libakan
libing	to bury	x	x	x	x	libingan
ligo	to take a bath (a ma verb)	maligo	x	x	liguan	liguan
ligpit	to keep / tidy up	x	x	x	x	ligusan
limos	to give alms	maglimos	x	x	limusin	limusin
limot	to forget	x	x	limutin	x	limutan
lindol	to have an earthquake	lumindol	x	x	linisin	linisin
linis	to clean	x	x	x	x	linisan
lingkod	to serve	maglingkod	x	x	x	x
lipad	to fly	lumipad	x	lipario	x	lipawan
litaw	to appear	lumitaw	x	x	x	litawan
liwanag	to become brighter	liwanag	x	liwanagin	x	liwanagan
loko	to fool	lumuko	x	lokohin	x	loksuhan
lakso	to jump	lumukso	x	lugsasin	x	lugsuhan
lugas	to fall off	lumugas	x	lulumin	x	lugsuhan
lulon	to swallow	lumulon	x	x	x	x
may-ari	to own/ claim	magmay-ari	x	x	x	x
meryenda	to have a snack	magmeryenda	x	meryendahin	x	x
mahal	to make dear/ expensive	magmahal	x	x	mabalan	mabalan
mahal	to love	x	x	mahalin	x	x
minidnal	to have a snack	magminidnal	x	minundalin	x	x
miting	to have a meeting	magmiting	x	x	x	x
mukha	to be similar to/ look like	magmukha	x	x	x	x
mungkahì	to suggest	magmungkahì	x	x	x	x
mura	to become cheaper	magmura	x	x	imungkahi	imungkahi
nakaw	to steal	magnakaw	x	x	x	x
nais	to desire/ wish	magnais	x	naisin	x	x
nakawin			x	nakawin	x	nakawin
naisin			x	naisin	x	naisin

tulala	to ignore	x	magtulala	x	manulay	x	tulayin	x	tulalaan
tulay	to cross a bridge	x	x	x	x	x	tulayin	x	tulayan
tulog	to sleep (ma verb)	x	magtuloy	x	x	x	x	itulog	tubugan
tuloy	to enter	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
tuloy	to continue	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
tumba	to tumble down	x	x	x	x	x	tumbahin	x	x
tunaw	to melt	x	magtunaw	x	x	x	tunawin	x	x
tupad	to fulfill	x	x	x	x	x	tuparin	x	x
tupok	to be burned	x	x	x	x	x	tupakin	x	x
turo	to teach	x	magturo	x	x	x	x	ituro	turuan
turo	to point	x	x	x	x	x	x	ituro	x
tuwang	to help	x	magtuwang	x	x	x	x	x	x
ubo	to cough	x	x	x	x	x	ubuhin	x	x
ubos	to consume/ exhaust	x	x	x	x	x	ubusin	x	ubusan
ulmig	to listen to	x	x	x	x	x	ulmigin	x	ulmigan
ulit	to repeat	x	x	x	x	x	ulitin	x	x
umaga	to be caught by the dawn	x	mag-umaga	x	x	x	umagahin	x	x
ulan	to rain	x	x	x	x	x	ulanin	x	ulanan
untag	to remind	x	x	x	x	x	untagin	x	x
uwi	to go home	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	uwian
una	to go ahead first	x	mag-una	x	maguna	x	unahin	x	x
unawa	to understand	x	x	x	x	x	unawain	x	x
upo	to sit down (ma verb)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	upuan
usap	to converse	x	mag-usap	x	x	x	x	x	x
wakas	to end	x	magwakas	x	x	x	x	x	wakasan
wala	to lose	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
walang-hiya	to be shameless	x	magwalanghiya	x	x	x	x	x	x
yabong	to grow	yumabong	magyabong	x	x	x	x	x	x
yamot	to annoy	x	x	x	x	x	yamutin	x	x
yapak	to step on	yumapak	x	x	x	x	x	iyapak	yapak

TAGALOG-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

Trying to get your tongue around unfamiliar words in a new language is often something of an uphill struggle. It can be frustrating to discover that words are not always pronounced as they appear on the page. With this in mind, we have provided three small symbols or 'accents' to help you find the correct stress or sound for each word in the Tagalog-English Glossary. The accents are as follows:

˘ This accent serves to lengthen the sound of the vowel. For example, the Tagalog word *lata* (or 'tin' in English) would be pronounced 'lah-tah', with the stress on the first syllable. The first 'a' sound is long, something akin to the long 'a' in the English words 'bar' or 'car'. (In the unit dialogues this stress is shown by making the stressed syllable **bold**.)

˙ This accent is only ever found on the last vowel of a word. It informs you that the vowel sound is shorter than the vowel with the ˘ accent. For example, the Tagalog word *kasápi* (to be a member of) would be pronounced 'ka-sah-pee', with a long 'ah' sound and a short 'ee' sound.

ʌ This accent is found on a number of words ending with a vowel. It indicates a glottal stop – a short, abrupt sound, almost as though the pronunciation of the vowel has been interrupted, like a tape recorder being switched off. For example, the Tagalog words *basá* (wet) and *bása* (to read) are distinguished from one another by their very different accents. (Glottal stops are shown in the unit dialogues by *italics*.)

áalis will leave
 áalmusalin what someone's having for
 breakfast
 abá oh! / hey! / well!
 abála disturbance
 abá o6 / aba oo naman of course
 ábay consort
 abá óp6 certainly, sir
 (mga) ábay sa kasál wedding assistant(s)

adó bong pusít squid adobo
 áking ináanak my godchild
 aklát (libro) book
 akó rin me too
 alám know
 alam mo bá do you know
 alas dós nang hápon 2.00 p.m.
 alas dóse 12.00
 alas nuwébe y médyá 9.30

alas saís y médyá 6.30
 alín *which one*
 alís *departure*
 almusal *breakfast*
 Amérika *America*
 áming *our*
 áming anak / anak namin *our child*
 ámpalaya *bitter melon*
 anak *son / daughter / child*
 ang *the*
 ang bahála *will look after*
 ang datíng *the arrival*
 ang gágawá *will do*
 ang mga itó *these*
 ang mga iyán *those*
 ang bill ngá námín *our bill, please*
 ang kailángan ninyó *what you need*
 ang kámin mo *what you have to eat*
 ang kináin mo *what you ate*
 ang gusto ninyó(ng) *what you like*
 ang íbig ninyo *what you want*
 ang maiklíng gupít *short cut*
 ang nakáin mo *what you have eaten*
 ang paboríto ko(ng) *my favourite*
 ang pangálan ko *my name*
 ang púnta *the destination / going to*
 ang súkat *the size*
 ang súkat ko *my measurement*
 anó(ng) *what*
 anó ang mga óras ng *what are the times of*
 anó namán itó? *and what is this?*
 ano pá *what else*
 ano pò ang maipaglilingkod ko *what*
 (service) can I do
 ano pong gupít *what (kind of) haircut*
 anóng edád *how old*
 anóng óras *what time*
 anóng pangálan ninyó *what's your name?*
 (formal)
 anu-anó *what (plural)*
 apó *grandchild*
 apritáda *a kind of dish*
 áraw *day / sun*
 araw-áraw *every day*
 asáwa *husband / wife*
 asáwa niyáng *his/her spouse*
 asín *salt*
 at *and*
 ate *older sister*
 at saká *and also*
 áyaw ko / ayoko *I don't like*

bábahâ *will flood*
 babâe *female/woman*
 babágay pò sa inyó *it will suit you*
 babágyo *there will be a typhoon*
 bakâ *might/cow*
 bakâ hindî *might not*
 bakánte *vacancy*
 bakasyón ka bá *are you on vacation?*
 bákit *why*
 bákit hindî *why not*
 bágay *thing*
 bágay ba sa ákin *does it suit me*
 bágo *new*
 bágo(ng) binyag *newly baptised*
 bágo(ng) kasal *newly wed*
 bahála na *come what may*
 bábay *house*
 baldé *bucket*
 bále wala *means nothing*
 bandá *band*
 bangká *boat (canoe)*
 bandéra / bandila *flag*
 bangâ *earthen pot*
 bangús *milkfish*
 barkó *ship*
 báryo *barrio/village*
 báso *drinking glass*
 bátâ *child*
 bátok *nape*
 basúra *rubbish*
 báwa't óras *each hour*
 bayábas *guavas*
 báyad ko *my payment*
 bayáw *brother-in-law*
 bíbigyan kitá *I'll give you*
 bíbili *will buy*
 bíbili akó ng *I'll buy/ I'm going to buy*
 biglá(ng) *suddenly*
 bigyán mo akó *give me*
 bíbig mo *your mouth*
 bíbilhin *will buy*
 bíbili akó *I will buy*
 bíbingká *a local delicacy*
 bili ná *come and buy*
 bilobiló *a local delicacy in coconut milk*
 binátâ *bachelor*
 binigyán *was given*
 binyág *baptism*
 binyágan(g) ito *this baptism*
 bintánâ *window*
 bisíta *guest/visitor*

biyáhe *travel*
 blusá *blouse*
 bólpen *pen*
 bubúti *will become better*
 búkas *tomorrow*
 búkas nang gabí *tomorrow night*
 búkas nang hápon *tomorrow afternoon*
 búkas nang tangháli *tomorrow midday*
 búkas nang umága *tomorrow morning*
 búhat sa *from*
 búhay *life*
 buhók ninyo *(also inyong buhok) your hair*
 bulaklák *flower*
 bumabâ ka *you alight / you get off*
 bumalík *return*
 bumlang *counted*
 bumilí *to buy*
 bumibilí *buying/ buy*
 bumúbulong *whispering*
 buntál *a kind of Philippine fibre*
 buóng lugár *whole place*
 burdádo(ng) *embroidered*
 ka *you (singular)*
 kaagád *immediately*
 kaakit-ákit *attractive*
 kabayánan *town*
 kabáyo *horse*
 kadálasan *often*
 kailán *when*
 kakáin *will eat*
 kakáinin *rice cakes*
 kakláse *classmate*
 kagabí *last night*
 kagulúhan *chaos*
 kahápon *yesterday*
 kahápon nang hápon *yesterday afternoon*
 káhit *even though*
 káhit saán *anywhere*
 kahón *box*
 káhoy *wooden*
 kaibigan *friend*
 kailán *when*
 kailángan ko (ng) *I need*
 kailángan po námín *we need (formal)*
 kalabása *squash / pumpkin*
 kalabáw *water buffalo*
 kalimútan *forget*
 kaliwâ *left*
 kalsáda / kalye *street*
 kálye *road / street*
 káma *bed*
 kamáy *arm*
 kamátis *tomatoes*
 kámara / kodak *camera*
 kamí *we*
 kánin *boiled rice*
 kanína *a while ago*
 kaníno *whose*
 kaníno pa *whose else*
 kaniyá(ng) *her*
 kánto *corner*
 kaopisína ko *my officemates*
 kapág *if/ when*
 kapaligirán *environment*
 kapatíd *sister/ brother*
 karamíhan *many of*
 kapitán *captain*
 karósa *cart*
 kasabáy *at the same time*
 kasabihán *saying/adage*
 kasál / kasálan *wedding*
 kasáma *companion/ together with / with / including*
 kasáma ba *is it included?*
 kasáma ko *I'm with*
 kasáma nilá *accompanied by them*
 kasí *because*
 katabí kó *next to me*
 katahimíkan *peace*
 (ng) katawán *(of the) body*
 katóliko *Catholic*
 katúlád ng *like*
 kaugalián *custom*
 kaunting masáhe *a little massage*
 kausápin *talk to*
 kawáyan *bamboo*
 kay [+ name] *for [+ name]*
 kay / ke mahál ngá *in fact it's expensive*
 kay gandá *how beautiful*
 kayâ muna tayo *why don't we first*
 kayâ *that's why*
 kaya palá *no wonder*
 kayó *you (plural informal/ formal singular)*
 kayo namán *oh! please!*
 káysa *than*
 kinákabitán *being attached*
 ko *my*
 kótsé *car*
 kubéta *toilet*
 kukúnan *will take (a photograph)*
 kukúnin *will get / fetch*

kulay colour
 kumáin eat
 kumakáin eating
 kumánan turn right
 kumaliwà turn left
 kumbidádo invited
 kumúha took
 kumústa kayó how are you (formal singular / informal plural)
 kúnan to take
 kundí instead
 kung if
 kung áyaw ninyó if you don't like
 kung bákit why
 kung ganoón / gayon if that's the case
 kung gústo mo(ng) if you want
 kung hindí if not / had not been
 kung maaarí if possible
 kung minsan sometimes
 kung puwéde sána if possible
 kung saán where
 kung támà if right
 kurtína curtain
 kutsilyo knife
 kutsintà a delicacy
 kuwárta money
 kuwádro frame
 kuwárto room / quarter / one fourth
 kúya older brother
 daán road / way
 dágat sea
 dáhil sa because
 dáhil lang sa just because of
 dalandán / dalanghità oranges
 dalawá two
 dalawandaáng piso 200 pesos
 dalawampung ányos 20 years old
 dalawang reséta two prescriptions
 daliín be quick
 damít-pangkasál wedding dress
 damó grass
 dápat must / should
 dárating will arrive
 dating arrival
 dekorasyon(g) decoration
 dilà-dilà a delicacy
 dilà mo your tongue
 dilaw yellow
 direksiyón direction
 dirétso straight
 'di sa ákin of course it's mine

disiótso pésos 18 pesos
 díto/ ríto here
 díto lang po sa ibaba just here below
 díto múnà just here
 doón there
 doséna dozen
 dos singkuwénta 2.50 pesos
 dúlang table
 dumárating arriving
 dumídilim becoming dark
 dumiréto to walk straight ahead
 estudyánte student
 éto (see heto) here is
 éto lang just this
 éto po here you are madam/ sir
 gaáno kalakí how big
 gabí night
 gáling sa from
 gamót medicine
 ganito pò like this, sir
 ganito(ng) úri this kind
 ganiyán like that
 ganoón like that
 ganoón bá is that so / oh, my!
 ganoón láng just like that
 ganoón ngà really like that
 gáganapín will be held
 gágastusin will be spent
 ganiyán like that
 gasolína petrol
 gátas milk
 gawín be made
 gawin kó I'd do
 ginágawá be made
 gínang Mrs
 ginisáng gulay sauteed vegetables
 gulay vegetables
 gumabí to become night
 gumandá to become fine/beautiful
 gumawá to make
 gúro teacher
 gustó like/ want
 gústo kó(ng) I like / I want / I love
 gústo ninyó you like
 gústo kong I'd like
 gústo ko rín I also like
 gústo pa namín ng we want some more
 gústo po ba ninyó do you like/ would you like
 guyabáno guyabano fruit (large, soft white)
 halkayo come on everyone

hábang while
 haláman plants
 handâ food preparation
 handaán reception
 hanggáng until
 hanggáng itaás reaching the top
 hanggáng sa until
 hápon afternoon
 hapúnan supper
 harapán front
 hátinggabi midnight
 hawákan hold
 háyop animal
 héto / heto po here you are / here, sir
 héto ang bayad here's the payment
 héto na here comes
 higit more
 hípon prawns
 híhinto will stop
 hindí no
 hindí ba isn't it?
 hindi ba mahál not expensive (I hope)
 hindí ko gustó I don't like
 hindi na bále never mind
 hindi namán not quite / not so
 hindi na pò not anymore
 hindi pa not yet
 hindí pò no, sir
 hindi sa ákin not mine
 hinóg ripe
 hintayín mo akó you wait for me
 hípag sister-in-law
 huhugásan ko lang I'll just wash
 humánap to find
 humángin was windy
 humhingí asking
 humshiram borrowing
 huwág don't
 ibáng kulay rín other colours, too
 iba't ibáng different kinds
 ibig námin we want / like / would like
 ibigáy to give
 ibibigay will be given
 ibig n'yo ná would you like now
 ibig po ba ninyó ng do you want / like a
 ibilí to buy for
 ibinigáy handed / gave
 ibinuká opened
 ikalimáng gusál fifth building
 ikatatló third
 ikáw ba talagá is it really you?

ikinagágalak ko kayóng makilála I'm pleased to meet you
 ikinasál got married
 idéya idea
 iláng béses how many times
 ihúlog to post (literally, to drop)
 ihuhúlog will post
 ínom will drink
 ínumin will be drunk
 ilabás show/bring out
 ilán(g) how many/ a few
 ilanglang ilangilang (flower)
 ililigid will be driven around
 inahín hen
 inanyayáhan invited
 inasikáso dealt with/attended to
 ináyos fixed / arranged
 inabót handed over
 inihandâ prepared
 inihatid took to
 inhaw grilled
 inípon the savings
 inyong buhók your hair
 Inglátéra England
 inumin drinks
 inúkit carved
 ipakihúlog mo could you post
 ipalálagay will cause to put
 ipambáyad to pay with
 ipatápon will cause to throw
 ipapípitás will have something picked
 isá one
 isa ká sa mga you're one of the
 isáma to include
 isáng kahón one box
 isáng doséna(ng) one dozen
 isáng gabí per night
 isáng plátó(ng) a plate of
 isáng taón one year
 isdá fish
 isináma accompanied
 isinúkat tried it on
 isúkat ninyó you try
 itatanong will ask
 itím black
 itó this
 itong itím this black (one)
 ituturó will show/ point
 iwásan lang please avoid
 iyán that
 iyan láng that's all (just those)

iyón(g) *that*
 labánan *contest*
 labíndalawá *twelve*
 labínlímá *fifteen*
 lági *always*
 laháat *everybody*
 lahat-lahát *all in all / altogether*
 laláki *man/ male*
 lakárin *to walk (it)*
 lálò na *especially*
 lamán *contents*
 lang *only/ just*
 lángit *sky*
 lanzónes *lanzones (fruit similar to lychee)*
 láot *sea*
 lápís *pencil*
 laráwan *photograph / picture*
 laruán(g) *toy*
 likurán *behind / at the back*
 lima(ng) píso *five pesos*
 limandaán(g) *500*
 Linggó *Sunday*
 línggo-linggó *every week*
 litsón *suckling pig*
 lóla *grandmother*
 lólo *grandfather*
 lúbusan *earnestly*
 lugár *place*
 lumákad *to walk / move*
 lumangóy *to swim*
 maaári *can*
 maaári ba(ng) *is it possible/ see puwede bang)*
 maaábot *be able to reach*
 mabáhò *smelly*
 mabaít *kind*
 mabangó *fragrant*
 mabilís *fast*
 mabúti *good*
 mabúti kung ganoón *that's good*
 mabúti rin namán *I'm fine, too*
 mabúti po namán *I'm fine, too (formal)*
 makapág-almusál *can have breakfast*
 makapágbanát *to be able to stretch*
 makapágbandá *be able to prepare*
 makapál *thick*
 makatáwag *to be able to call*
 makatutúlong *will be able to help*
 makúlay *colourful*
 madádalá *be turned off*
 madalí(ng) *easily*

madalí lang *just easy*
 magalíng *good at/ clever*
 mag-átubili *hesitate*
 mag-alalá *worry*
 mag-almusál *to have breakfast*
 magandá *beautiful*
 magandang umága *good morning*
 magandang gabi pò *good evening (formal)*
 magandang hápon *good afternoon*
 mag-aáral *will study*
 magbábakasyon *will go on vacation*
 magbábasa *will read*
 magbabáyad *will pay*
 magbiyáhe *to travel*
 magkáno *how much*
 magkáno namán *how much is it?*
 magkakáno *how much each*
 magdádagdag *will add*
 magdarámdam *will feel bad*
 mag-enjoy *to enjoy*
 maghandá *to prepare*
 mag-impake *will get packing*
 mag-isíp *to worry/think deeply*
 magpalamíg muna *have some refreshment first*
 magpápakain *will feed*
 magpápagod *to become tired*
 magpápalit *to change (money)*
 magpagupít *have a haircut*
 magpasénsiya *to accept our shortcomings*
 magsúkat pa *try some more*
 magtanóng *enquire*
 magúlang *parents*
 magustuhán sana ninyo *I hope you'd like it*
 mahábà *long*
 mahírap *difficult/ poor*
 mahiyá ka namán *are you without shame*
 mahúsay *fine / very good at*
 maiklí *short (i.e. pencil)*
 maiklíng buhók *short hair*
 maínit *hot*
 malaki *big*
 malakí-lakí *quite big*
 malamíg *cold*
 malápit *near*
 maláyò *far*
 maléta *suitcase*
 maligáya(ng) *happy*
 maligáyang pagdatíng *welcome*
 malínis *clean*
 maliít *small*

maliít sa ákin *small for me*
 malulúgi *I'll lose*
 maluwáng *loose*
 mámayà *later*
 mamangkâ *to go boating*
 mamasyál *to take a stroll*
 mámayang gabí *tonight*
 manggá *mango*
 mangingisdâ *fisherman*
 manók *chicken*
 manoód *watch*
 mantikflya *margarine*
 mápa *map*
 mapagpipilian *to choose from*
 marámi *many / plenty*
 maráming salámat *thank you very much*
 marumí *dirty*
 marúnong *know*
 masakít *hurting / painful*
 masaráp *delicious/ great / nice/ good*
 masayá *happy*
 mas bágay *suits better*
 mas lálò *more*
 mas maága *earlier*
 mas malakí *bigger*
 mag-aalalá *more bothered/ be worried*
 masúsunod *will be followed*
 masyádo(ng) *very / too / quite / extremely*
 mataás *high*
 matabáng *bland / flat in taste*
 mata mó *your eyes*
 matatandá *the old ones*
 matatápos na gawáin *jobs will be finished*
 matúto *will learn*
 matutúlog *will sleep*
 mawáwalá *will disappear*
 may has/have, there is/ there are
 mayáman *rich*
 mayáman namán kayò *anyway, you are rich*
 máy binili akó(ng) *I bought*
 may kilála akó *I know someone*
 may mésa ba kayò *do you have a table*
 may makakafnan bang *is there any place to eat*
 may nakalimútan *forgot something*
 may napíli *has selected/ chosen*
 mayroón / meron *has/have there is/ there are*
 médyo *sort of / somewhat*
 médyo maliít *slightly small*

médyo masakíp *slightly small*
 médyo nagúlat *somewhat surprised*
 mésa *table*
 mésa ninyó *your table*
 mechádo *pork / beef with tomato sauce, pepper and potatoes*
 minsánan *in one go*
 mga *pluraliser, similar to the English 's'*
 mga alás siyète medya *about 7.30*
 mga limá *about five*
 modistá *dressmaker*
 mukhá(ng) *looks / appears / seems*
 mukháng malínis *looks quite clean*
 mulí *again / once more*
 múna *first, for the time being*
 muntí(ng) *regalo small gift*
 múra *cheap*
 múra na pò *it's already cheap, ma'am*
 múra ang halagá *the price is cheap/ right*
 múrang niyóg *young coconut*
 múrang-múra *very cheap*
 na now/ already
 naáyos *managed to arrange*
 na namán *again*
 na binilí ko dito *that I bought here*
 naka-arkilá *was able to hire*
 nakákahiyá *embarrassing*
 nakákapangisdâ *are able / manage to catch fish*
 nakakítá *happened to see / was able to see*
 nakaháwak *managed to handle*
 nakaháwak *holding on to*
 nakahigá *lying down*
 nakatayò *standing*
 nakapamasyál *managed to take a stroll*
 nakatirá *living*
 nakíta ba ninyó *did you see?*
 nakikíta mo *you see*
 nág-abalá *bothered*
 nagawâ *what's been done*
 náintindihán *understand*
 naisíp *able to think about*
 náis po ba ninyó *do you want*
 nag-aáral *studying / study*
 nagbigáy *gave*
 nag-enjóy *enjoyed*
 naghandá *prepared food*
 nagkoronasyón *crowned*
 nag-ípon ng péra *saving money*
 nag-fisa *alone*
 naglulúto *cooking*

nagmamáno *kissing the hand*
 nag-paalam *said goodbye*
 nágpagupit *had a haircut*
 nagpalútò *caused someone to cook*
 nagpápa-akyát *ask someone to climb*
 nagpápabango *making (something) fragrant*
 nagpapakáin *give them food*
 nagpápaganda *making (something) pretty*
 nagpápalaki *making (something) grow*
 nagpápalit din ba kayó *do you also change?*
 nágpasalamat *gave thanks*
 nagpuntá *went*
 nagséseremonya *officiating*
 nagtátaka *wondering*
 nagtátae akó *I've got diarrhoea*
 nagtítinda ba kayó *do you sell*
 nagtrabáho *worked*
 nagustuhán *I liked*
 nag-úunahan *beating each other (in a race)*
 nahíhiyá *embarrassed*
 namámangká *boating*
 nakabálot *wrapped*
 nakabilí *was able to buy*
 nakapamangká *was able to go boating*
 nakatúlog *managed to sleep*
 namán *too / on the other hand*
 námin *our*
 nanálo *won*
 nánay *mother*
 nang gabí *at night*
 nang hápon *in the afternoon*
 nang ibigáy *when (it) was given*
 nangingísdá *fishing*
 nang maága *early*
 nang mabúti *soundly/well/better*
 nang maluwág *loosely*
 nang umága *in the morning*
 nangungútang *borrow money*
 nápakagandá *very pretty*
 napakarámi(ng) *so many*
 napágod *got tired*
 nápansin *noticed*
 nárito ná *here now / here comes*
 nása (prefix) *at / on / in / at the / on the / in the*
 násaan *where*
 nása parke *at the park*
 nasiyáhan *was pleased*
 naúbos *finished / consumed*
 naupó *sat down*
 ngayón *now / today*

ngayón láng *just now*
 ngayóng linggó *this week*
 ngumiti *smiled*
 nilála(ng) *woven*
 nínang *godmother*
 nínong *godfather*
 ninyó *your*
 nitó *this, (in the ng form) of this*
 niyá *his / her*
 niyáng *of that*
 ng *off / of the*
 ng bandána *a scarf*
 ng ibá *other ones*
 ngá *please / indeed / it's true*
 ngayón *now / today*
 ngayóng alas dós *today at 2 o'clock*
 ngayóng hápon *this afternoon*
 ngayóng umága *this morning*
 ng mga anak *of the children*
 ng size ninyó *your size*
 noón *then / before*
 noóng *when / during*
 noóng isáng linggó *last week*
 número *number*
 o kayá'y *or/otherwise*
 okey láng *just all right*
 o, síge *all right*
 oo, mabúti *yes, good*
 oo ngá *I agree*
 oo nga palá *by the way*
 ópò *yes (formal)*
 óras *time*
 pa *still*
 paálam *goodbye*
 paarkiláhan *a place to hire*
 pakáfnin *to serve / feed*
 pakéte *parcel*
 pakíabót sa akin *please pass to me / hand to me*
 pakilagáy *please put / place*
 pakipára mo *please stop at*
 pakíulit mo ngá *please repeat*
 págbabakasyon *vacationing*
 pagbalík *when you return*
 pagháwak *how to hold*
 pagkáin *food / eating*
 pagkatápos *afterwards / then*
 pagháwak *handling / holding*
 paglabás ninyó *once you've come out*
 pagtanggáp *reception*
 págtataním *planting*

paikliín *be shortened*
 palagáyán *will ask to be put*
 palaró *games*
 palawít *bunting*
 palígid *around*
 pálda *skirt*
 pangálan *name*
 pangalawáng *order second order*
 pang-shopping *for shopping*
 pag-akyát *climbing*
 pág-alalá *concern*
 pagkatápos *afterwards*
 pagkukúlang *shortcomings*
 paghaháin *offering*
 paglabás *upon leaving*
 páglalakbáy *trip*
 pagód *tired*
 pagsakáy *riding*
 pagsayáw *dancing*
 págsisilbi *serving*
 pagsungkit *hooking with a pole*
 pagtakbó *running*
 págtatae *diarrhoea*
 pala' *so!*
 pála *spade*
 palaisdaán *fishpond*
 palarúan *playground*
 paláyan *rice field*
 paléngke *market*
 páliguan *bathroom*
 (ang) palít *exchange*
 pálipáran *airport*
 pamangkín *niece / nephew*
 pamasáhe *fare*
 pamaypáy *fan*
 pambálot *wrapping paper*
 pamigáy *to give around*
 pamilyá *family*
 pamimilí *shopping*
 pamímilihin *things to buy*
 pamintá *pepper*
 pámpalamig *refreshment*
 pampasalúbong *gifts*
 panahón *weather / time*
 panaúhin *guests*
 pandalawáhan *double*
 pangálan *name*
 pang-aabála *disturbance*
 pang-isáhan *single*
 pang-okasyon *for certain occasions*
 pansít *noodles (cooked the Filipino way)*

panyolító *handkerchiefs*
 papalitán namin iyan *we will replace it*
 papáya *pawpaw*
 papuntá sa *going to*
 paputók *fireworks*
 pára *so that / in order to*
 paráda *parade*
 párang *seems / like / as if*
 pára kaníno *for whom*
 pára sa *for*
 pára sa akín *for me*
 pára sa ámin/ atin *for us*
 pára sa anak ko(ng) *for my son*
 pára sa áraw ng kasal ko *for my wedding day*
 pára sa inyó *for you*
 pára sa sakít ng tiyán *for stomach ache*
 párke *park*
 pári *priest*
 pasalúbong *gift*
 pasahéro *passenger*
 pasapórté *passport*
 pasénsiya na *accept our apologies*
 páyong *umbrella*
 pechay *pak choi*
 péra/ pera ko *money / my money*
 péro *but*
 pinakabunsó *youngest*
 pinakakáin *give food / feed*
 pinakamalápit *nearest*
 pinagamásan *had it cleaned*
 pinaglútò *asked to cook/cooked for*
 pinapágod ka *tiring you*
 pinggán/plato *plate*
 pínya *pineapple*
 pirmahán lang *(just) please sign*
 pisára *blackboard*
 pistá(ng) *feast day*
 pistá(ng) bayan *town fiesta*
 pitáká *wallet*
 platíto *saucer*
 póspero *a box of matches*
 probléma *problem*
 prútas *fruit*
 puhúnan *capital*
 pulá(ng) handbag *red handbag*
 pumíli pa *choose some more*
 pulútan *finger food to go with drinks*
 pulót-gatá *honeymoon*
 pumíli po kayó *please choose*
 pumunta ká *you go/ you visit/ stop by*

púnong-káhoy *fruit trees*
 púpunta *will go*
 puwéde *can*
 puwéde akó *I'm available*
 puwéde ba(ng) *is it possible / could you*
 puwéde na *will suffice/ that will do*
 puwéde na pò bá *is it all right, sir / ma'am?*
 puwésto *stalls*
 raw/ daw *apparently*
 resíbo ninyó *your receipt*
 rekomendádo *recommended*
 regalo *gift*
 regalóng ito *this gift*
 rénda *reins*
 repólyo *cabbage*
 reséta ng doktor *doctor's prescription*
 retratista *photographer*
 retráto *picture*
 réyna *queen*
 rin/ din *also / too / as well*
 rosál *gardenia*
 sa (preposition) *to / in / at/ on / at the / in the/ on the*
 saán *where (direction)*
 saán akó pípirma *where do I sign*
 (ang) sa ákin *(what is) mine*
 sa áraw *during the day*
 sabáy na *do it together / at the same time*
 Sábado *Saturday*
 sa báryo *at the barrio*
 sa báhay *at my place / at my home*
 sabáw *thin soup / stock*
 sabíhin *tell / say*
 sápong *cockfight*
 sabsában *stable*
 sabungán *cockpit*
 sa kaniyá *to him / her*
 sáko *sack*
 sa kápitbáhay natin *our neighbours'*
 ságíng *banana*
 sa halíp na *instead of*
 sa inyó *to you (singular formal / informal plural)*
 sa inyóng laháť *to you all*
 sa isáng *to one / against one*
 sa isáng áraw *the day after tomorrow*
 sa isang linggó *next week*
 sa loób ng *in(side)*
 sa (loób ng) isang araw *in one day*
 salámat *thank you*
 sa laháť nang oras *at anytime*

sa lugar na ito *here in this place*
 salu-sálo party *party*
 sa may *near*
 sampagúita *the national flower*
 sána *I hope*
 sandall láng *wait a minute*
 sang-áyon *agree*
 sang-áyon sa *according to*
 sanggól *baby*
 sa palagay kó *in my opinion*
 sarisári(ng) *assorted*
 saríwa(ng) *fresh*
 saríwang lumpiá *fresh spring rolls*
 sársá *sauce/ dressing*
 sasabíhin *will tell*
 sasakyán *vehicle*
 sa súsunod *next time*
 sa tabí *next/ beside*
 sa timbáangan *on the scales*
 sa trabáho *at work*
 sa tuktók *at the top*
 sa umága *in the morning*
 sa únang béses *for a first time*
 sélyo *stamp*
 siksíkan *crowded*
 síge *all right / OK / so long*
 síge lang *OK*
 sigúro *perhaps*
 síli *pepper (chilli or bell pepper)*
 sílíd-tulugán *bedroom*
 sílya *chair*
 simbáhan(g) *church*
 sinabúgan *sprinkled with / showered with*
 sinasábi lang *just say*
 sinigáng na bangús *stewed milkfish (with vinegar or tamarind and garlic)*
 síno *who*
 sóbra siguro *perhaps too much*
 sóbre *envelope*
 sombréro *hat*
 sópas manók *chicken soup*
 sorbétes *ice cream*
 subáli't *but*
 súlat *letter*
 sumakáy *ride*
 sumáma *to come / go with*
 sumasáma (from *masama*, adj.) *becoming worse*
 sumayáw *danced*
 sumisíkat *shining*
 sumúlat *write*

sumunód po kayó sa ákin *please follow me*
 sungáyin *charge with his horn*
 susúlat *will write*
 street guide *street guide*
 táksi *taxi*
 tagá *from (place of origin)*
 tagapagdálá ng singsíng *ring bearer*
 tagapaglútò *cook*
 tahánan *home*
 tahímik *quiet*
 talagá *really*
 talóng *eggplant / aubergine*
 táli *string*
 támà *right / correct*
 tandáng *rooster*
 tangháli *midday*
 tanghalian *lunch*
 táo pò *anyone at home*
 tápa *sliced fried beef*
 tapós *afterwards / then*
 tatlong béses isáng áraw *three times a day*
 tátay *father*
 tátayó *will stand*
 téka *just a moment / wait a minute*
 télépono *telephone*
 tenyénte *captain*
 téna *let's go*
 térnong sáya *a lady's long gown (of Spanish origin)*
 tiket *ticket*
 tiket ninyó *your ticket*
 tig/ tiga *each*
 tigatlong píso *three pesos each*
 timbáangan *scales*
 tinanggáp *received*
 tinanóng *was asked*
 tinápáy *bread*
 tinatáwag *calling*
 tindáhan *store*
 tindáhan ng laruán *toy store*
 tindá(ng) damít *clothes for sale*
 tindéra/ tindéro *vendor / sales assistant*
 tingnán *look*
 tingnan ko ngá *let me see / examine*
 tingnan ninyó / mo *you have a look*
 tinulúngan *helped*
 titingnan ko *let me see*
 tiráhan *residence / address*
 tíya *aunt*
 tiyán ko *my stomach*
 totoó *true*
 tíyo *uncle*
 tóyo *soy sauce*
 tradisyón(g) *tradition*
 tsá *tea*
 tséke *cheque*
 tsubíbo *ferris wheel*
 tsupér (boat) *driver*
 túbig *water*
 tugtúgin *music*
 tulóy *as a result / as well*
 tumátakbo *running*
 tumáwag *call*
 tumawíd ka *you cross*
 tumígil *stopped*
 tumingín *look*
 tumugtóg *played*
 tumúlong *helped*
 tumútunóg *making a sound*
 tungkól sa *about*
 tutulúngan *will help*
 tuwáng-tuwá *happy*
 tuwíng Linggó *every Sunday*
 ubos ná *ran out / consumed / finished*
 ulán *rain*
 úlo niyá *his / her head*
 umakýat *climb up*
 umága *morning*
 umalis *departed*
 umarkilá ng bangká *to hire a boat*
 uminóm *to drink*
 umiklíl *to become short*
 umórder *to order*
 umórder pa táyo *let's order some more*
 umulán *rained*
 úna *first*
 úpang *in order to / so that*
 utang na loób *debt of gratitude*
 uulítin *will repeat*
 walá *no/ none*
 waláng asáwa *not married / unmarried*
 wala báng táwad *any chance of a discount?*
 wala póng anumán *you're welcome*
 yári sa *made of*
 yátá *I think*
 yelo *ice*

ENGLISH-TAGALOG GLOSSARY

All verbs in this glossary are in the root form unless otherwise indicated.

about *tungkol sa*
 accompanied *isinama*
 according to *sang-ayon sa*
 add *magdagdag*
 afternoon *hapon*
 afterwards/ then *pagkatapos / tapos*
 again/ once more *muli*
 agree *sang-ayon*
 agree, I *oo nga*
 airport *paliparan*
 alight/ get off *baba*
 all in all/ altogether *lahat-lahat*
 all right/ OK/ so long *o, sige*
 alone *nag-iisa*
 already *na*
 also *saka; rin / din*
 always *lagi*
 America *America*
 and *at*
 animal *hayop*
 anywhere *kahit saan*
 apparently *daw / raw*
 apritada *apritada (a kind of main dish, fried)*
 arm *bisig*
 around *paligid*
 arrive *dating*
 arrival *dating*
 as a result/ as well *tuloy*
 ask (for something) *hingi*
 ask (a question) *tanong*
 assorted *sarisari(ng)*
 at *nasa (prefix)*
 at *sa*
 attractive *kaakit-akit*
 attach *kabit*
 aunt *tiya*
 (I'm) available *puwede ako*
 (newborn) baby *sanggol*
 bachelor *binata*
 bamboo *kawayan*

banana *saging*
 band *banda*
 baptism *binyagan*
 barrio *baryo*
 bathroom *paliguan/ banyo*
 beautiful *maganda*
 because *kasi/ dahil sa/ sapagka't*
 bed *kama*
 bedroom *silid-tulagan*
 behind/ at the back *likuran*
 big *malaki*
 (quite) big *malaki-laki*
 bigger *mas malaki*
 bitter melon *ampalaya*
 black *itim*
 blackboard *pisara*
 bland/ flat in taste *matabang*
 blouse *blusa*
 boat (canoe) *bangka*
 (to go) boating *mamangka*
 body *katawan*
 boiled rice *kanin*
 book *aklat*
 borrow *hiram*
 borrow money *nangungutang*
 bother *abala*
 (I) bought *may binili ako(ng)*
 box *kahon*
 bread *tinapay*
 breakfast *almusal*
 (to have) breakfast *mag-almusal*
 brother *kapatid*
 brother (older) *kuya*
 brother-in-law *bayaw*
 bucket *balde*
 buntal (Philippine fibre) *buntal*
 bunting *palawit*
 but *pero/ subali't*
 buy *bili*
 (to) buy for *ibili*

cabbage *repolyo*
 call *tawag*
 camera *kamera*
 can/ possible *maaari/ puwede*
 capital *puhunan*
 captain *kapitan/ tenyente*
 car *kotse*
 cart *karosa*
 carved *inukit*
 Catholic *katoliko*
 chair *silya*
 chaos *kaguluhan*
 (to) change *magpalit*
 cheap *mura*
 cheque *tseke*
 chicken *manok*
 chicken soup *sopas manok*
 child *bata/anak*
 choose *pili*
 (to) choose from *mapagpipilian*
 church *simbahan*
 classmates *kaklase*
 clean *malinis*
 clever/ good at *magaling/ marunong*
 climb *akyat*
 climb up *umakyat*
 clothes *damit*
 cockfight *sabong*
 cockpit *sabungan*
 coconut, young *murang niyog*
 cold *malamig*
 colour *kulay*
 colourful *makulay*
 come on *halikayo*
 (to) come with/ go with *sumama*
 companion *kasama*
 concern *pag-alaala*
 consort *abay*
 consume *ubos*
 contest *labanan / paligsahan*
 cook *luto*
 cook (noun) *tagapagluto*
 corner *kanto*
 count *bilang*
 cross *tawid*
 crowded *siksikan*
 crown *korona*
 curtain *kurtina*
 custom *kaugalian*
 dance *sayaw*
 dancing *pagsayaw*

darken *dumidilim*
 daughter *anak*
 day/ sun *araw*
 decoration *dekorasyon*
 (a) delicacy *kutsinta/dila-dila*
 delicious *masarap*
 depart *alis*
 departure *alis*
 destination *punta*
 diarrhoea *pagtatae*
 difficult/ poor *mahirap*
 dirty *marumi*
 disturbance *pang-aabala/abala*
 disappear *mawala*
 do *gawa*
 don't *huwag*
 double *pandalawahan*
 dozen *dosena*
 dressmaker *modista*
 (to) drink *uminom*
 drinking glass *baso*
 drinks *inumin*
 drive *ligid*
 (boat) driver *tsuper*
 during *noon*
 each *iig/tiga*
 early *nang maaga*
 earnestly *lubusan(g)*
 easily *madali(ng)*
 eat *kain*
 eggplant/ aubergine *talong*
 embarrassed *nahihiya*
 embarrassing *nakakahiya*
 embroidered *burdado(ng)*
 England *Inglaterra*
 (to) enjoy *mag-enjoy*
 enquire *magtanong*
 envelope *sobre*
 environment *kapaligiran*
 everybody *lahat*
 every day *araw-araw*
 exchange *(ang) palit*
 expensive *mahal*
 eyes *mata*
 family *pamilya*
 fan *pamaypay*
 far *malayo*
 fare *pamasaha*
 fast *mabilis*
 father *tatay/ ama/ itay*
 favourite *paborito*

feast day *pista*(ng)
 feed *pinakakin*
 female/ woman *babae*
 ferris wheel *tsubibo*
 fiesta *pista*
 fifteen *labinlima*
 (to) find *humanap*
 fine/pretty *maganda*
 (I'm) fine *mabuti rin naman*
 finger food to go with drinks *pulutan*
 finished/ consumed *naubos*
 fireworks *paputok*
 first *una*
 fish *isda*
 fisherman *mangingisda*
 fishing *nangingisda*
 fish pond *palaisdaan*
 fixed/ arranged *inayos*
 flag *bandera/ bandila*
 flood *baha*
 flower *bulaklak*
 food/ eating *pagkain*
 food preparation *handa*
 follow *sunod*
 for *para sa*
 forget *kalimutan*
 fragrant *mabango*
 frame *kuwadro*
 fresh *sariwa*(ng)
 friend *kaibigan*
 from *buhat sa/ galing sa*
 from (origin) *taga*
 fruit *prutas*
 fruit trees *punong kahoy*
 games *palaro*
 gardenia *rosal*
 gifts *pasalubong/ regalo*
 (to) be given *ibigay*
 get/fetch *kuha*
 give *bigay*
 (to) give around *pamigay*
 go *punta*
 godchild *inuanak*
 godfather *ninong*
 godmother *ninang*
 going to *papunta sa*
 good *mabuti*
 good afternoon *magandang hapon*
 goodbye *paalam*
 good evening (formal) *magandang gabi po*
 good morning *magandang umaga*
 gore *suwagin*
 grandchild *apo*
 grandfather *lolo*
 grandmother *lola*
 grass *damo*
 grilled *inihaw*
 guava *bayabas*
 guest/ visitor *bisita/ panauhin*
 guyabano (soursap) *guyabano*
 haircut *gupit*
 (to have a) haircut *magpagupit*
 hair *buhok*
 hand *kamay*
 hand over *abot*
 handkerchiefs *panyolito*
 happy *maligaya*(ng)/ *masaya*
tuwang-tuwa
 has/ have *may/ mayroon*
 help *tulong*
 hat *sombbrero*
 hen *inahin*
 her *kaniya*(ng)
 here *dito*
 here is *heto*
 hesitate *mag-aatubili*
 high *mataas*
 hire *arkila*
 (to) hire a boat *umarkila ng bangka*
 his/ her *niya*
 hold *hawak*
 home *bahay*
 honeymoon *pulot-gata*
 hook with a pole *sungkit*
 (I) hope *sana*
 horse *kabayo*
 hot *mainit*
 hour *oras*
 house *bahay*
 how are you (formal singular) *kumusta kayo*
 how many/ a few *ilan*(g)
 how much *magkano*
 how much is it? *magkano naman*
 (informal plural)
 (to) hurry *daliin*
 hurting/ painful *masakit*
 husband *asawa*
 ice cream *sorbetes*
 idea *ideya*
 if/ when *kapag/ kung*
 ilangilang *ilangilang flower*

immediately *kaagad*
 improve *bumuti*
 in *nasa/sa*
 (to) include *isama*
 including *kasama*
 in order to/ so that *upang*
 isn't it? *hindi ba*
 inside *sa loob* (ng)
 instead of *sa halip na*
 instead *kundi*
 invited *imbitado/ kumbidado*
 job *gawain*
 kind *mabait*
 kinds *uri*
 kissing the hand *nagmamano*
 knife *kutsilyo*
 know *alam*
 lanzones (fruit similar to lychees) *lansones*
 last night *kagabi*
 last week *noong isang linggo*
 later *mamaya*
 learn *matuto*
 leave *alis*
 left *kaliwa*
 letter *sulat*
 life *buhay*
 (I) like *gusto ko*
 like (comparison) *katulad ng*
 like that *ganiyan/ ganoon*
 living/ residence *nakatira*
 long *mahaba*
 look after *bahala*
 look *tingnan/ tumingin*
 looks/ appears/ seems *mukhang*
 loose *mahuwag/maluwang*
 loosely *nang maluwang*
 lose *malulugi*
 love *gusto*
 lunch *tanghalian*
 lying down *nakahiga*
 made of *yari sa*
 (to) make *gumawa*
 man/ male *lalaki*
 mango *mangga*
 many/ plenty *marami*(ng)
 many of *karamihan*
 map *mapa*
 margarine *mantikilya*
 market *palengke*
 married *ikinasal*
 massage *masahe*
 matches *posporo*
 measurement *sukat*
 medicine *gamot*
 midday *tanghali*
 might/ cow *baka*
 milk *gatas*
 milkfish *bangus*
 money *pera/ kuwarta*
 more *higit/ mas lalo*
 morning *umaga*
 mother *nanay/ inay/ ina*
 mouth *bibig*
 Mrs *ginang*
 music *tugtugin*
 must/should *dapat*
 my *ko*
 name *pangalan*
 nape *batok*
 near *malapit, sa may*
 nearest *pinakamalapit*
 need *kailangan*
 neighbours *kapitbahay*
 nephew *pamangkin*
 new *bago*
 next/ beside *sa tabi*
 next time *sa susunod*
 next week *sa isang linggo*
 nice *masarap*
 niece *pamangkin*
 night *gabi*
 no *hindi*
 no/ none *wala*
 noodles cooked in the Filipino way *pansit*
 noticed *napansin*
 now *na/ ngayon*
 number *numero*
 of/ of the *ng*
 of course *aba oo/ aba oo naman*
 offering *paghahain/pag-aalay*
 officemates *kaopisina*
 officiating *nagseseremonya*
 often *kadalasan*
 on *nasa/sa*
 one *isa*
 only/just *lang*
 opened *ibinuka*
 opinion *palagay*
 or *o kaya'y*
 oranges *dalanghita*
 (to) order *umorder*

other <i>iba</i>	receipt <i>resibo</i>
our <i>namin</i>	receive <i>tanggap</i>
pak choi <i>pechay</i>	recommend <i>rekomenda</i>
parade <i>parada</i>	refreshment <i>pampalamig</i>
parcel <i>pakete</i>	reins <i>renda</i>
parents <i>magulang</i>	repeat <i>ulit</i>
park <i>parke</i>	replace <i>palitan</i>
party <i>salu-salo</i>	residence/ address <i>tirahan</i>
pass <i>abot</i>	return <i>balik</i>
passenger <i>pasahero</i>	rice cakes <i>kakanin</i>
passport <i>pasaporte</i>	rice field <i>palayan</i>
pawpaw <i>papaya</i>	rich <i>mayaman</i>
payment <i>bayad</i>	rid <i>sakay</i>
(to) pay with <i>ipambayad</i>	ride <i>sumakay</i>
peace <i>katahimikan</i>	right (direction) <i>kanan</i>
pen <i>bolpen</i>	right/ correct <i>tama</i>
pencil <i>lapis</i>	ring bearer <i>tagapagdala ng singsing</i>
pepper <i>paminta/ sili</i>	ripe <i>hinog</i>
perhaps <i>siguro</i>	road/ way/ path <i>daan</i>
petrol <i>gasolina</i>	room <i>kuwarto/ quarter/ one fourth</i>
photograph/ picture <i>larawan</i>	rooster <i>tandang</i>
photographer <i>retratista</i>	rubbish <i>basura</i>
picture <i>retrato</i>	run <i>takbo</i>
pineapple <i>pinya</i>	sack <i>sako</i>
place <i>lugar</i>	salt <i>asin</i>
planting <i>pagtanim</i>	Saturday <i>Sabado</i>
plants <i>halaman</i>	sauce/ dressing <i>sarsa</i>
(a) plate of <i>isang plato (ng)</i>	saucer <i>platito</i>
plate <i>plato/ pinggan</i>	sauteed vegetable <i>ginisang gulay</i>
play <i>laro</i>	(the) savings <i>inimpok/ inipon</i>
playground <i>parlarian</i>	saving money <i>nag-iipon ng pera</i>
pleased to meet you (formal) <i>ikinagagalak</i>	say <i>sabi</i>
<i>ko kayong makilala</i>	scales <i>timbangang</i>
pleased <i>nasiyahan</i>	(a) scarf <i>ng bandana</i>
(to) post <i>ihulog</i>	sea <i>dagat</i>
prawns <i>hipon</i>	see <i>kita</i>
prepare <i>handa</i>	seems like/ as if <i>parang</i>
prepared food <i>naghanda</i>	sell <i>tinda</i>
prescriptions <i>reseta</i>	(to) serve/ feed <i>pakainin</i>
pretty <i>maganda</i>	serving <i>pagsisiilbi</i>
price <i>halaga</i>	shame <i>mahiya/ hiya</i>
priest <i>pari</i>	shine <i>sikat</i>
problem <i>problema</i>	ship <i>barko</i>
put <i>lagay</i>	shopping <i>panimili</i>
queen <i>reyna</i>	short <i>maikli</i>
quiet <i>tahimik</i>	shortcomings <i>pagkukulang</i>
rain <i>ulan</i>	(to) shorten <i>paikliin / umikli</i>
reach <i>abot</i>	single <i>pang-isahan</i>
read <i>basa</i>	sister (older) <i>ate</i>
really <i>talaga</i>	sister <i>kapatid</i>
reception <i>handaan</i>	sister-in-law <i>hipag</i>

sit down <i>upo</i>	(to) take from <i>kunan</i>
size <i>sukat</i>	talk to <i>kausapin</i>
skirt <i>palda</i>	taxi <i>taksi</i>
sky <i>langit/ himpapawid</i>	tea <i>tsaa</i>
sleep <i>tulog</i>	teacher <i>guro</i>
slightly <i>medyo</i>	telephone <i>telepono</i>
small <i>maliit</i>	tell <i>sabi</i>
smelly <i>mabaho</i>	terno (a long gown of Spanish origin)
smile <i>ngiti</i>	<i>ternong saya</i>
so <i>pala</i>	than <i>kaysa/ kaysa sa</i>
sometimes <i>kung minsan</i>	thank you <i>salamat</i>
son <i>anak</i>	thank you very much <i>maraming salamat</i>
so that/ in order to <i>para</i>	that <i>iyang</i>
soy sauce <i>toyo</i>	that (over there) <i>iyon</i>
spade <i>pala</i>	that's all (just those) <i>iyang lang</i>
spend <i>gastos</i>	that's why <i>kaya</i>
spouse <i>asawa</i>	the <i>ang</i>
spring rolls <i>lumpia</i>	then/ before <i>noon</i>
sprinkle with <i>sabog</i>	there <i>doon</i>
squash <i>kalabasa</i>	there is/ there are <i>may/mayroon</i>
squid adobo <i>adobong pusit</i>	throw <i>tapon</i>
stable <i>sabsaban</i>	these <i>ang mga ito</i>
stalls <i>puwesto</i>	thick <i>makapal</i>
stamp <i>selyo</i>	thing <i>bagay</i>
stand <i>tayo</i>	think <i>mag-isip</i>
standing <i>nakatayo</i>	(I) think <i>yata</i>
stewed milkfish (with vinegar or tamarind and garlic) <i>sinigang na bangus</i>	this <i>ito / nito</i>
still <i>pa</i>	those <i>ang mga iyang</i>
stomach <i>tiyan</i>	ticket <i>tiket</i>
stomach ache <i>sakit ng tiyan</i>	time <i>oras</i>
stop <i>para / tigil / hinto</i>	tired <i>pagod</i>
store <i>tindahan</i>	tire oneself, to <i>magpagod</i>
straight <i>diretso/ tuwid</i>	to <i>sa</i>
street <i>kalye/ kalsada/ road</i>	today <i>ngayong</i>
street guide <i>street guide</i>	toilet <i>kubeta</i>
stretch <i>banat</i>	tomatoes <i>kamatis</i>
string <i>tali</i>	tomorrow <i>bukas</i>
(to take a) stroll <i>mamasyal</i>	tongue <i>dila</i>
student <i>estudyante</i>	tonight <i>mamayang gabi</i>
study <i>nag-aaral</i>	town <i>kabayanan</i>
suckling pig <i>litson</i>	toy <i>laruan(g)</i>
suddenly <i>bigla</i>	toy store <i>tindahan ng laruan</i>
suffice/ that will do <i>puwede na</i>	tradition <i>tradisyon(g)</i>
suit <i>bagay</i>	travel <i>biyahe</i>
suitcase <i>maleta</i>	trip <i>paglalakbay</i>
Sunday <i>Linggo</i>	true <i>totoo</i>
surprised <i>nagulat</i>	try <i>isukat</i>
swallow <i>inom/ lunok</i>	two <i>dalawa</i>
(to) swim <i>lumangoy</i>	typhoon <i>bagyo</i>
table <i>mesa</i>	umbrella <i>payong</i>
take <i>kuha</i>	uncle <i>tiyo</i>
	understand <i>naiintindihan</i>

unmarried <i>walang asawa</i>	where (direction) <i>saan</i>
until <i>hanggang sa</i>	which <i>alín</i>
vacancy <i>bakante</i>	while <i>habang</i>
vacation <i>bakasyon</i>	whispering <i>bumubulong</i>
vegetables <i>gulay</i>	who <i>sino</i>
vehicle <i>sasakyan</i>	whole <i>buo</i>
vendor/ sales assistant <i>tinderal/ tindero</i>	whose <i>kanino</i>
very/ too/ quite/ extremely <i>masyado(ng)</i>	why <i>bakit/ kung bakít</i>
village <i>baryo</i>	wife <i>asawa</i>
visit/ stop by <i>punta</i>	window <i>bintana</i>
walk/ move, to <i>lumakad</i>	windy <i>humangin</i>
(to) walk straight ahead <i>dumiretso</i>	with <i>kasama</i>
wallet <i>pitaka</i>	wooden <i>kahoy</i>
want <i>gusto / nais</i>	(to) win <i>manalo</i>
wash <i>hugas</i>	wonder <i>taka</i>
(to) watch <i>manood</i>	work <i>trabaho</i>
water <i>tubig</i>	(to) worry <i>mag-alala/ mag-isip</i>
water/ liquid <i>sabaw</i>	worsen <i>sumasama</i>
water buffalo <i>kalabaw</i>	woven <i>nilala(ng)</i>
we <i>tayo/ kami</i>	wrapped <i>nakabalot</i>
weather <i>panahon</i>	wrapping paper <i>pambalot</i>
wedding <i>kasal/ kasalan</i>	write <i>sulat</i>
wedding assistant(s) <i>(mga) abay sa kasal</i>	year <i>taon</i>
wedding dress <i>damit pangkasal</i>	yellow <i>dilaw</i>
week <i>linggo</i>	yes (formal) <i>opo</i>
welcome <i>maligayang pagdating</i>	yesterday <i>kahapon</i>
(you're) welcome <i>wala pong anuman / ano(ng)</i>	yet <i>pa</i>
what <i>ano (ng), anu-ano (formal)</i>	you (singular) <i>ka</i>
what time <i>anong oras</i>	you (plural informal/ formal singular) <i>kayo</i>
when <i>kailan</i>	youngest <i>pinakabunso</i>
when/ during <i>noong</i>	your <i>ninyo/ inyong</i>
where (location) <i>nasaan</i>	

